DOCUMENT RESUME

ED 041 264 48 AL 002 465

AUTHOR	Yates, Warren G.; Sayasithsena, Souksomboun
TITLE	Lao Basic Course, Volume 1.
INSTITUTION	Foreign Service Inst. (Dept. of State), Washington, D.C.
SPONS AGENCY	Institute of International Studies (DHEW/OE), Washington, D.C.
REPORT NO	NDEA-6
BUREAU NO	BR-6-2979
PUB DATE	70
CONTRACT	OEC-2-7-002979-2013
NOTE	449p.
AVAILABLE FROM	Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402 ($4.00)
EDRS PRICE	EDRS Price MF-$2.25 HC Not Available from EDRS.
DESCRIPTORS	Audiolingual Skills, *Conversational Language Courses, Course Descriptions, *Instructional Materials, *Language Instruction, *Lao, Oral Communication, Phonetic Transcription, Standard Spoken Usage, Textbooks, Transformation Generative Grammar
IDENTIFIERS	*Microwave Approach, Vientiane Dialect

ABSTRACT

This book comprises a "set of guidelines for conversational interplay between students and their native-speaking Lao instructor." A student who successfully completes the course should be able to order a simple meal, ask for a room in a hotel, ask and give street directions, tell time, handle travel requirements, and use expressions of politeness. In addition, he should be able to discuss his work, his background, and current events. Based on Earl W. Stevick's "microwave" format (see ED 012 897), there are 85 cycles or units in this text, normally requiring from 250 to 300 class hours to complete. The term "microwave" (a very short wave) emphasizes the short span of time between presentation of new material and its actual use in real communication. In the first phase of the cycle the student learns a small amount of the language through mimicry of sounds, manipulation of structures, and by learning the meaning of the words. In the second phase he puts this material into use by forming questions and answers, giving short narrations, and completing translation and sentence completion exercises. Each cycle is an inependent unit. All Lao material is in phonemic transcription except occasional notes to the instructor. The short grammar notes in each cycle use the terminology of modern generative transformational grammar. (JD)

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

ERIC
Title VI, NDEA
OEC-2-7-002979-2013
OE/115
BR 6 2979
PA 48
AL

LAO

ED0 41264

BASIC COURSE
Volume 1

1946

AL 002 465

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH, EDUCATION & WELFARE
OFFICE OF EDUCATION

THIS DOCUMENT HAS BEEN REPRODUCED EXACTLY AS RECEIVED FROM THE PERSON OR ORGANIZATION ORIGINATING IT. POINTS OF VIEW OR OPINIONS STATED DO NOT NECESSARILY REPRESENT OFFICIAL OFFICE OF EDUCATION POSITION OR POLICY.

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

LAO

ED041264

BASIC COURSE
Volume 1

This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

WARREN G. YATES and SOUKSOMBOUN SAYASITHSENA

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1970

DEPARTMENT OF STATE

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402 - Price $4.00

PREFACE

FSI Lao Basic Course, *Volume I, provides introductory material in modern spoken Lao for the student who wishes to achieve proficiency in the language spoken by about three million persons in Laos and an additional ten million persons in Thailand. The Vientiane dialect, used in official government communications and generally the most useful for American students, is the dialect represented here.*

The initial volume of this course is the product of collaboration between Warren G. Yates, chairman of the FSI Department of East Asian Languages and Souksomboun Sayasithsena, Lao language instructor. Dr. Yates has provided the general plan for the work and the English language content. Mr. Sayasithsena has been responsible for the authenticity of the Lao language material. Assisting in the classroom trial of most of the material in this volume were Malichanh Svengsouk, Kongkam Thanasack, Doungkeo Sayasithsena, and Somsangouane Thanasack. Mrs. Svengsouk also provided assistance in proof reading. Irma C. Ponce did the final typing.

Unlike most FSI language textbooks, this volume is not accompanied by tape recordings. ***Lao Basic Course,*** *Volume I, follows the "microwave" format and is not so much a set of materials to be mastered as a set of guidelines for conversational interplay between students and their native-speaking Lao instructor. The format, which owes much to the work of another FSI linguist, Dr. Earl W. Stevick, does not lend itself readily to presentation on magnetic tapes.*

FSI is indebted to Warren Ziegler and Marcelle Carlier of the Agency for International Development for early encouragement and financial support for the development of Lao teaching material. FSI also gratefully acknowledges the financial assistance of the U.S. Office of Education in the development and publication of this volume.

James R. Frith

James R. Frith, Dean
School of Language Studies
Foreign Service Institute

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE iii

INTRODUCTION xvi

GREETING CYCLE:
'How are you?
I'm fine.' 1

bɔ̄ɔ̄ as question word

CYCLE 1:
'What's this?
It's a book.' 4

mɛ̄ɛ̄n as a copula verb

CYCLE 2:
'Whose pen is this?
This is your pen.' 7

Personal Pronouns

CYCLE 3:
'Is this a book?
Yes, it is.' 12

mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw as a confirmatory response

CYCLE 4:
'Where are you going?
I'm going to the market.' 16

sǎj as a locative question word

CYCLE 5:
'He's going to school, isn't he?
No, he isn't. He's going to the bank.' 20

Negative responses to mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ? questions

CYCLE 6:
'What's your name?
My name's...' 24

Position of njǎŋ 'what?' in the sentence

CYCLE 7:
'Is she pretty?
Yes, she is.' 27
Stative verbs in questions and responses

CYCLE 8:
'Is he a polite person?
Yes, he is.' 29
Stative verbs as noun modifiers

CYCLE 9:
'Are you an American?
Yes, I am.' 34
pen as a special copula verb

CYCLE 10:
'What country do you come from?
I come from Laos.' 37
daj as a question word

CYCLE 11:
'Where is Sedone province?
It's in Laos.' 41
jūū as a verb of location

CYCLE 12:
'What are you doing?
I'm writing a letter.' 46
Transitive verbs

CYCLE 13:
'Where are we going to eat? Here?
No, let's go eat there.' 49
thɔ̄ʔ as a hortatory particle

CYCLE 14:
'Where did he have his hair cut?
At the barbershop.' 52
Locatives with verbs of activity

CYCLE 15:
'Where is he going to send the cable?
At the Post Office.' 56

si as future time particle

CYCLE 16:
'Is he coming here?
No. He's going over there.' 60

nìi, hân, phìi, phùn as Adverbs of Place

CYCLE 17:
'Do you know the way to...?
Yes. Go straight ahead, then... ' 62

tháaŋ in directions; hùu 'to know a fact'

CYCLE 18:
'Do you know (my younger sister)?
Yes, I met (her) at...' 66

hùucák 'to know a person'

Terms for siblings

CYCLE 19:
'What part of Laos do you come from?
I come from the (central) part.' 72

Compass directions

CYCLE 20:
'Where are you going to put it? Over there?
Yes, I'm going to put it over there.' 77

paj and máa as verbs of direction of motion

CYCLE 21:
'Where? In this box here?
(No) In that bag there.' 81

Determiners versus Adverbs of Place

CYCLE 22:
'Are you going to change the tire (that is) over here?
(No) I'm going to change the tire (that is) over there.' 85

CYCLE 23:
'Is he going to read this book over there?
No, he's going to read it over there.' 90

Non-optional jūū in Locative

CYCLE 24:
'How much is one and one?
One and one is two.' 98

Cardinal numbers and thāw daj 'how much, many?'

CYCLE 25:
'What day (of the week) is today?
Today is (Sunday).' 104

Names of the days of the week.

CYCLE 26:
'What month is it?
It's (January).' 108

Names of the months.

CYCLE 27:
'What's the date today?
It's (March 23rd, 1970).' 114

Complete dates (day, month, year)

CYCLE 28:
'What are you going to do (today)?
(Today) I'm going sightseeing.' 118

Certain Time Expressions

CYCLE 29:
'What time is it?
It's (eleven thirty).' 126

móoŋ as 'o'clock, hour'

CYCLE 30:
'What time do you (go to school)?
At 9:00 a.m.' 129

sàw, bāāj, lɛ́ɛŋ, kaaŋ khýyn as divisions of the day

CYCLE 31:
'How long will you (practice)?
One hour.' 135

No. + (*sŭamóoŋ*, *náathíi*, *pii*) as responses to *cák* + (*sŭamóoŋ*, etc.) and *don* *paandaj* 'how long?'

CYCLE 32:
'Do you have enough time to...?
No, I don't. Yes, I do.' 140

wéeláa as time for doing something

CYCLE 33:
'How will you go?
By bus.' 146

nám used with types of conveyances

CYCLE 34:
'Who will come with you?
My friend.' 149

nám used for accompaniment and other uses

CYCLE 35:
'How will you go?
I will walk.' 153

paj / *máj* with verbs of locomotion

CYCLE 36:
'Will you be able to work?
Yes.' 159

dàj to indicate possibility or ability

CYCLE 37:
'Do you know how to drive?
No, I don't.' 163

pen to indicate acquired ability

CYCLE 38:
'Can she type?
No, because she doesn't know how.' 167
pen contrasted with dàj in usage

CYCLE 39:
'How many books do you see?
Two.' 171
Numbers with unit classifiers.

CYCLE 40:
'How much did this briefcase cost?
500 kips.' 174
láakháa (price) and cák kîip (How many kips?)

CYCLE 41:
'Did you go anywhere?
No, I didn't go anywhere.' 182
njǎŋ, sǎj, and phǎj as indefinite nouns in negative sentences and in questions

CYCLE 42:
'Why does everybody want to meet her?
Because she's pretty.' 188
phǎj phǎj as inclusive indefinite noun

CYCLE 43:
'He's impolite isn't he?
Yes, he is. Nobody wants to see his face.' 193
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ̄... as negative inclusive indefinite nouns

CYCLE 44:
'This house is bigger than that one, isn't it?
No, it isn't. It's smaller.' 196
Comparative of stative verbs

CYCLE 45:
'Which of these three women is the prettiest?
They are equally pretty.' 201
Stative verb with kwa̅a̅ mu̅u̅ as superlative degree (of limited number)

CYCLE 46:
'How many dollars do you have left?
(I have) two dollars left.' 206
ly̌a as a verb indicating a remainder of something

CYCLE 47:
'Are we out of coffee?
No, we still have some.' 210
mót contrasted with ly̌a

CYCLE 48:
'Do you still have questions?
Yes, I (still) do.' 217
njáŋ ... ju̅u̅ for continuing situations

CYCLE 49:
'Are you still out of work?
No, I got a job a long time ago.' 220
tɛɛ don lɛ̀ɛw used to indicate a situation that began in the past and continues into the present

CYCLE 50:
'Your book has already been stolen, isn't that right?
That's right, it has (already been stolen).' ... 223
thŷyk in passive constructions with certain verbs

CYCLE 51:
'What color are his shoes?
They're black.' 230
Names of colors

CYCLE 52:
'How well do you sing?
Not very well.' 234

phòot 'too...' bɔ̄ɔ̄... paandaj 'not very...',
... paandaaj? 'How...?'

CYCLE 53:

'Does he read fast?
Pretty fast.' 240

...sǒmkhúan 'pretty...' as a modifier

CYCLE 54:
'Don't eat too much.' 244

jāā in negative request forms

CYCLE 55:
'Where have you been (to)?
I've been to the doctor's.' 249

paj... máa used to indicate recent completion of
some activity

CYCLE 56:
'Where did this plane come from?
It came from Bangkok.' 252

máa tɛ̄ɛ̄ used to show point of origin

CYCLE 57:
'Why are you washing your hands?
I'm washing my hands to eat.' 256

Word order of verb phrases of purpose

CYCLE 58:
'From where to where?
From when to when?' 261

tɛ̄ɛ̄... hǎa and câak / tɛɛ... tháŋ / hǎa / hɔ̀ɔt in
extent of space or period of time constructions ....

CYCLE 59:
What's the matter with you?
I have (a headache).' 269

...pen njǎŋ 'what's the matter with...' and words referring to illness.

CYCLE 60:
'Why didn't you come to school?
Because I was sick.' 274

pen njǎŋ... cŷŋ and phɔ̄ wāā in asking and giving reasons for some activity

CYCLE 61:
'How do you feel about him?
I pity him.' 279

Verbs of emotion

CYCLE 62:
'Do you think he will come?
Yes, I think he'll come.' 284

Verbs of thinking and saying with wāā

CYCLE 63:
'Is it dangerous?
Yes, it's very dangerous.' 289

Stative verbs with lǎaj

CYCLE 64:
'Do you believe he'll pass the exam?
Yes, I do.' 296

sàn bɔɔ? in questions

CYCLE 65:
'You will read, and then what will you do?
I'll read, then I'll go eat.' 303

lɛ̀ɛw as a sentence connective

CYCLE 66:
'Did you write the letter yet?
'No, not yet. (or) Yes, I've already written 307
lɛ̀ɛw and njáŋ as aspect particles

CYCLE 67:
'Have you finished recording?
Yes, I have. (or) No, not yet.' 314
Verb Phrase with lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀(ɛw)

CYCLE 68:
'Who are you going to fix the car for?
I'll fix it for him.' 321
hâj as a benefactive verb

CYCLE 69:
'What do you want me to do?
I want you to stay with him.' 327
jâak and jâak hâj

CYCLE 70
'What were you going to have him do for you?
I was going to have him type letters for me.' .. 333
hâj as benefactive and causative verb

CYCLE 71:
'What's the table made of?
Wood.' 338
hēt dùaj with materials

CYCLE 72:
'What did he write with?
With a pen.' 345
dùaj with Instrumental

CYCLE 73:
'What will you use for making a fire?
Charcoal.' 351
Instrumental use of sàj

CYCLE 74:
'What's a clock for?
To tell time.' 357
míi wàj sǎmlāp to indicate use or purpose of something

CYCLE 75:
'Where's he stationed now?
Right now he's in Pakse.' 362
Time expressions

CYCLE 76:
'He will be transferred very soon, is that true?
That's right.' 369
Time expressions with direct reference to present time.

CYCLE 77:
How much longer will you be here?
'Two more weeks.' 373
îik and njáŋ îik with Time Expressions

CYCLE 78:
'What kind of food do you normally like to eat?
Spicy food.' 383
Adverbs of frequency

CYCLE 79:
'Must he choose a guide?
Yes, he must.' 387
Modals: tɔ̀ɔŋ, khúan, âat, khýy, khóŋ

CYCLE 80:
'Have you ever been to Laos?'
Yes, I have. (or) No, I never have been.' 394

khə́əj to indicate having experienced something

CYCLE 81:
'Is there anybody that is going to help him?
Yes, I am.' 400

Indefinite pronoun phǎj after míi

CYCLE 82:
'What do we call liquid that we get from an orange?'
Orange juice.' 406

CYCLE 83:
'What do we call a person who is always drunk?
A drunkard.' 409

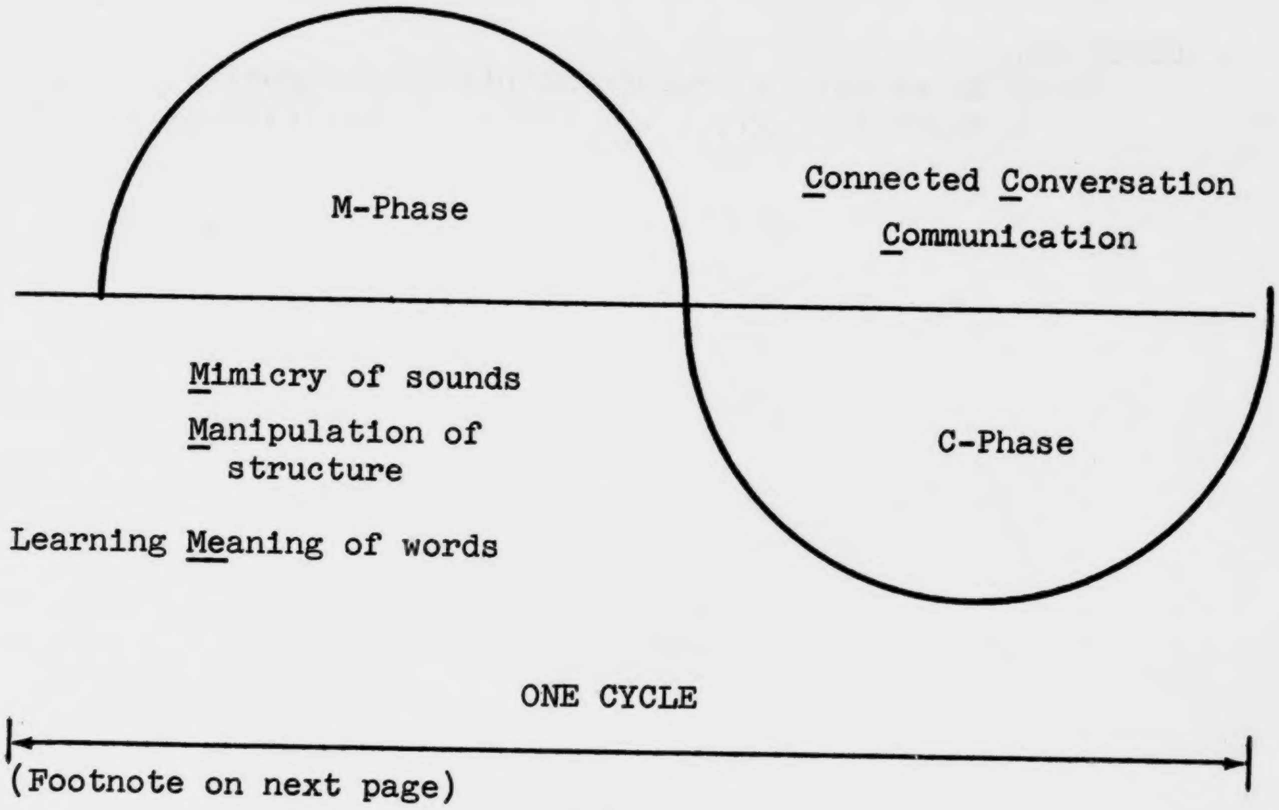
CYCLE 84:
'What do we call a person who fixes cars?
An auto mechanic.' 415

CYCLE 85:
'What do we call a person who pilots a plane?
A pilot.' 419

INTRODUCTION

This is the first of two volumes designed to teach spoken Lao to English speakers. Some dialect of Lao is spoken and understood by approximately three million persons in Laos and about ten million in Thailand. The Lao presented in this book is the Vientiane dialect, which is used in all governmental communications. It is spoken in the central part of Laos by approximately 2,000,000 persons and is understood throughout the Kingdom of Laos and in Northeast Thailand.

The material in this text is in the form of a series of 85 'cycles' in the 'microwave' format originated by Dr. Earl W. Stevick of the FSI, and first used in two 'modules' of a course in Swahili.[1] The description of the microwave format that follows is based on these two texts. Each 'unit' of a microwave course is called a cycle and consists of two 'phases'. In the first phase (M-phase) the student learns a small amount of the language and in the second phase (C-phase) he puts it to use. The diagram below illustrates this:



(Footnote on next page)

The term 'microwave' (a very short wave) emphasizes the short span of time between the presentation of new material and its actual use in real communication.

The teaching methods[2] used with the M-phase and C-phase may vary a great deal and the teacher should feel free to use the one that seems most effective to him. The sentences in the M-phase are provided with cue words and they may be done like substitution drills, but other types of drill such as mimicry drills, transformation drills, translation drills, etc., should also be used whenever they seem appropriate.

In the C-phase the instructor should exert himself to the fullest extent possible to make everything that is said in class be 'real communication'. Communication can occur only if this condition is met: One person is giving information that another person doesn't have but is interested in having. The C-phase will normally consist of questions and answers, which may be joined together to form short conversational exchanges. In the beginning this will be the limit of the student's capacity. Later on short narrations will be possible and normal. If the students are going to be interested in what is being said it follows that they may wish to have some control over what is being talked about. The instructor should encourage this. This may mean any of several things, depending on the nature of the class and their spirit of independence, etc. It may mean only that the instructor supplies new vocabulary items

---

[1] Swahili: An Active Introduction, General Conversation and Swahili: An Active Introduction, Geography ed. by Earl W. Stevick, Foreign Service Institute, Department of State, Washington, D.C., 1966

[2] More explicit and detailed suggestions for teaching microwaves are included in Notes to Teachers at the end of the Introduction. Specific advice for full exploitation of the material in each cycle is given in each cycle. All of these suggestions are given in the Lao language for the benefit of Lao teachers who may not understand English very well.

to be used in patterns already learned or it may mean that additional grammatical patterns and vocabulary items may have to be taught. In either case the instructor should allow the student to have a major voice in what is taught. The instructor should be thoroughly familiar with the materials contained in this text so that he may readily skip about when the student's interest leads him to do so. Each cycle forms an independent unit so that taking the cycles out of sequence will not cause any problems that can not be easily dealt with. This text should be looked upon as an aid to teaching and not as a complete course of instruction.

It will normally require from 250 to 300 hours in class to complete this text. A student who has done well in this part of the course should be able to perform all of the following things: order a simple meal, ask for a room in a hotel, ask and give street directions, tell time, handle travel requirements and expressions of politeness plus some of the following: introduce people to each other, discuss his work, give autobiographical information, and discuss current events.

Notes To Students

1) Listen carefully and imitate as closely as you can what the instructor says. Be prepared to try to improve what you say if the instructor doesn't approve of it. Keep in mind that in the beginning of language study you will probably have rather poor ability to monitor your own efforts. The closer your sounds resemble English the farther they will be from Lao.
2) You should always know the meaning of anything you say without trying to put a literal word-for-word English translation on it. For example, sŷa khɔ̂j sǐi fàa means 'My shirt is blue' but a word-by-word translation of this would be 'shirt I color sky.' All you need to know is what a Lao would say if he wanted to tell you that his shirt was blue.
3) The material presented to you in each cycle is very limited both in content and grammatical form. You will not find it difficult to learn the meanings, to pronounce the sentences, or to understand the

grammatical structure presented, but you should keep in mind that you will not only be expected to do the things referred to above, but you will be expected to know how to use these sentences in 'communicative' situations, i.e. situations in which you are telling someone else something he doesn't know, but needs or wants to know.

4) The 'Notes' that accompany each cycle contain information of several different kinds: (a) description of the grammatical structure in the cycle, (b) information about the meanings and uses of words, and (c) descriptions of situations in which words are used. This information should help you understand better what is being taught in the cycle. You should study it outside of class after you have learned to use the material in the cycle.

5) The 'Application' should be done after completion of all other parts of the cycle. It provides an opportunity for you to test your knowledge of different aspects of the cycle such as grammatical structure, vocabulary, etc.

6) The Lao use a writing system which is historically related to that used for Sanskrit. At a later stage in the course you will be asked to learn to read it, but it would impose an undue hardship on you in the beginning to have to learn it, so a special transcription has been devised. It is, however, provided only as an aid to memory. You will learn correct pronunciation by imitating your teacher, being corrected, and trying again, but not by reading. Although all the symbols used in the special transcription are explained in the chart that follows, it will be helpful to keep the following conventions in mind: (a) Vowel length is indicated by doubling the vowel symbol, and (b) The pitch contour on a syllable is indicated by a symbol above the vowel.

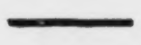
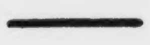
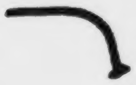
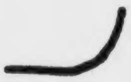
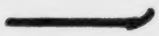
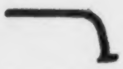
EXPLANATION OF THE SPECIAL TRANSCRIPTION USED IN THIS TEXT

Symbol	Usual English Letter	Approximate Pronunciation
b	b	similar to English b in buy
p	p (after s)	like the p in spy (no puff of air after it)
ph	p	like p in pie
d	d	similar to English d
t	t (after s)	like the t in sty (no puff of air after it)
th	t	t as in tie
k	k (after s)	like the k in ski (no puff of air after it)
kh	k	k as in kite
c	...	somewhat like j in jet
l	l	l as in long
m	m	m as in me
h	h	h as in hen
f	f	f as in fun
s	s	s as in see
n	n	n as in need
ŋ	-ng	like -ng in sing
nj	-ny	as in canyon
w	v	as in vet
j	y	as in yet
i	i	i as in sip
ii	ee	ee as in see

e	e	e as in pet
ee	ay	a as in date
ɛ	a	a as in cat
ɛɛ	a	a as in fan
y	u	somewhat like u in sugar
yy	...	nothing like it in English
ə	uh	like a in Cuba
əə	...	similar to British pronunciation of sir
a	u	somewhat like u in fun
aa	ah	a as in father
u	oo	oo as in look
uu	ou	like oo in boot
o	o	o as in cone but shorter
oo	o	o as in so
ɔ	...	....
ɔɔ	aw	aw as in law
ia, ua, iw, ew, eew, ɛw, uj, ooj, ya, yaj, and uaj		have no counterparts in English
aw	ow	ow as in cow
aaw	ow	like ow above but longer
aj	y	y as in my
aaj	y	like y in my but longer
ɔj	oy	oy as in boy
ɔɔj	oy	like oy as in boy but longer

TONES IN LAO

There are six tones in Lao. The pitch contours, names, and symbols for them are illustrated below:

	khaa	khāā	khàa	khǎa	kháaw	khâw
Pitch Contour						
Names	LOW	MID	HIGH FALLING	LOW RISING	HIGH	LOW FALLING
Symbol	NO MARK	—	\	∨	/	∧

ບົດແນະນຳສຳລັບນາຍຄຣູ (Notes to the Teacher)

ບົດຮຽນພາສາລາວແຕ່ລະບົດຢູ່ໃນປຶ້ມຫົວນີ້ປະກອບດ້ວຍສອງພາກດ້ວຍກັນຄື ພາກ M ແລະພາກ C ຊຶ່ງແຕ່ລະພາກອາດຈະປະກອບດ້ວຍຫລາຍໆຕອນ. ຢູ່ໃນພາກ M ຕາມທັມມະດາຕອນນຶ່ງຈະສອນການຖາມ ແລະອີກຕອນນຶ່ງຈະສອນການຕອບຄຳຖາມ ຊຶ່ງໃນພາກນຶ່ງອາດຈະມີດ້ວຍກັນຫລາຍຕອນ. ສ່ວນພາກ C ກໍແມ່ນການຝຶກຫັດສິ່ງທີ່ຮຽນມາແລ້ວຢູ່ໃນພາກ M ຄືນໂດຍນັກຮຽນເອງ. ຫມາຍຄວາມວ່າ ນັກຮຽນຈະຖືກປ່ອຍໃຫ້ຖາມກັນພາຍໃຕ້ການຄວບຄຸມຂອງນາຍຄຣູ.

ເມື່ອເວລາສອນພາກ M ແຕ່ລະຕອນທ່ານຈະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເປີດປຶ້ມໄວ້ກໍໄດ້ແລະຈຶ່ງແບ່ງການສອນຂອງທ່ານອອກດັ່ງນີ້: (1) ເວົ້າແຕ່ລະປໂຍກໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຟັງດ້ວຍຄວາມໄວທັມມະດາ. (2) ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເວົ້າຄຳສັບທີ່ມີເສັ້ນຂີດກ້ອງຕາມທ່ານໃຫ້ລ່ຽນແລະຖືກສຽງ ພ້ອມທັງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ຄວາມຫມາຍຂອງມັນ. (3) ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເວົ້າປໂຍກຕາມທ່ານຈົນລ່ຽນ ແລະຖືກສຽງ ພ້ອມທັງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ວ່າຂະເຈົ້າເວົ້າຫຍັງ. ຖ້າວ່າປໂຍກທີ່ສອນຫາກຍາວເກີນໄປ ກໍຈົ່ງແບ່ງສອນເທື່ອລະນ້ອຍດ້ວຍການເລີ້ມຕົ້ນແຕ່ທ້າຍປໂຍກຂຶ້ນໄປ.

ທ່ານຈະຕ້ອງເຄັ່ງຄັດຕໍ່ການອອກສຽງຂອງນັກຮຽນ ຖ້າຂະເຈົ້າເວົ້າຫຍັງບໍ່ຖືກກໍຈົ່ງພຍາຍາມຊ່ອຍແກ້ໄຂໃຫ້ມັນຖືກ. ຖ້າຫາກຍັງບໍ່ຖືກກໍຈົ່ງຊີ້ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເຫັນວ່າລາວເວົ້າຫຍັງຜິດໂດຍການເວົ້າຕາມສຽງທີ່ຜິດຂອງລາວໃຫ້ລາວຟັງກ່ອນ ແຕ່ຢ່າໃຫ້ລາວເວົ້າສຽງທີ່ຜິດຕາມ; ໃຫ້ລາວມິດຟັງເສັຽກ່ອນ. ຕໍ່ໄປກໍທຽບສຽງທີ່ຜິດກັບການອອກສຽງທີ່ຖືກໃຫ້ລາວຟັງຈົນລາວຮູ້ແລະໄດ້ຍິນຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນ ແລ້ວຈຶ່ງໃຫ້ລາວເວົ້າຕາມສຽງທີ່ຖືກຈົນເປັນທີ່ພໍໃຈຂອງທ່ານ.

ພາກ C ແມ່ນສຳລັບໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫັດໃຊ້ສິ່ງທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າຮຽນມາໃນພາກ M . ຈົ່ງແຕ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຜູ້ນຶ່ງເປັນ A ແລະຜູ້ນຶ່ງເປັນ B ແລ້ວໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າສົນທະນາກັນພາຍໃຕ້ການນຳຂອງນາຍຄຣູ. ເຫດທີ່ແຕ່ລະຕອນຂອງພາກ C ນັ້ນສັ້ນ ຫລືເປັນພຽງແຕ່ຕົວຢ່າງເທົ່ານັ້ນກໍຍ້ອນວ່າ ຢາກປ່ອຍໂອກາດໃຫ້ນາຍຄຣູທຳການຝຶກຫັດນັກຮຽນໂດຍບໍ່ມີຂອບເຂດຈຳກັດ. ຫມາຍຄວາມວ່ານາຍຄຣູຈະເລືອກໃຊ້ຄຳສັບຄຳໃດຈາກບົດຮຽນກ່ອນໆທີ່ນັກຮຽນໆມາແລ້ວມາໃຊ້ປົນກັນກໍໄດ້ທັງນັ້ນ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ມັນຈຶ່ງເປັນສິ່ງສຳຄັນຢ່າງຍິ່ງທີ່ນາຍຄຣູຈະຕ້ອງເຂົ້າໃຈໃນຈຸດປະສົງອັນນີ້.

ຫລັງຈາກການສອນພາກ C ຢ່າງພໍອົກພໍໃຈແລ້ວ ຖ້າຫາກທ່ານເຫັນວ່າມີເຣື່ອງທີ່ພໍຈະສົນທະນາກັນໄດ້ກໍໃຫ້ສົນທະນາກັນໂລດ. ແຕ່ໃນຕອນຕົ້ນໆນີ້ຈົ່ງພານັກຮຽນຝຶກຫັດເວົ້າຫລາຍໆເສັຽກ່ອນ ຕໍ່ໄປຈຶ່ງ

ໃຊ້ເວລາສົນທະນາຫລາຍຂຶ້ນ ຈຶ່ງໃນການສົນທະນານີ້ ນາຍຄຣູຈະຕ້ອງເຮັດໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນໄດ້ມີໂອກາດເວົ້າຫລາຍກວ່າຕົນ. ຢ່າປ່ອຍໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້ານັ່ງຟັງເຣື່ອງຂອງທ່ານແຕ່ຝ່າຍດຽວ.

ດົນງທ່ານຄວນແຕ່ງເຣື່ອງຂຶ້ນປະກອບເທື່ອນຶ່ງ ໂດຍອາສັຍຄຳສັບທີ່ນັກຮຽນໄດ້ຮຽນມາແລ້ວ. ຈົງແຕ່ງເຣື່ອງທີ່ກ່ຽວຂ້ອງກັບວຽກການອັນແທ້ຈິງຂອງນັກຮຽນ; ຄືຖ້າຫາກວ່າ ຂະເຈົ້າເປັນນັກການທູດກໍຈົງພຍາຍາມແຕ່ງເຣື່ອງທີ່ກ່ຽວຂ້ອງໄປໃນທາງວຽກບ້ານການເມືອງ. ຖ້າຂະເຈົ້າເປັນພັທນາກອນກໍໃຫ້ແຕ່ງເຣື່ອງທີ່ກ່ຽວຂ້ອງກັບການພັທນາສ້າງສາ ຫລືການປູກຝັງແລະລ້ຽງສັດ. ທັງນີ້ກໍເພື່ອຊ່ອຍໃຫ້ບັນຍາກາດຢູ່ໃນຫ້ອງຮຽນມີຊີວິດຊີວາຍິ່ງຂຶ້ນ.

GREETING CYCLE

A. Repeat each utterance after the instructor.

B. Give a complete sentence that includes the cue word that the instructor will give you.

C. Be sure you understand the meaning of each sentence.

M-1

sábaaj	sábaaj	to be well, comfortable	
dii	sábaajdii	good, well	Hello! Hi!

M-2

bɔɔ	sábaajdii bɔɔ?	(question word)	How are you? [Good morning, good afternoon, good evening, etc.]
càw	càw sábaajdii bɔɔ?	you	How are you?

M-3

khɔ̂ɔpcaj	sábaajdii khɔ̂ɔpcaj	thank you	Fine, thank you.
khɔ̂j	khɔ̂j sábaajdii khɔ̂ɔpcaj	I, me	I'm fine, thank you.
...dee?	càw dee?	and what, how about...?	And you?

C-1

A. sábaajdii	A. Hello. [Hi, good morning, etc.]
B. sábaajdii	B. Hello. [Hi, good morning, etc.]

C-2

A.	sábaajdii bɔɔ?	A.	How are you?
B.	sábaajdii khɔ̂ɔpcaj, càw dee?	B.	Fine, thank you, and you?
A.	khɔ̂j sábaajdii khɔ̂ɔpcaj	A.	I'm fine, thank you.

C-3

A.	càw sábaajdii bɔɔ?	A.	How are you?
B.	khɔ̂j sábaajdii khɔ̂ɔpcaj, càw dee?	B.	I'm fine, thank you, and you?
A.	khɔ̂j sábaajdii khɔ̂ɔpcaj	A.	I'm fine, thank you.

NOTES

1) A Lao sentence has two parts: a Subject and a Predicate.

Subject	Predicate
càw	sábaajdii
'You	are well, fine.'

2) The Subject is a Noun Phrase. A Noun Phrase is a (1) Noun plus modifiers, determiners, etc. or (2) a Noun Substitute (pronoun, etc.).

Noun Phrase

càw
'you'

3) The Predicate is a Verb Phrase. A Verb Phrase is a Verb (or Verbs) with optional preverbal elements and postverbal complements.

Verb Phrase

sábaajdii
'(is/are) well, fine'

4) The Subject (NP) precedes the Predicate (VP), thus a Sentence (S) can be written in this way:

S ⟶ NP + VP

which means 'A sentence consists of a Noun Phrase preceding a Verb Phrase'.

5) A Sentence can be changed into a question by the addition of a question word (Q), thus S + Q.

NP + VP + Q

càw sábaajdii bɔɔ

(you [are] well Question)

'Are you well?'

APPLICATION

1. khɔ̂j is probably the ________ of the sentence khɔ̂j sábaajdii (a) predicate (b) subject (c) question word (d) none of these.

   (All answers are at the bottom of the page.)

2. In the sentence sábaajdii bɔɔ, sábaajdii is (a) subject (b) question word (c) predicate (d) none of these.

3. In the sentence càw sábaajdii bɔɔ, bɔɔ is (a) the question word (b) predicate (c) subject (d) none of these.

4. càw sábaajdii bɔɔ is (a) a statement (b) a question (c) a command (d) none of these.

5. bɔɔ càw sábaajdii is (a) a question (b) a statement (c) a command (d) none of these.

Answers: 1b, 2c, 3a, 4b 5d

6. khɔ̂j sábaajdii is (a) a command (b) a question (c) a statement (d) none of these.

7. sábaajdii is (a) a Noun Phrase (b) a Verb Phrase (c) a question word (d) none of these.

8. bɔɔ is (a) a Verb Phrase (b) Noun Phrase (c) question word.

9. In càw sábaajdii bɔɔ , càw is (a) Noun Phrase (b) Verb Phrase (c) question.

10. In khɔ̂j sábaajdii, khɔ̂ɔpcaj, càw dee, dee means something like (a) you (b) but (c) ...how about (you) (d) it has no meaning.

CYCLE 1.

M-1

pâakkaa	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn pâakkaa	pen	This is a pen.
tó?	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn tó?	table	This is a table.
tāŋ-lìi	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn tāŋ-lìi	chair	This is a chair.
pỳm	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn pỳm	book	This is a book.
cìa	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn cìa	paper	This is paper.

M-2

njǎŋ	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn njǎŋ?	what(?)	What is this?
nàn	an nàn mɛ̄ɛn njǎŋ?	that	What is that?
fǎa	an nàn mɛ̄ɛn fǎa	wall	That is a wall.

C-1

njǎŋ	A.	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn njǎŋ?	A.	What is this?
pâakkaa	B.	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn pâakkaa	B.	This is a pen.

Answers: 6c, 7b, 8c, 9a, 10c

C-2

njǎŋ	A.	an nàn mɛ̄ɛn njǎŋ?	A.	What is that?
tāŋ-ìi	B.	an nàn mɛ̄ɛn tāŋ-ìi	B.	That is a chair.

ເມື່ອສອນ ໄຊເກີລ ນີ້ແລ້ວ ທ່ານລອງຖາມສະບາຍນັກຮຽນທ່ານເບິ່ງດູ! ຂະເຈົ້າສາມາດຖາມສະບາຍທ່ານຄືນໄດ້ລ່ຽນດີບໍ່? ຖ້າຕາກວ່າຍັງບໍ່ລ່ຽນກໍ່ໃຫ້ທ່ານຈົ່ງພາຂະເຈົ້າຫັດເວົ້າອີກແດ່.

NOTES

1) The Verb Phrase may consist of a Verb (V) with a Noun Phrase complement, thus VP ⟶ V + NP.

Verb	+	NP
mɛ̄ɛn		pâakkaa
'is		(a) pen'

The following sentence is an example of the copula verb mɛ̄ɛn followed by NP complement:

NP	+	V	+	NP
annìi		mɛ̄ɛn		pâakkaa
'This		is		(a) pen.'

2) The NP an nìi is made up of a Noun an plus a determiner nìi.an belongs to a special class of nouns that serve as substitutes for other nouns. They are called 'classifiers.' an can be used as a substitute for any inanimate noun (pen, chair, etc.). an nìi means 'this' or 'this one'.

3) tāŋ ìi, tóˀ, pâakkaa and other nouns like this (things that can be counted) have no number indication in Lao, so they may refer to one or more than one thing according to the construction they occur in.

4) njǎŋ 'what?' is a question word substitute. It substitutes for all inanimate nouns and for some other nouns in questions. Observe the following example:

	NP +	V (copula) +	NP	
Question:	an nìi	mɛ̄ɛ̄n	njǎŋ	
	(this	is	what)	'What's this?'
Response:	an nìi	mɛ̄ɛ̄n	tóʔ	
	'This	is	(a) table.'	

njǎŋ is in the same position in the sentence as the word it replaces. (NOTE: This is not the case with English what.

What is this?

This is a book.)

5. mɛ̄ɛ̄n 'be' is used to indicate the identification of things in the example given. It has other uses, but is much more restricted in use than 'be' in English.

APPLICATION

In the sentence an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n pâakkaa.

1. an nìi is (a) predicate (b) subject (c) Noun Phrase complement (d) Verb Phrase.
2. mɛ̄ɛ̄n is (a) Noun Phrase (b) question (c) Verb (d) complement of the verb.
3. pâakkaa is (a) Verb Phrase (b) Noun Phrase complement of mɛ̄ɛ̄n (c) question (d) predicate.

Answers: 1b, 2c, 3b

In the sentence an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n njǎŋ

4. njǎŋ refers to (a) an animate noun (b) the Verb Phrase (c) an inanimate noun.

5. mɛ̄ɛ̄n is (a) a copula verb (b) it is used to identify the subject (c) it is a Noun Phrase (d) it is none of these.

6. an is a classifier and refers to things, not people. True or false?

7. nìi (a) means 'this' (b) it is a Noun Phrase (c) it is a determiner (d) it precedes the classifier.

8. tāŋ ìi may mean (a) 'a chair' (b) 'chair' (c) 'the chair' (d) 'chairs' (e) 'the chairs' (f) any of these.

CYCLE 2

M-1

khɔ̂j	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n pâakkaa khɔ̂j	I, me	This is my pen.
càw	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n pâakkaa càw	you	This is your pen.
láaw	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n pâakkaa láaw	he, she	This is his(her) pen.
phùakháw	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n pâakkaa phùakháw	we (all)	This is our pen.
phùakkhɔ̂j	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n pâakkaa phùakkhɔ̂j	we	This is our pen.
phùakcàw	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n pâakkaa phùakcàw	you (pl.)	This is your pen.
khácàw	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n pâakkaa khácàw	they	This is their pen.

Answers: 4c, 5a-b, 6true, 7a and c, 8f

M-2

sɔ̌ɔdam	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n sɔ̌ɔdam phǎj?	pencil	Whose pencil is this?
sɔ̌ɔkhǎaw	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n sɔ̌ɔkhǎaw phǎj?	chalk	Whose chalk is this?
mûak	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n mûak phǎj?	hat	Whose hat is that?
sŷa-fɔ̌n	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n sŷa-fɔ̌n phǎj?	raincoat	Whose raincoat is this?
khán-hōm	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n khán-hōm phǎj?	umbrella	Whose umbrella is this?

Supplement to Cycle 2

M-1	khɔ̌ɔthòot	Excuse me. Pardon me. 'I'm sorry!' 'I apologize.'
	bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen njǎŋ	It's O.K., Sure! That's all right! It does not matter!
	khɔ̂ɔpcaj	Thank you.
	bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen njǎŋ	You are welcome. Don't mention it.

njǎŋ	A.	khɔ̌ɔthòot, an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n njǎŋ?	Excuse me, what is this?
pâakkaa	B.	an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n pâakkaa.	This is a pen.
	A.	khɔ̂ɔpcaj	Thank you.
	B.	bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen njǎŋ	You are welcome.

ໄລຍະນີ້ແມ່ນໄລຍະທີ່ທ່ານຈະຕ້ອງກຳກັບນຳການອອກສຽງຂອງນັກຮຽນຢ່າງໃກ້ຊິດ ກ່ອນທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າ
ຈະເກີດຄວາມເຄີຍຊິນກັບການເວົ້າຫລືການອອກສຽງທີ່ຜິດພາດ.

C-1

(pâakkaa)	A.	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn pâakkaa phǎj?	(pen)	Whose pen is this?
(khɔ̂j)	B.	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn pâakkaa khɔ̂j	(I)	This is my pen.

ການປ່ອຍປະລະເລີຍຕໍ່ການອອກສຽງຂອງນັກຮຽນໃນຂັ້ນນີ້ ຈະເປັນການສ້າງປັນຫາໃຫ້ແກ່ທ່ານເອງໃນພາຍໜ້າ. ສະນັ້ນ "ຢ່າເສັຽຫຍ້າປົກຂີ້ໝາ!" ຈົ່ງຄອຍແນະນຳນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານຢ່າງໃກ້ຊິດ!

C-2

(njǎŋ)	A.	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn njǎŋ?	(what)	What is this?
(mûak)	B.	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn mûak	(hat)	This is a hat.
(phǎj)	A.	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn mûak phǎj?	(who)	Whose hat is this?
(láaw)	B.	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn mûak láaw	(he)	This is his/her hat.

NOTES

1) The NP may consist of N + NP in which the second noun or Noun substitute stands in the relationship of 'possessor'[1] to the main or 'head' noun, as in this example:

Noun	+ NP (Possessor)
pâakkaa	khɔ̂j
pen	I
'my pen'	

---

[1] The term 'possessor' implies a varied set of structural and semantic relationships besides simple ownership in Lao just as it does in English.

2) phǎj 'who, whose, whom' is a question word substitute. It substitutes only for animate nouns and noun substitutes in questions.

Noun	+	NP (Possessor)
pâakkaa		láaw
pen		he
'his pen'		
pâakkaa		phǎj
pen		who
'whose pen'		

phǎj occupies the same position in the sentence as the noun it substitutes for.

3) Since the form of the pronoun does not change in Lao (like English I, me, my, mine, etc.) its structural relationship is determined by the kind of construction it is in, thus:

(a) As subject of a sentence

khôj sábaajdii
I am fine.

(b) As 'possessor' after the 'head' noun

pâakkaa khôj
pen my
'my pen'

4) Although sex distinctions are not indicated in the Lao pronoun, number distinctions are:

Singular		Plural	
khôj	'I'	phùak khôj	'we'
		phùak háw	'we'

càw	'you'	phùak càw	'you (plural)'
láaw	'he, she'	kháàw	'they'

Both phùak háw and phùak khôj mean 'we'. phùak háw is used when the speaker wishes to include the hearer in his reference. phùak khôj is used when he does not wish to include the hearer.

None of these pronouns may be used to refer to inanimate object objects, thus láaw does not mean 'it' and kháàw does not refer to 'they' for objects.

APPLICATION

1. In the NP pỳm càw, càw can be translated as (a) you (b) yours, (c) your (d) none of these.

2. In the NP sɔ̌ɔdam kháàw, kháàw means (a) they (b) their (c) theirs (d) none of these.

3. In the NP mûak láaw, láaw means (a) him (b) her (c) she (d) his (e) all of these (if) none of these.

4. In the NP pâakkaa khôj, khôj means (a) I, (b) my (c) me (d) mine.

5. In the NP tóʔ phùakcàw, phùakcàw means (a) one male person (b) more than one person (c) one female person.

6. In the NP cìa phǎj, phǎj (a) is a question word, (b) means 'what?' (c) means 'whose' (d) has no meaning.

7. càw pâakkaa means (a) my pen (b) your pen (c) his pen (d) it has no meaning.

8. Translate the following NP into English: (a) sɔ̌ɔdam phǎj (b) mûak láaw (c) tāŋ ìi càw (d) cìa khôj (e) pỳm kháàw (f) pâakkaa phùakcàw (g) sŷa fǒn phǎj (h) toʔphuakháw

---

Answers: 1c, 2b, 3b and d, 4b, 5b, 6a and c, 7d, 8whose pencil, his/her hat, your (sg.) chair, my paper, their book, your (pl.) pen, whose raincoat, our table.

CYCLE 3

M-1

hóoŋkaan	nìi mɛ̄ɛn hóoŋkaan boo?	office building	Is this an office building?
hɔ̂ɔŋkaan	nìi mɛ̄ɛn hɔ̂ɔŋkaan boo?	office	Is this an office?
hóoŋhían	nìi mɛ̄ɛn hóoŋhían boo?	school	Is this a school?
hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ	nìi mɛ̄ɛn hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ boo?	hospital	Is this a hospital?
hóoŋsǎaj	nìi mɛ̄ɛn hóoŋsǎaj boo?	post office	Is this a post office?

M-2

tálâat	mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, nìi mɛ̄ɛn tálâat	market	Yes, this is a market.
hóoŋhɛ́ɛm	mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, nìi mɛ̄ɛn hóoŋhɛ́ɛm	hotel	Yes, this is a hotel.
hàan aahǎan	mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, nìi mɛ̄ɛn hàan aahǎan	restaurant	Yes, this is a restaurant.
komtamlûat	mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, nìi mɛ̄ɛn komtamlûat	police station	Yes, this is the Police Station.
khàaj thāhǎan	mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, nìi mɛ̄ɛn khàaj thāhǎan	military base	Yes, this is the military base.

C-1

hóoŋhéεm	A. nìi mε̄ε̄n hóoŋhéεm bɔɔ?	hotel	A.	Is this a hotel?
	B. mε̄ε̄n lὲεw, nìi mε̄ε̄n hóoŋhéεm		B.	Yes, this is a hotel.

ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານຊີ້ມືໃສ່ສິ່ງຂອງຕ່າງໆ ແລ້ວຖາມແລະຕອບກັນ.

C-2

pỳm	A. an nìi mε̄ε̄n pỳm càw bɔɔ	book	A.	Is this your book?
	B. mε̄ε̄n lὲεw, an nìi mε̄ε̄n pỳm khɔ̂j		B.	Yes, this is my book.

ໃນຕອນນີ້ກໍເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນ ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມແລະຕອບກັນວ່າອັນໃດແມ່ນຂອງຜູ້ໃດ.

C-3

A.	an nìi mε̄ε̄n pỳm phǎj, pỳm càw bɔɔ?	A.	Whose book is this? Is it yours?
B.	mε̄ε̄n lὲεw, an nìi mε̄ε̄n pỳm khɔ̂j	B.	Yes, this is my book.

ນີ້ກໍເຊັ່ນດຽວກັນກັບ (1) ແລະ (2) ກ່ອນທີ່ທ່ານຈະເປີດສອນໜ້າຕໍ່ໄປ ທ່ານລອງພຍາຍາມປະດິດເຣື່ອງໃດເຣື່ອງນຶ່ງຂຶ້ນຢ່າງສັ້ນໆ ແລ້ວເລົ່າສູ່ນັກຮຽນຟັງ ໂດຍອາສັຍຄຳສັບທີ່ຮຽນມາແຕ່ຕົ້ນ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ສັງເກດເບິ່ງວ່ານັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານເຂົ້າໃຈດີຫລືບໍ່.

NOTES

1) One type of Noun Compound is composed of Noun + Noun, in which the second noun stands in a 'modifier' relationship to the first or head noun. The following are examples:

	Noun	+	Noun ('Modifier')
1)	hàan		aahǎan
	shop		food
	'restaurant'		
2)	hóoŋ		mɔ̌ɔ
	building		medical doctor
	'hospital'		
3)	khàaj		thāhǎan
	camp		military persons
	'camp, fort'		
4)	sŷa		fǒn
	clothing		rain
	'raincoat'		

Another type of Noun Compound is made up of Noun + Verb and is similar to a Sentence:

	Noun	+	Verb
1)	sɔ̌ɔ		dam
	stick		black
	'pencil'		
2)	khán		hōm
	instrument		to shade
	'umbrella'		

2) nìi means 'here, this, this one' when it occurs alone. It may also occur after the classifier as a determiner, as in an nìi 'this, this one'.

3) Observe the relationship between a question with mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ and its affirmative response:

Question:	NP	+	mɛ̄ɛn	+	NP	+	bɔɔ
	nìi		mɛ̄ɛn		hóoŋmɔ̆ɔ		bɔɔ
Affirmative Response:			mɛ̄ɛn				lɛ̀ɛw

Both the Subject NP and the Complement NP are usually absent in the response; however, the response may contain a complete confirmation after the mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw response, as follows:

Question: nìi mɛ̄ɛn hóoŋmɔ̆ɔ bɔɔ?

Response: mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw , nìi mɛ̄ɛn hóoŋmɔ̆ɔ

APPLICATION

1. In the Noun Compound sŷa fɔ̆n , sŷa is (a) the head noun, (b) the modifier of fɔ̆n (c) the classifier (d) none of these.

2. In the Noun Compound hàan aahǎan, aahǎan is (a) the head noun, (b) the modifier (c) a question word (d) none of these.

3) In the Noun Compound hóoŋ hían, hían is (a) a Noun, (b) a verb (c) VP (d) none of these.

4. khán hōm is (a) a NP (b) VP (c) S (d) Noun Compound (e) none of these (f) all of these.

5. dam sɔ̆ɔ means (a) black stick (b) pencil (c) pen (d) it is meaningless.

Answers: 1a, 2b, 3b, 4a and d, 5d

6. 'Fort' is translated into Lao, as (a) sŷa thāhǎan (b) khàaj thāhǎan (c) hóoŋ thāhǎan (d) khàaj aahǎan (e) thāhǎan khàaj.

7. 'Raincoat' is translated into Lao as (a) fǒn sŷa (b) fǒn mɔ̌ɔ (c) sŷa fǒn (d) sỳa pỳm (e) sǎa fôn.

8. A correct response to the question nìi mɛɛn hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ bɔɔ is (a) lɛ̀ɛw (b) lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ (c) mɛɛn lɛ̀ɛw (d) mɛɛn (e) mɛɛn bɔɔ (f) mɛɛn lɛ̀ɛw, nìi mɛɛn hóoŋ mɔ̌ɔ

9. If you wanted to find out if something was a book, what would you say?

10. If you wanted to find out if a certain umbrella belonged to a particular person, what would you say?

CYCLE 4

M-1

tálâat	khácàw si paj tálâat	market	They are going to the market.
hóoŋhían	khácàw si paj hóoŋhían	school	They are going to school.
hóoŋsǎaj	khácàw si paj hóoŋsǎaj	post office	They are going to the post office.
hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ	khácàw si paj hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ	hospital	They are going to the hospital.
komtamlûat	khácàw si paj komtamlûat	police	They are going to the police station.

Answers: 6b, 7c, 8c,d,f, 9(an) nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n pỳm bɔɔ, 10(an) nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n khán hōm càw bɔ̄ɔ̄ (or) (an) nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n khán hōm phǎj

M-2

càw	càw si paj sǎj?	you	Where are you going?
láaw	láaw si paj sǎj?	he, she	Where is he going?
phùakháw	phùakháw si paj sǎj?	we	Where are we going?
phùakcàw	phùakcàw si paj sǎj?	you (pl.)	Where are you going?
khácàw	khacàw si paj sǎj?	they	Where are they going?

M-3

hóoŋ-síinée	càw si paj hóoŋ-síinée bɔɔ?	theatre	Are you going to the theatre?
wāt	càw si paj wāt bɔɔ?	temple	Are you going to the temple?
hàan-khǎaj-kə̂əp	càw si paj hàan-khǎaj-kə̂əp bɔɔ?	shoe store	Are you going to the shoe store?
hàan sə̌əm-sǔaj	càw si paj hàan-sə̌əm sǔaj bɔɔ?	beauty-parlor	Are you going to the beauty parlor?
hóoŋkaan-pháasǐi	càw si paj hóoŋkaan-pháasǐi bɔɔ?	custom house	Are you going to the custom house?
hóoŋphím	càw si paj hóoŋphím bɔɔ?	printing office	Are you going to the printing office?

M-4

paj	paj	to go	Yes, I'm going.
bɔ̄ɔ	bɔ̄ɔ paj.	no	No, I am not going.

C-1

A. càw si paj hàan khǎaj-kêəp bɔɔ?	A. Are you going to the shoe store?
B. paj, khôj si paj hàan-khǎaj kêəp	B. Yes, I am going to the shoe store.

C-2

A. càw si paj hóoŋkaan-pháasǐi bɔɔ?	A. Are you going to the custom house?
B. bɔ̄ɔ, bɔ̄ɔ paj	B. No, I'm not going.

C-3

láaw	A. láaw si paj sǎj?	he, she	A. Where is he going?
hóoŋhían	B. láaw si paj hóoŋhían	school	B. He is going to school.

ຢ່າໃຫ້ຄຳໃຫມ່ອື່ນອີກ ແຕ່ພຍາຍາມໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເວົ້າປໂຍກທີ່ກຳລັງຮຽນຢູ່ໃຫ້ຄ່ອງ.

C-4

A. càw si paj hóoŋsǎaj bɔɔ?	A. Are you going to the post office?
B. mɛɛn lɛ̀ɛw, khôj si paj hóoŋsǎaj	B. Yes, I'm going to the post office.

ຢ່າລືມວ່າເມື່ອນັກຮຽນເວົ້າຫຍັງ ຂະເຈົ້າຈະຕ້ອງເວົ້າດ້ວຍຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈ.

NOTES

1) Verbs of motion frequently have locative (place word) complements.

NP +	Pre-V +	V (motion) +	Loc
khácàw	si	paj	tálâat
they	will are	go going	(to the) market

No relational word is necessary between the verb of motion and the place expression.

2) sǎj 'where' is a question word that stands in a substitute relationship with locatives:

Question:	càw si paj sǎj ?	'Where are you going?'
Response:	khôj si paj tálâat	'I'm going to the market.'

si is a pre-verb used to indicate future action here.

3) mε̄ε̄n lὲεw is an acceptable affirmative response to any question with bɔɔ as the question word.

Question:	càw si paj hóoŋsǎaj bɔɔ?	Are you going to Post Office?
Affirmative Response:	mε̄ε̄n lὲεw, (khôj si paj hóoŋsǎaj)	Yes, (I'm going to the Post Office).

The confirmation part of the response is optional, although fairly common.

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw si paj tálâat, the action (a) has already taken place (b) will take place in the future (c) takes place regularly (d) is taking place at present (e) it's impossible to tell when the action takes place.

2. In the sentence khácàw si paj hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ, hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ is (a) NP, (b) VP (c) locative (d) all of these.

3. In the sentence above, si paj is (a) a pre-verb + V (b) NP (c) VP (d) the predicate.

4. Which of the following is a possible response to the question paj sǎj ? : (a) paj tálâat (b) hóoŋsǎaj (c) mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw (d) paj pỳm (e) khɔ̂j si paj.

5. Which of the following is a correct response to the question phùakcàw si paj komtamlûat bɔɔ : (a) si paj (b) càw bɔɔ (c) paj lɛ̀ɛw (d) mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, phùakháw si paj komtamlûat (f) paj (g) All except b are possible answers.

CYCLE 5

M-1

càw si paj hóoŋhían mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	You are going to school aren't you?
an nìi mɛ̄ɛn pâakkaa mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	This is a pen, isn't it?
láaw si paj khàaj-thāhǎan mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	He's going to the military base, isn't he?
láaw si paj hàan aahǎan mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	He is going to the restaurant, isn't he?
nìi mɛ̄ɛn komtamlûat mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	This is the police station, isn't it?

Answers: 1b and d, 2a and c, 3a, 4a, 5g

M-2

bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, láaw si bɔ̄ɔ paj hóoŋhɛ́ɛm,	No, he is not going to the hotel.
láaw si paj hàan aahǎan	He is going to the restaurant.
bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, an nìi bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn pỳm,	No, this is not a book.
an nìi mɛ̄ɛn cìa	This is paper.
bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, khɔ̂j si bɔ̄ɔ paj hóoŋkaan,	No, I'm not going to the office building.
khɔ̂j si paj hóoŋsǎaj	I'm going to the Post Office.
bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, nìi bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn hóoŋhɛ́ɛm	No, this is not the hotel.
nìi mɛ̄ɛn hàan aahǎan	This is the restaurant.

C-1

(hàan aahǎan)	A. láaw si paj hàan aahǎan, mɛ̄ɛn bɔ̄ɔ?	restaurant	He is going to the restaurant isn't he?
	B. bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, láaw si paj hóoŋhɛ́ɛm	hotel	No, he is going to the hotel.

ໃນເວລາສອນນັກຮຽນ ໃຫ້ພຍາຍາມເວົ້າດວຍຄວາມໄວສົມຄວນ ຢ່າເວົ້າຊາເກີນໄປຈົນຜິດທັມມະດາ. ນັກຮຽນຈະຕອງຕັດຟັງແລະເຂົາໃຈການເວົາຢ່າງທັມມະດາແຕ່ຕົ້ນໄປ.

C-2

(tóʔ)	A.	an nìi mɛ̄ɛn tóʔ, mɛ̄ɛn bɔ̄ɔ?	table	This is a table, isn't it?
(tāŋ ìi)	B.	bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, an nìi mɛ̄ɛn tāŋ ìi	chair	No, this is a chair.

ຫລັງຈາກຟັງເບິ່ງນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານເວົ້າພາສາລາວແລ້ວ ທ່ານຄິດວ່າຄົນລາວຕາມຊົນນະບົດ ຫລືຜູ້ທີ່ຍັງບໍ່ລຶ້ງກັບສຽງຂອງນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານຈະສາມາດເຂົ້າໃຈຂະເຈົ້າບໍ່?

C-3

(hɔ̂ɔŋkaan)	A.	nìi mɛ̄ɛn hɔ̂ɔŋkaan, mɛ̄ɛn bɔ̄ɔ?	office	This is an office, isn't it?
(hɔ̂ɔŋhían)	B.	bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, nìi bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn hɔ̂ɔŋkaan, nìi mɛ̄ɛn hɔ̂ɔŋhían	classroom	No, this is not an office. This is a classroom.

ຫມາຍເຫດ: "ບໍ່ແມ່ນ" ແມ່ນຄຳຕອບຕໍ່ຄຳຖາມທີ່ໃຊ້ "ແມ່ນບໍ່?" ເທົ່ານັ້ນ; ບໍ່ແມ່ນຕໍ່ຄຳຖາມດ້ວຍຄຳວ່າ "ບໍ່?". ເຊັ່ນ: "ເຈົ້າສິໄປບໍ່?" "ບໍ່, ບໍ່ໄປ"; "ເຈົ້າສິໄປແມ່ນບໍ່?" "ບໍ່ແມ່ນ, ຂ້ນສິໄປ."

NOTES

1) mɛ̄ɛn bɔ̄ɔ can be attached to any statement (S + mɛ̄ɛn bɔ̄ɔ). The usual affirmative response is mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw with or without confirmatory statement. The usual negative response is bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn plus a Statement of the actual facts.

Question:	láaw si paj hàan aahǎan, mɛ̄ɛn bɔ̄ɔ?
Affirmative Response:	mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, (láaw si paj háan aahǎan)
Negative Response:	bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, láaw si paj hóoŋhɛ́ɛm

APPLICATION

1. Which of the following responses is a correct negative response to *láaw si paj hàan aahǎan, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ*? (a) *bɔ̄ɔ̄*, (b) *bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n*, (c) *bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj* (d) *bɔ̄ɔ̄ hàan aahǎan* (e) *bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n, láaw si paj hóoŋhɛ́ɛm*.

2. Which of these sentences is correct (a) *láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ si paj hóoŋhían* (b) *láaw si bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj hóoŋhían*, (c) *láaw si paj bɔ̄ɔ̄ hóoŋhían* (d) *láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj si hóoŋhían*.

3. Which of these sentences is correct (a) *nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔ̄ɔ̄ hóoŋhɛ́ɛm*, (b) *nìi bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n hóoŋhɛ́ɛm* (c) *hóoŋhɛ́ɛm bɔ̄ɔ̄ nìi* (d) *bɔ̄ɔ̄ nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n hóoŋhɛ́ɛm*.

4. Disagree with this statement: *láaw si paj hóoŋkaan*.

5. Disagree with this sentence: *an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n pỳm*

6. Translate the following sentences into English (a) *khácàw si paj hɔ̂ɔŋkaan* (b) *khɔ̂j si bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj tálâat* (c) *phùakcàw si paj hàan aahǎan, mɛɛn bɔ̄ɔ̄?* (d) *càw si bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj komtamlûat, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔ̄ɔ̄?* (e) *láaw si paj khàajthāhǎan* (f) *càw si paj sǎj* (g) *phùakkháw si bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ* (h) *càw si paj hóoŋhɛ́ɛm, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?*

Answers: 1b and e, 2b, 3b, 4láaw si bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj hóoŋkaan, 5an nìi bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n pỳm, 6(a) They're going to the the office. (b) I'm not going to the market. (c) You're going to the restaurant, aren't you? (d) You're not going to the Police Station, are you? (e) We're not going to the army post. (f) Where are you going? (g) We're not going to the hospital. (h) You're going to the hotel, aren't you?

CYCLE 6

M-1

súksɔ̌mbuun	khɔ̂j sȳy súksɔ̌mbuun	Souksomboun	My name is Souksomboun.
mālíican	khɔ̂j sȳy mālíican	Malichanh	My name is Malichanh.
láaw	láaw sȳy mālíican	she	Her name is Malichanh.
khón phūū nìi	khón phūu nìi sȳy mālíican.	this person	This person's name is Malichanh.
náaj khúu khɔ̂j	náaj khúu khɔ̂j sȳy mālíican	my teacher	My teacher's name is Malichanh.

M-2

càw	càw sȳy njǎŋ?	you	What's your name?
nāk hían phūū nìi	nāk hían phūu nìi sȳy njǎŋ?	this student	What's this student's name?
thāhǎan phūu nìi	thahǎan phūu nìi sȳy njǎŋ?	this serviceman	What's this serviceman's name?
tamlûat phūu nàn	tamlûat phūu nán sȳy njǎŋ?	that policeman	What's that policeman's name?
khâalàatsākaan phūu nàn	khâalàatsākaan phūu nàn sȳy njǎŋ?	that government official	What's that government official's name?

C-1

càw	A.	càw sȳȳ njǎŋ?	you	What's your name?
	B.	khɔ̂j sȳȳ...		My name is...

C-2

nākhían càw	A.	nākhían càw sȳȳ... mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	your student	Your student's name is..., isn't it?
	B.	bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n, nākhían khɔ̂j sȳȳ...		No, my student's name is...

ເວລາຝຶກຫັດບົດນີ້ໃຫ້ພຍາຍາມໃຊ້ຊື່ແທ້ຂອງຄົນທີ່ເຫັນກັນຢູ່ ຫລືຊື່ໃດຜູ້ນຶ່ງທີ່ທຸກຄົນຮູ້ຈັກ ຕລອດທັງຮູບພາບຂອງບຸກຄົນສຳຄັນຕ່າງໆ. ຢ່າລືມກັບໄປໃຊ້ຄຳທີ່ຮຽນມາແລ້ວໃຫ້ຫລາຍທີ່ສຸດເທົ່າທີ່ຈະຫລາຍໄດ້.

NOTES

1) The verb sȳȳ 'to be named' requires an animate noun (or noun substitute) as a subject and a personal name as complement:

NP	+	sȳȳ	+	NP
láaw		sȳȳ		mālíican
'She		is named		Malichanh.'

A further restriction in this type of sentence is that the name must be appropriate (in terms of sex) to the subject. Malichanh is a female name; Souksomboun is a male name.

The Noun Complement of sȳȳ may be replaced by njǎŋ in questions:

Question:	càw sȳȳ njǎŋ	'What's your name?'
Response:	khɔ̂j sȳȳ khámdɛɛŋ	'My name's Khamdaeng.'

2) Since Lao nouns are not marked for number or for the definite:indefinite category, the Noun Phrase is marked only if it contains a Classifier Phrase. If it contains Classifier+Determiner, it is marked as definite (not generic). Compare the marked and unmarked examples below:

Generic:	thāhǎan	'(a) soldier' 'soldiers'
Definite:	thāhǎan phūū nìi	'This soldier'

phūū is a classifier for human nouns. It is used only in the singular. nìi is a determiner. It refers to something near the speaker. phūū nìi is one type of classifier phrase. nàn is also a determiner. It refers to something not near the speaker.

APPLICATION

1. A possible answer to the question càw sȳȳ njǎŋ is (a) khɔ̂j mɛ̄ɛ̄n komtamlûat (b) khɔ̂j sȳȳ hɔ̂ɔŋkaan (c) khɔ̂j sȳȳ mālíican (d) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ sȳȳ.

2. Which of the following sentences is correct Lao: (a) náaj khúu láaw sȳȳ súksɔ̌mbuun (b) láaw sȳȳ nākhían (c) tóʔ sȳȳ njǎŋ (d) pâakkaa sȳȳ tāŋ ìi (e) láaw mɛ̄ɛ̄n mālíican.

3. Translate the following NP into English: (a) nākhían phūū nìi (b) thāhǎan phūū nìi (c) khâalàatsākaan phūū nàn (d) tamlûat phūū nàn (e) khón phūū nìi (f) náaj khúu phūū nàn.

4) Match the questions with correct answers:

(a)	càw sȳȳ njǎŋ?	(a)	mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw
(b)	láaw sȳȳ Peter, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔ̄ɔ̄?	(b)	khɔ̂j si paj tálâat
(c)	annìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n tóʔ bɔ̄ɔ̄?	(c)	khɔ̂j sȳȳ mālíican
(d)	càw si paj sǎj?	(d)	mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw, annìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n tóʔ

Answers: 1c, 2a, 3this student, this serviceman, that government official, that policeman, this person, that teacher 4a/c, b/a, c/d, d/b

CYCLE 7

M-1

sǔuŋ	láaw sǔuŋ bɔɔ?	to be tall, high	Is he tall?
ŋáam	láaw ŋáam bɔɔ?	to be pretty	Is she pretty?
tùj	láaw tùj bɔɔ?	to be fat	Is he fat?
cɔ̄ɔ̄j	láaw cɔ̄ɔ̄j bɔɔ?	to be skinny	Is she skinny?
tām	láaw tām bɔɔ?	to be short, low	Is he short?
dii	láaw dii bɔɔ?	to be good	Is he good?

M-2

dii	láaw pen khón dii mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	good	He is a good person, isn't he?
cajdii	láaw pen khón cajdii mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	kind	He is a kind person, isn't he?
sūa	láaw pen khón sūa mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	bad	He is a bad person, isn't he?
kàahǎan	láaw pen khón kàahǎan mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	courageous	He is a courageous person, isn't he?
dúˀmān	láaw pen khón dúˀmān mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	studious	He is a studious person, isn't he?
sálâat	láaw pen khón sálâat mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	intelligent	He is an intelligent person, isn't he?

M-3

khɛ̌ɛŋhɛ́ɛŋ	láaw pen khon khɛ̌ɛŋhɛ́ɛŋ lǎaj	strong	He is a very strong person.
ɔ̄ɔn-ɛɛ	láaw pen khón ɔ̄ɔn-ɛɛ lǎaj	weak	He is a very weak person.
caj-ɔ̄ɔn	láaw pen khón caj-ɔ̄ɔn lǎaj	softhearted	He is a very softhearted person.
cajkhɛ̌ɛŋ	láaw pen khón cajkhɛ̌ɛŋ lǎaj	hardhearted	He is a very hardhearted person.
khîikhàan	láaw pen khón khîikhàan lǎaj	lazy	He is a very lazy person.

C-1

A. láaw sǔuŋ bɔɔ?	A. Is he tall?
B. sǔuŋ	B. Yes, he is.

C-2

A. láaw pen khón (dúʔmān) mɛ̄ɛn bɔ̄ɔ?	A. He is a (studious) person, isn't he?
B. mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, láaw pen khón (dú?mān) lǎaj	B. Yes, he is a very (studious) person.

ລະວັງຢ່າປ່ອຍໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນໃຊ້ຄໍາວ່າ "ເປັນ" ຢູ່ຕໍ່ຫນ້າຄໍາວິເສດ. ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ: "ລາວເປັນອ່ອນແອ" ຫລື "ລາວເປັນຂີ້ຄ້ານ" ດັ່ງນີ້. ນັກຮຽນມັກໃຊ້ຄໍານີ້ຜິດຢູ່ສເມີ ທັງນີ້ເນື່ອງມາຈາກພາສາພື້ນເມືອງຂອງຂະເຈົ້າ.

CYCLE 8

M-1

súphàap	khón phūū nìi súphàap lǎaj	to be polite	This person is very polite.
sálâat	khón phūū nìi sálâat lǎaj	intelligent	This person is very intelligent.
ŋōō	khón phūū nìi ŋōō lǎaj	stupid	This person is very stupid.
ùan	khón phūū nìi ùan lǎaj	fat	This person is very fat.
cɔ̄ɔ̄j	khón phūū nìi cɔ̄ɔ̄j lǎaj	skinny	This person is very skinny.
dii	khón phūū nìi dii lǎaj	good	This person is very good.
sǔuŋ	khón phūū nìi sǔuŋ lǎaj	tall, high	This person is very tall.
tìa	khón phūū nìi tìa lǎaj	short (height)	This person is very short.
tām	khón phūū nìi tām lǎaj	short (height)	This person is very short.

M-2

phūū-njíŋ	phūū-njíŋ phūū nàn pen khón ŋáam	woman	That woman is a pretty person.
phūū-sǎaw	phūū-sǎaw phūū nàn pen khón ŋáam	unmarried woman	That unmarried woman is a pretty person.
nākhían njíŋ	nākhían njíŋ phūū nàn pen khón ŋáam	girl student	That girl student is a pretty person.

léekhǎanūkaan	léekhǎanūkaan phūū nàn pen khón ŋáam	secretary	That secretary is a pretty person.
phūūbāāw	phūūbāāw phūū nàn pen khón ŋáam	unmarried man	That unmarried man is handsome person.
sáaj-nūm	sáaj-nūm phūū nàn pen khón ŋáam	young man	That young man is a handsome person.

M-3

phȳan càw	phȳan càw phūū nàn pen khón cāŋdaj?	your friend friend	What sort of person is that friend of yours?
khâalàatsākaan	khâalàatsākaan phūū nàn pen khón cāŋdaj?	government official	What sort of person is that government official?
náaj-thāhǎan	náaj-thāhǎan phūū nàn pen khón cāŋdaj?	military officer	What sort of person is that military officer?
náaj-tamlûat	náaj-tamlûat phūū nàn pen khón cāŋdaj?	police officer	What sort of person is that police officer?
khón-sōŋ-nǎŋsy̌y	khón-sōŋ-nǎŋsy̌y phūū nàn pen khón cāŋdaj?	mailman	What sort of person is that mailman?
náaj-pháasǎa	náaj-pháasǎa phūū nàn pen khón cāŋdaj?	interpreter	What sort of person is that interpreter?

C-1

A. phūū njíŋ phūū nìi ŋáam bɔɔ?	A. Is this woman pretty?
B. láaw ŋáam lǎaj	B. She is very pretty.

C-2

A. sáaj-nūm phūū nàn pen khón cāŋdaj?	A. What sort of person is that young man?
B. láaw pen khón sǔuŋ.	B. He is a tall person.

ຈົ່ງພຍາຍາມໃຊ້ຮູບພາບຕ່າງໆປະກອບໃນການສອນ ຊຶ່ງຈະເປັນການຊ່ວຍໃຫ້ວຽກຂອງທ່ານເບົາລົງອີກ.
ທ່ານຄວນເປີດເບິ່ງບົດຮຽນຕໍ່ໄປກ່ອນໂມງເຂົ້າສອນ ແລ້ວຫາງຫາສິ່ງທີ່ຈະຊ່ວຍໃນການສອນໄວ້.

NOTES[1]

1) Words like sǔuŋ 'tall', dii 'good' are called stative verbs (V_s). They function as the Main Verb (MV) in sentences describing the state or condition of something or someone.

NP	+	V_s
láaw		sǔuŋ
'He	(is)	tall.'

Since words having similar meanings are adjectives in English, 'be' must be added in translation.

2) The following are transformations of the sentence láaw sǔuŋ (NP + V_s):

Negative statement:	láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sǔuŋ	'He isn't tall.'
Affirmative question:	láaw sǔuŋ bɔɔ?	'Is he tall?'
Affirmative response:	sǔuŋ	'Yes, he is.'
Negative response:	bɔ̄ɔ̄ sǔuŋ (lǎaj)	'No, not (very) tall.'

---

[1] These notes and the application are for use with cycles 7 and 8.

3) Stative verbs may also function as modifiers of NP:

NP + V_s

khón khîikhàan

(person lazy)

'lazy person'

4) NP of the type above often occur in sentences with pen as the copula verb:

NP + pen + NP

láaw pen khón sálâat

'He's an intelligent person.'

mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ may be added to form a question.

5) lǎaj occurs after V_s as an intensifier: sǔuŋ lǎaj 'very tall', etc.

6) Both khɛ̌ɛŋhɛ́ɛn 'strong, powerful' and ɔ̄ɔn ɛɛ 'weak, frail, feeble' refer to physical strength.

7) Both tìa and tām may be used to refer to the shortness of a person, but tām is usually used in referring to objects.

8) cāŋdaj 'what kind of, what sort of' is used with khón to inquire about a person's personal traits or physical features:

Question:	láaw pen khón cāŋdaj?	What sort of person is she?'
Answer:	láaw pen khón ŋáam lǎaj	She's a very pretty person.'
Answer:	láaw ŋáam lǎaj	She's very pretty.'

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence càw súphàap, súphàap is (a) NP, (b) VP, (c) Q (d) V_s (3) none of these.

2. ŋōo lǎaj is probably (a) a question (b) a negative statement, (c) an affirmative response (d) a negative response.

3. dii bɔ̄ɔ is probably (a) a negative statement (b) a question (c) NP (d) negative response (e) none of these.

4. Which of these sentences has an error in it? (a) càw bɔ̄ɔ tìa (b) láaw bɔ̄ɔ pen sálâat (c) khɔ̂j cɔ̄ɔj (d) khón phūu nìi ŋōo lǎaj.

5. Translate the following sentences into Lao: (a) What sort of person are you? (b) That young man is very skinny. (c) That friend of yours is stupid, isn't he? (d) I'm not a very courageous person. (f) She's not very fat. (g) Is she tall?

6. In the sentence khón phūu nìi ŋōo lǎaj, phūu is (a) a noun (b) a verb (c) V_s (d) classifier (e) determiner.

7. In the NP khón cɔ̄ɔj, cɔ̄ɔj is (a) NP (b) V_s (c) Q (d) modifier of khón (e) none of these.

8. In the VP dii lǎaj, lǎaj is (a) NP (b) VP (c) negative (d) intensifier of dii.

Answers: 1b and d, 2c, 3b, 4b, 5(a) càw pen khón cāŋdaj (b) sáaj nūm phūu nàn cɔ̄ɔj lǎaj (c) phȳan càw phūu nàn ŋōo, mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ (d) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ pen khón kàahǎan lǎaj (e) láaw bɔ̄ɔ tùj (ùan) lǎaj (f) láaw sǔuŋ bɔ̄ɔ, 6a and d, 7b and d, 8d.

CYCLE 9

M-1

améelīkan	càw pen khón améelīkan, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	American	Are you an American?
láaw	càw pen khón láaw, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	Laotian	Are you a Laotian?
tháj	càw pen khón tháj, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	Thai	Are you a Thai?
kháměen	càw pen khón kháměen, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	Cambodian	Are you a Cambodian?
aŋkít	càw pen khón aŋkít, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	Englishman	Are you an Englishman?
ciin	càw pen khón ciin, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	Chinese	Are you a Chinese?

M-2

améelīkan	mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j pen khón améelīkan.	American	Yes, I am an American.
njīipūn	mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j pen khón njīipūn	Japanese	Yes, I am a Japanese.
wîatnáam	mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j pen khón wîatnáam	Vietnamese	Yes, I am a Vietnamese.
phāmàa	mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j pen khón phāmàa	Burmese	Yes, I am a Burmese.
fálāŋ	mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j pen khón fálāŋ	French	Yes, I am a Frenchman.
jeelāmán	mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j pen khón jeelāmán	German	Yes, I am a German.

C-1

(aŋkít)	A. càw pen khón (aŋkít), mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	Englishman	A. Are you an (Englishman)?
	B. mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j pen khón (aŋkít).		B. Yes, I am an Englishman.

ເມື່ອນັກຮຽນເວົ້າຊື່ຂອງປະເທດຕ່າງໆໄດ້ດີແລ້ວ ຖ້າຫາກທ່ານເຫັນວ່າຈຳເປັນທ່ານຈະບອກຊື່ປະເທດອື່ນໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າອີກກໍໄດ້. ມີຊ່ອງທາງແນວໃດທີ່ທ່ານຈະປະດິດເຣື່ອງໃຫມ່ຂຶ້ນໄດ້ອີກບໍ່?

C-2

(náajkhúu)	A. (náajkhúu) phūu nàn pen khón aŋkít, mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	teacher	A. Is that (teacher) an Englishman?
(améelīkan)	B. bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, náajkhúu phūu nàn bɔ̄ɔ pen khón aŋkít. láaw pen khón (améelīkan).	American	B. No, that teacher is not an (Englishman). He is an (American).

ຜູ້ຮຽນຫວັງວ່າທ່ານຈະເປັນຄົນທີ່ເຄັ່ງຄັດຕໍ່ການອອກສຽງຂອງນັກຮຽນ. ນັກຮຽນບາງຄົນອາດຈະບໍ່ມັກລຳໄລ, ແຕ່ທ່ານກໍຢ່າໄດ້ທໍ້ຖອຍ. ຄຣູທີ່ດີຈະຕ້ອງບໍ່ເປັນຄົນອ່ອນແອ ພາຍລຸນມາທ່ານຈະບໍ່ມີຄວາມກິນແຫນງໃຈ.

NOTES

1) The Noun khón 'person' + Name of Country is used to refer to nationals of any country.

Noun +	Noun
khón	láaw
Person	Laos
'a Laotian'	

2) pen 'be' is a copula verb (like mɛ̄ɛn) and occurs only in constructions of this type: NP + pen + NP.

NP +	pen +	NP
càw	pen	khón láaw
'You are a Lao'.		

3) Sentences with pen as the linking verb can be converted to questions by adding mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ.. mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ is normally used when asking for confirmation of a fact. The response follows the usual pattern.

Statement:	càw pen khón tháj	'You are a Thai.'
Question:	càw pen khón tháj, mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	'Are you a Thai?'
Affirmative Response:	mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, (khɔ̂j pen khón tháj)	'Yes, I'm Thai.'
Negative Response:	bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, khɔ̂j pen khón láaw	'No, I'm a Lao.'

APPLICATION

1. Answer the following questions with the correct information: (a) càw sȳȳ njǎŋ? (b) càw pen khón láaw, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?

2. Translate the following NP: (a) khón aŋkít (b) thāhǎan phūū nìi (c) khácàw (d) khón ciin (e) khón láaw phūū nìi

3. In the NP nākhían phūū nàn, phūū is (a) NP, (b) determiner, (c) a classifier (d) a question word (e) it refers to people.

4. What would you say to find out if a serviceman you saw was a German?

5. In answer to a question you say that your teacher is English.

6. You are asked if you are a Thai. You say that you are not, but that you are an American.

CYCLE 10

M-1

sáhárāt améelīka	khɔ̂j máa câak sáhárāt améelīka	U.S.A.	I'm from the USA.
páthèet láaw	khɔ̂j máa câak páthèet láaw	Laos	I'm from Laos.
páthèet tháj	khɔ̂j máa câak páthèet tháj	Thailand	I'm from Thailand.
páthèet wîatnáam	khɔ̂j máa câak páthèet wîatnáam	Vietnam	I'm from Vietname.

Answers: 1.Give factual information. 2(a)Englishman (b)this serviceman (c)they (d)a Chinese (e)this Lao 3(c and e) 4thāhǎan phūū nàn pen khón jeelāmán, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ̂? 5náaj khúu khɔ̂j pen khón aŋkít, 6bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n, khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen khón tháj, khɔ̂j pen khón améelīkan

pátheet ciin	khɔ̂j máa câak pátheet ciin	China	I'm from China.
pátheet aŋkít	khɔ̂j máa câak pátheet aŋkít	England	I'm from England.

M-2

càw	càw máa câak pátheet daj?	you	What country are you from?
khón fálāŋ	khón fálāŋ máa câak pátheet daj?	Frenchman	What country are Frenchmen from?
nākhían phūū nìi	nākhían phūū nìi máa câak pátheet daj?	this student	What country is this student from?
khón phūū nàn	khón phūū nàn máa câak pátheet daj?	that person	What country is that person from?
náajkhúu phūū nàn	náajkhúu phūū nàn máa câak pátheet daj?	that teacher	What country is that teacher from?

C-1

(khón améelīkan)	A. khón améelīkan máa câak pátheet daj?	Americans	A. What country are Americans from?
(sáhárāt améelīka)	B. khón améelīkan máa câak sáhárāt améelīka	the U.S.A.	B. Americans are from the U.S.A.

ຖ້າຫາກທ່ານມີແຜນທີ່ໂລກມາໃຊ້ປະກອບກັບການສອນບົດຮຽນນີ້ ກໍຈະເປັນການດີຍິ່ງ ເພາະນອກຈາກທີ່ຢູ່ໃນປຶ້ມນີ້ແລ້ວ ທ່ານອາດຈະບອກຊື່ບ້ານເມືອງຕ່າງໆໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນອີກກໍໄດ້. ຖາມນັກຮຽນຕາມແຜນທີ່ເບິ່ງດູ!

C-2

(sǎj)	A. càw máa câak sǎj?	where	Where are you from?
(páthèet láaw)	B. khɔ̂j máa câak páthèet láaw?	Laos	I'm from Laos.

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມຊີວະປວັດຫຍໍ້ຂອງທ່ານແລະຂອງກັນແລະກັນເບິ່ງດູ! ໃນການຝຶກຫັດນີ້ຂະເຈົ້າອາດຈະຕ້ອງການຄຳໃໝ່ເປັນບາງຄຳ ທ່ານລອງຊ່ອຍຂະເຈົ້າເບິ່ງ! ແຕ່ຢ່າລືມວ່າແມ່ນການລົມຄືນເທົ່ານັ້ນ.

NOTES

1) The Main Verb (MV) may be composed of two or more individual verbs in a series. The verb máa 'to come' (like paj 'to go' and other verbs of motion) may be followed by verbs showing direction of motion (like câak '(to move) away from').

NP	MV		NP (Loc)	
khɔ̂j	máa	câak	sáhārat	améelīka
'I	come came am coming	from	the United States.	

Since there is no time indication in this sentence, máa may refer to present, past, or future time.

2) daj 'which' is a question word substitute. It substitutes for the determiners (nìi, nàn), for names, and some other nouns.

Question:	páthèet daj?	'Which country?
Response 1:	páthèet ciin	'China'
Response 2:	páthèet nìi	'This country.'

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence, khôj máa câak páthèet láaw, máa câak is (a) (a) NP (b) VP (c) MV (d) Q (e) determiner.

2. In the sentence above, páthèet láaw is (a) VP (b) Q (c) NP (d) Locative (e) S.

3. In the sentence above, the action is (a) in the past (b) the future (c) in progress. (d) none of these.

4. nākhían phūū nìi refers to (a) one person (b) two persons (c) more than two (d) it is unclear.

5. In the Vb máa câak, câak is (a) NP (b) V (c) preposition (d) VP.

6. In the Noun Compound sáhárāt améelīka, sáhárāt probably means (a) country (b) America (c) United States (d) nation (e) none of these.

7. China is translated into Lao as (a) ciin (b) ciin páthèet (c) páthèet ciin (d) phūū ciin.

8. 'This teacher of mine' would be translated into Lao as: (a) náaj khúu càw nìi (b) náaj khúu phūū nìi khôj (c) náaj khúu khôj phūū nìi (d) náaj khúu càw phūū nìi.

Answers: 1c, 2c and d, 3a and c, 4a, 5b, 6c, 7c, 8c

CYCLE 11

M-1

mýaŋ wíaŋcan	Vientiane
mýaŋ wíaŋcan jūū sǎj?	Where is Vientiane?
khŭɛŋ séedoon	Sedone province
khŭɛŋ séedoon jūū sǎj?	Where is the province of Sedone?
mýaŋ wɔ́ɔsíŋtan	Washington
mýaŋ wɔ́ɔsíŋtan jūū sǎj?	Where is Washington?
rāt mínísóotàa	Minnesota
rāt mínísóotàa jūū sǎj?	Where is the State of Minnesota?
rāt kháalíifɔ́ɔnía	California
rāt khálífɔ́ɔnía jūū sǎj?	Where is the State of California?
bàan sĭikháj	Sikhay village
bàan sĭikáj jūū sǎj?	Where is the village of Sikhay?
khŭɛŋ húaphán	Houa Phan Province
khŭɛŋ hŭaphán jūū sǎj?	Where is the province of Houa **Phan** ?
bàan kən	Ban Keun village
bàan kən jūū sǎj?	Where is the village of **Ban Keun ?**

M-2

mýaŋ wíaŋcan	The city of Vientiane
mýaŋ wíaŋcan jūū náj páthèet láaw	The city of Vientiane is in Laos.
khǔɛŋ séedoon	The province of Sedone.
khǔɛŋ séedoon jūū náj páthèet láaw	The province of Sedone is in Laos.
mýaŋ wɔ́ɔsíŋtan	Washington, D.C.
mýaŋ wɔ́ɔsíŋtan jūū náj sáhàrāt améelīkaa	Washington, D.C. is in the United States of America.
bàan sǐikháj	The village of Sikhay
bàan sǐikháj jūū náj mýaŋ wíaŋcan	The village of Sikhay is in Vientiane.
rāt khálífɔ́ɔnía	State of California
rāt khálífɔ́ɔnía jūū náj sáhárāt améelīkaa	The State of California is in the U.S.A.
mýaŋ sájŋɔ̄ɔn	Saigon
mýaŋ sájŋɔ̄ɔn jūū náj páthèet wîatnáam	Saigon is in Vietnam.
khǔɛŋ hǔaphán	Houa Phan
mýaŋ sámnɣ̌a jūū náj khǔɛŋ hǔaphán	Sam Neua is in the province of Houa Phan.

C-1

(bàan náathɔ́ɔŋ)	The village of Nathong.
A. bàan náathɔ́ɔŋ juu sǎj?	Where is the Nathong village?
(mýaŋ phóonhóoŋ)	The city of Phonhong.
B. bàan náathɔ́ɔŋ juu náj mýaŋ phóonhóoŋ	The village of Nathong is in the city of Phonhong.
(mýaŋ phóonhóoŋ)	The city of Phonhong.
A. mýaŋ phóonhóoŋ juu sǎj?	Where is the city of Phonhong?
(khǔeŋ wíaŋcan)	The province of Vientiane.
B. mýaŋ phóonhóoŋ juu náj khǔeŋ wíaŋcan	The city of Phonhong is in the province of Vientiane.
(khǔeŋ wíaŋcan)	The province of Vientiane.
A. khǔeŋ wíaŋcan juu sǎj?	Where is the province of Vientiane?
(pátheet láaw)	Laos.
B. khǔeŋ wíaŋcan juu náj pátheet láaw	The province of Vientiane is in Laos.

ຈົ່ງໃຊ້ແຜນທີ່ປະເທດລາວ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຊີ້ແລະບອກຊື່ບ້ານແລະເມືອງຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! ຂະເຈົ້າບອກໄດ້ຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງແລະຢ່າງງ່າຍດາຍບໍ່?

C-2

(hóoŋhían càw)	your school
A. hóoŋhían càw j̄uu sǎj?	Where is your school?
(mýaŋ áalíŋtán)	Arlington
B. hóoŋhían khɔ̂j j̄uu náj mýaŋ áalíŋtán	My school is in Arlington.
(mýaŋ áalíŋtán)	Arlington
A. mýaŋ áalíŋtán j̄uu sǎj?	Where is Arlington?
(rāt wéəcíinía)	Virginia
B. mýaŋ áalíŋtán j̄uu náj rāt wéəcíinía	Arlington is in the State of Virginia.
(rāt wéəcíinía)	Virginia
A. rāt wéəcíinía j̄uu sǎj?	Where is the State of Virginia?
(sáhárāt améelīkaa)	The U.S.A.
B. rāt wéəcíinía j̄uu náj sáhárāt améelīkaa	The State of Virginia is in the United States.

ທ່ານລອງອະທິບາຍການແບ່ງລະບົບການປົກຄອງຢູ່ໃນປະເທດລາວຢ່າງຫຍໍ້ໆໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນທ່ານເຂົ້າໃຈເບິ່ງດູ! ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າດັ່ງນີ້: ຢູ່ໃນປະເທດລາວ, ຫລາຍໆຄອບຄົວທີ່ປະກອບດ້ວຍຈາຍຈະກັນຢ່າງນ້ອຍສິບຄົບຂຶ້ນໄປ ຈະຕັ້ງບ້ານນຶ່ງຂຶ້ນໄດ້; ຫລາຍໆບ້ານໂຮມກັນເຂົ້າເປັນຕາແສງ; ຫລາຍໆຕາແສງໂຮມກັນເຂົ້າເປັນເມືອງ; ຫລາຍໆເມືອງໂຮມກັນເຂົ້າເປັນແຂວງ ແລະ ຫລາຍໆແຂວງໂຮມກັນເຂົ້າເປັນປະເທດ. ລະວັງຢ່າເຫລີງເວົ້າໄປຈົນເກີນຄວາມສາມາດຂອງນັກຮຽນທີ່ຈະເຂົ້າໃຈໄດ້ ເພາະມັນຈະເປັນການເສັຽເວລາເປົ່າໆ.

NOTES

1) This sentence type may be used to indicate geographical location:

NP + jūū + LOC

mýaŋ sámnўa jūū náj khŭɛŋ hŭaphán

'Sam Neua is located in the province of Hona-phan.'

2) The verb jūū 'to be located in' is followed by Locatives (LOC). The term 'locative' refers to place e xpressions. It includes NP, Prep. + NP, and Adverbs of Place.

3) In questions LOC is replaced by sǎj 'Where (at)?'

4) bàan 'village', mýaŋ 'city', and khŭɛŋ 'province' are all political and administrative divisions in Laos.

APPLICATION

1. Answer these questions giving correct information: (a) mýan wíaŋcan jūū sǎj (b) mýaŋ sájŋɔ̄ɔn jūū náj páthèet wìatŋaam, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?

2. Provide a possible question to each of these answers: (a) bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n, láaw si paj hóoŋhɛ́ɛm. (b) khŭɛŋ pâaksée jūū náj páthèet láaw. (c) mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛɛw, phùakháw pen khón njīīpūn. (d) sáhárāt améelīka.

3. Fill in the blanks with the correct word: (a) ______________ wíaŋcan jūū náj ______________ láaw. (b) rāt níwjɔ́ɔk jūū náj ______________ améelīkaa. (c) ______________ náathɔ́ɔŋ jūū naj ______________ phóonhóoŋ. (d) ______________ wíaŋcan jūū náj ______________ láaw.

Answers: 1(a)jūū náj páthèet láaw (b)mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw 2(a)láaw si paj hóoŋhían, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ (b)khŭɛŋ pâaksée jūū sǎj (c)phùakháw pen khón njīīpūn, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ (d)láaw máa câak pâthèet daj. 3(a)mýan/páthèet (b)sáhárāt (c)bàan, mýaŋ (d)khŭɛŋ/páthèet

CYCLE 12

M-1

kin khâw	To have one's meal.
khɔ̂j kin khâw	I am having my meal.
hētwìak	To do work.
láaw hētwìak	He works.
āan nǎŋsy̌y	To read (letters).
phùakháw āan nǎŋsy̌y	We read.
khǐan nǎŋsy̌y	To write (letters).
khácàw khǐan nǎŋsy̌y	They write.
hían pháasǎa	To study language.
càw hían pháasǎa	You study language.
sɔ̌ɔn pháasǎa	To teach language.
náajkhúu sɔ̌ɔn pháasǎa	The teacher teaches language.
khúakin	To cook.
náaŋ mālíican khúakin	Malichanh cooks.

M-2

hēt	to do
càw hēt njǎŋ?	What are you doing?
sỳy	to buy
càw sỳy njǎŋ?	What are you buying?

bə̄ŋ	to look at
càw bə̄ŋ njǎŋ?	What are you looking at?
hěn	to see
càw hěn njǎŋ?	What do you see?
sɔ̀ɔkhǎa	to look for
càw sɔ̀ɔkhǎa njǎŋ?	What are you looking for?
pɛɛŋ	to fix, repair
càw pɛɛŋ njǎŋ?	What are you fixing?

C-1

A. càw hēt njǎŋ?	What are you doing?
B. khɔ̂j hētwìak.	I am working.

ເມື່ອຮຽນມາເຖິງໄລຍະນີ້ແລ້ວ ນັກຮຽນອາດຈະຖາມເອົາຄຳໃໝ່ອີກ. ຢ່າບອກຄຳໃໝ່ໃຫ້ແກ່ຂະເຈົ້າຫລາຍເກີນໄປ! ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ແຕ່ສະເພາະຄຳທີ່ເຫັນວ່າຈຳເປັນໃຊ້ໃນປັດຈຸບັນເທົ່ານັ້ນ!

NOTES

1) kin 'to eat', hēt 'to do, work', and āan 'to read' are action verbs that require NP complements.

NP +	V +	NP
khɔ̂j	kin	khâw
(I	eat	rice)

'I'm having a meal.'

The NP complement can be replaced by njǎŋ in questions:

Question: càw hían njǎŋ 'What are you studying?'
Answer: khɔ̂j hían pháasǎa láaw 'Laotian.'

2) bə̄ŋ means 'to look at (something or someone)'. hěn means 'to see, perceive'.

3) Both sɔ̀ɔk and hǎa separately mean 'to look for something'; sɔ̀ɔkhǎa has the same meaning. Combinations of two verbs with the same or similar meaning are very common in Lao.

4) khúakin is the usual verb compound for 'the cooking of food.'

5) In VP hēt wìak, wìak means 'work (in general)' and hēt means 'to do, make'. hēt wìak means 'to have a job' or 'to be working on something'.

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw hēt wìak , wìak is (a) subject (b) VP (c) NP (d) complement to verb hēt.

2. A possible answer to the question càw hēt njǎŋ is (a) bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n (b) bɔ̄ɔ̄ hēt (c) khɔ̂j kin khâw (d) bɔ̄ɔ̄ njǎŋ.

3. A possible answer to the question láaw hían njǎŋ would be (a) pháasǎa láaw (b) bɔ̄ɔ̄ hían (c) láaw hían pháasǎa aŋkít (d) bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen njǎŋ.

4. In the sentence náajkhúu sɔ̌ɔn pháasǎa, sɔ̌ɔn is (a) MV (b) Subject (c) NP complement (d) classifier.

5. Complete the following sentences: (a) láaw āān... (b) khɔ̌j paj hēt... (c) khácàw kin... (d) càw hían...

Answers: 1c and d, 2c, 3a and c, 4a, 5(a)nǎŋsɯ̌ɯ (b)wìak (c)khâw (d)pháasǎa (láaw, etc.)

6. Translate the following sentences into English: (a) càw bə̄ŋ khán hōm bɔɔ (b) càw sɔɔkhǎa njǎŋ (c) láaw si pɛɛŋ hýan láaw (d) khɔ̂j hěn thāhǎan phūū nàn (e) phúak háw sỳy mûak jūū tálâat.

CYCLE 13

M-1

kin	eat
háw si kin jūū sǎj?	Where are we going to eat?
jūū nìi bɔɔ?	Here?
nāŋ	sit
háw si nāŋ jūū sǎj?	Where are you going to sit?
jūū nìi bɔɔ?	Here?
lómkan	chat
háw si lómkan jūū sǎj?	Where are we going to chat?
jūū nìi bɔɔ?	Here?
thāājhùup	take pictures
háw si paj thāājhùup jūū sǎj?	Were are we going to take pictures?
jūū nìi bɔɔ?	Here?
lìi	hide
háw si paj lìi jūū sǎj?	Where are we going to hide?
jūū nìi bɔɔ?	Here?

Answer: 6(a)Are you looking at the umbrella? (b)What are you looking for? (c)He will repair his house. (d)I see that soldier. (e)We bought a hat at the market.

M-2

kin	eat
bɔ̄ɔ̄, paj kin jūū hân thɔ̄ʔ	No. Let's go eat there.
jyyn	stand
bɔ̄ɔ̄, paj jyyn jūū hân thɔ̄ʔ	No. Let's go stand there.
thâa	wait
bɔ̄ɔ̄, paj thâa jūū hân thɔ̄ʔ	No. Let's go wait there.
sûup jaa	smoke
bɔ̄ɔ̄, paj sûup jaa jūū hân thɔ̄ʔ	No. Let's go smoke there.
sáwmȳaj	rest
bɔ̄ɔ̄, paj sáwmȳaj jūū hân thɔ̄ʔ	No. Let's go rest there.

C-1

A. càw si sáwmyāj jūū sǎj? jūū nìi bɔɔ?	A. Where are you going to rest? Here?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂j si paj sáwmȳaj jūū hân	B. No. I'm going to rest there.

C-2

A. háw si thâa láaw jūū sǎj? jūū nìi bɔ̄ɔ̄?	A. Where are we going to wait for him? Here?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, paj thâa láaw jūū hân thɔ̄ʔ	B. No. Let's go wait for him there.

ຄຳວ່າ"ສິ"ບອກເຖິງປັດຈຸບັນນະການແລະອະນາຄົດການ ແຕ່"ໄດ້"ບໍ່ໄດ້ບອກເຖິງອະດີດການສເນີໄປ.

NOTES

1) After jūū or Verbs of Motion (paj, máa, etc.) nìi means 'here'; hân 'there'.

2) The particle thɔ̄ʔ occurs at the end of sentences which 'urge' or 'suggest' a particular course of action.

APPLICATION

1. Complete these sentences: (a) láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ jūū hân. láaw jūū... (b) jūū nìi bɔɔ? bɔ̄ɔ̄ jūū... (c) jūū...? jūū nìi bɔɔ?

2. Change the following statements into suggestions for action: (a) paj jyyn jūū hân... (b) paj kin khâw... (c) paj thāāj hùup...

3. Complete the following sentences (Using the English cue word): (a) paj... jūū sǎj (hide) (b) háw si lómkan jūū... (where?) (c) paj sáwmȳaj jūū... thɔ̄ʔ (there). (d) bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj... jūū hân thɔ̄ʔ (wait) (e) ...nìi bɔɔ? (here?) (f) nāŋ jūū hân... (Let's...)

Answers: 1a nìi, 2b hân 1c sǎj 2a thɔ̄ʔ 2b thɔ̄ʔ 2c thɔ̄ʔ
3a lìi, 3b sǎj 3c hân 3d thâa 3e jūū 3f thɔ̄ʔ

CYCLE 14

M-1

phāk	to stay
láaw phāk jūū sǎj?	Where is he staying?
hētkaan	to work
láaw hētkaan jūū sǎj?	Where is he working?
tátphǒm	to have one's hair cut
láaw tátphǒm jūū sǎj?	Where did he have his hair cut?
thóorāsáp	to make a phone call
láaw thóorāsáp jūū sǎj?	Where did he make the phone call?
sōŋ thóorālèek	to send a cable
láaw sṓŋ thóorālèek jūū sǎj?	Where did he send the cable?
lîn	to play
láaw lîn jūū sǎj?	Where is he playing?
fáŋ wīthānjūʔ	to listen to the radio
láaw fáŋ wīthānjūʔ jūū sǎj?	Where did he listen to the radio?

M-2

hýan khɔ̂j	My house.
láaw phāk ɟūū hýan khɔ̂j	He is staying in my house.
hàantátphǒm	The barber shop.
láaw tátphǒm ɟūū hàan tátphǒm	He has his hair cut at the barbershop.
də̄n bàan	The yard of the house
láaw lîn ɟūū də̄n bàan	He is playing in the yard of the house.
hɔ̂ɔŋ pásúm	The meeting room.
láaw fáŋ ɟūū hɔ̂ɔŋ pásúm	He listened to it in the meeting room.
hóoŋsǎaj	The Post Office.
láaw sɔ̄ŋ thóorālèek ɟūū hóoŋsǎaj	He sent the cable at the Post Office.
tùuthóorāsáp sǎathǎarānāʔ	The public phone booth.
láaw thóorāsáp ɟūū tùu thóorāsáp sǎatháarānāʔ	He made a phone call at the public phone booth.

C-1

(phāk)	to stay
A. láaw phāk ɟūū sǎj?	Where is he staying?
(hóoŋhɛ́ɛm)	hotel
B. láaw phāk ɟūū hóoŋhɛ́ɛm	He is staying at a hotel.

"ຂອງກິນ ບໍ່ກິນ ມັນເນົ່າ - ຂອງເກົ່າ ບໍ່ເລົ່າ ມັນລືມ" ຈົ່ງພານັກຮຽນໃຊ້ຄຳທີ່ຮຽນມາແລ້ວຄືນອີກ!

C-2

(phȳan càw)	Your friend.
A. phȳan càw ɉūū sǎ̆ɉ?	Where is your friend?
(hóoŋhɛ́ɛm)	Hotel
B. láaw ɉūū hóoŋhɛ́ɛm	He is at a hotel.
(phāk)	to stay
A. láaw phāk ɉūū hóoŋhɛ́ɛm bɔɔ?	Is he staying at the hotel?
(mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw)	Yes.
B. mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, láaw phāk ɉūū hóoŋhɛ́ɛm	Yes, he is staying at the hotel.

ທ່ານລອງປະດິດເຣື່ອງໃດເຣື່ອງນຶ່ງຂຶ້ນອີກເບິ່ງດູ! ເອົາເຣື່ອງການແຕ່ງເຣື່ອງປະກອບບົດຮຽນນີ້ ຖ້າຫາກທ່ານພຍາຍາມແຕ່ງໄວ້ກ່ອນກໍ່ຈະເປັນການດີ. ເມື່ອໃຊ້ແລ້ວທ່ານຈຶ່ງເກັບໄວ້ດັດແປງໃຊ້ຄາວໜ້າ.

NOTES

1) The Verb Phrase ɉūū + Locative is frequently combined with sentences to indicate location of some activity.

Sentence	+	ɉūū + LOC
láaw phāk		ɉūū hȳan khɔ̂ɔ̆ɉ
'He is staying		at my house'.
láaw fáŋ wīthānɉū?		ɉūū hɔ̂ɔŋ pásúm
'He listened to the radio		in the meeting room.'

sǎ̆ɉ can replace the Locative in this construction in questions:

láaw phāk ɉūū sǎ̆ɉ ?	'Where is he staying?'
láaw fáŋ wīthānɉū? ɉūū sǎ̆ɉ ?	'Where did he listen to the radio?'

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw phāk jūū hýan khɔ̂j, jūū hýan khɔ̂j is (a) Vb (b) NP (c) VP (d) N

2. In the above sentence, jūū is (a) NP (b) preposition (c) verb (d) locative (e) none of these.

3. In the above sentence, jūū hýan khɔ̂j indicates (a) subject (b) location (c) negative (d) none of these.

4. Complete the following sentences: (a)...jūū hàan tát phǒm (b) láaw lîn...dә̄n bàan (c) láaw sɔ̄ŋ thóorālèek jūū... (d) láaw...wīthānjū?jūū sǎj (e) láaw...jūū hóoŋhɛɛm (g) khɔ̂j si...jūū tùu...sǎathaaranā?

5. Answer the following questions: (a) láaw lîn jūū sǎj.... (b) láaw fáŋ wīthānjū?jūū sǎj? (c) càw hían pháasǎa láaw jūū sǎj? (d) láaw tát phǒm jūū sǎj? (e) láaw thóorāsap jūū sǎj?

Answers: 1c, 2c, 3b, 4(a)(láaw) tátphǒm (b)jūū (c)hóoŋsǎaj (d)fáŋ (e)phāk (f)hóoŋhían (sɔ̌ɔn) pháasǎa (g)thóorāsáp....thóorāsáp (NOTE: In some cases other answers may also be correct. If you are not sure, ask your instructor.) Possible answers: 5(a)(láaw lîn) jūū dә̄n bàan, etc.) (b)jūū hóoŋhɛ́ɛm (hýan láaw, etc.) (c)jūū hóoŋhían (sɔ̌ɔn) pháasǎa (láaw) (d)jūū hàan tátphǒm (e)jūū tùu thóorāsáp sǎatháaranā?

CYCLE 15

M-1

paj kinkhâw	to go to eat
láaw si paj kinkhâw jūū hàan aahǎan	He is going to eat at the restaurant.
máa hētkaan	to come to work
láaw si máa hētkaan jūū hóoŋkaan nìi	He is coming to work in this office building.
máa pásúm	to come to attend the meeting
láaw si máa pásúm jūū hɔ̂ɔŋpásúm	He is coming to attend a meeting in the conference room.
paj thóorāsáp	to make a phone call
láaw si paj thóorāsáp jūū hɔ̂ɔŋkaan láaw	He is going to make a phone call in his office.
máa sɔ̀ɔkhǎa	come to look for
láaw máa sɔ̀ɔkhǎa càw jūū hóoŋhían	He came to look for you at school.
paj bə̄ŋ	go to look at
láaw paj bə̄ŋ khàajthāhǎan jūū rāt khālīfɔ́ɔnía	He went to see the military post in the State of California.

M-2

njǎŋ	what
láaw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūu hàan tátphǒm?	What is he going to do at the barbershop?
sǎj	where
láaw si paj sōŋ thóorālèek jūu sǎj?	Where is he going to send the cable?
njǎŋ, sǎj	what, where
láaw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūu sǎj?	Where is he going to do what?
njǎŋ	what
láaw si máa hēt njǎŋ jūu nìi?	What is he coming to do here?
njǎŋ	what
láaw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūu hân?	What is he going to do there?

C-1

A. càw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūu hàan tátphǒm?	What are you going to do at the barbershop?
B. khɔ̂j si paj tátphǒm	I am going to have my hair cut.

ບົດນີ້ມີຈຸດປະສົງທີ່ຈະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫັດໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ"ໄປ"ແລະ"ມາ"ຢູ່ຕໍ່ຫນ້າຄຳກິຣິຍາ. ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ແລ້ວບໍ່ວ່າ
ເວລາໃດເຮົາເວົ້າວ່າ "ຂ້ອຍໄປກິນເຂົ້າ" ແລະເວລາໃດເຮົາເວົ້າວ່າ "ຂ້ອຍມາກິນເຂົ້າ".

C-2

A. càw si paj sǎj?	Where are you going?
B. khɔ̂j si paj hàan aahǎan	I am going to the restaurant.
A. càw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūu hân?	What are you going to do there?
B. khɔ̂j si paj kinkhâw	I am going to eat.

ທົດສອບຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈໃນບົດຮຽນບົດນີ້ຂອງນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານເບິ່ງດູ! ຂະເຈົ້າໃຊ້"ໄປ"ແລະ"ມາ"ຖືກຕ້ອງບໍ່?

NOTES

1) paj 'to go' and máa 'to come' may be followed by a VP indicating an activity (kin khâw, etc.). This may be followed by jūu + Loc indicating the location.

NP + si paj + Activity + Location

láaw si paj kin khâw jūu hàan aahǎan
'He is going to eat at the restaurant.'

This sentence is made up of 3 basic underlying sentences:

(1) láaw si paj ....
(2) (láaw) kin khâw
(3) (láaw) jūu hàan aahǎan

In questions the VP indicating Activity can be replaced by hēt njǎŋ 'do what?'; the VP of Location by jūu sǎj.

Statement: láaw si paj kin khâw jūu hàan aahǎan ?
Question (Activity): láaw si paj hēt njǎŋ (jūu hàan aahǎan) ?
Question (Location): láaw si paj kin khâw jūu sǎj?

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw si paj sɔ̀ɔkhăa pỳm láaw jūū hóoŋmɔ̆ɔ, sɔ̀ɔkhăa pỳm is a VP indicating (a) location (b) time (c) activity (d) actor (e) none of these.

   jūū hóoŋmɔ̆ɔ is a VP indicating (a) purpose (b) location (c) subject (d) time.

   si paj indicates (a) past time (b) future time (c) present time (d) indefinite time.

2. In the sentence láaw máa sɔ̀ɔkhăa càw jūū hóoŋhían the time of the action is probably (a) present (b) future (c) past (d) future or present.

3. What are the 3 underlying sentences of the following sentence: láaw si paj sɔ̄ŋ thóorālèek jūū hóoŋsăaj

   (a) ______________________________

   (b) ______________________________

   (c) ______________________________

4. Translate the following sentences into English: (a) láaw si si paj sɔ̀ɔkhăa pỳm càw (b) khɔ̂j paj bə̄ŋ wīthānjūʔ jūū hàan aahăan (c) laaw si bɔ̄ɔ paj hēt wíak jūū myaŋ sajŋɔ̄ɔn (d) láaw máa hēt njăŋ jūū hɔ̂ɔŋ pasúm (e) càw si paj sỳy sŷafɔ̆n jūū săj (f) phăj maa lîn jūū də̄n bàan càw (g) phȳan khɔ̂j si paj sɔ̄ŋ thóorālèek jūū hóoŋsăaj.

Answers: 1c, b and b, 2c, 3(a)láaw si paj...(b)(láaw) sɔ̄ŋ thóorālèek (c)(láaw) jūū hóoŋsăaj 4(a)He is going to look for your book. (b)I went to look at the radio at the restaurant.(c)He will not go work in Saigon. (d)What did he come to do at the meeting? (e)Where will you buy a raincoat? (f)Who came to play in your yard? (g)My friend will go send a telegram at the Post Office.

CYCLE 16

M-1

máa nîi	Come here.
láaw si máa nîi	He is coming here.
paj hân	Go there.
láaw si paj hân	He is going there.
máa phìi	Come over here.
láaw si máa phìi	He is coming over here.
paj phùn	Go over there.
láaw si paj phùn	He is going over there.

C-1

A. láaw si máa nîi bɔɔ?	Is he coming here?
B. bɔ̄ɔ, láaw si paj hân	No. He is going there.

C-2

A. càw si paj phùn bɔɔ?	Are you going over there?
B. bɔ̄ɔ, khɔ̂j si máa phìi	No. I'm coming over there.

NOTES

1) Both nîi and phìi refer to space near at hand, but nîi is more specific ('right here') and phìi is more general ('over here'). nîi is more likely to be used in commands, such as máa nîi 'come here.'

2) hân means 'there'. phùn means 'way over there.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences: (a) láaw si máa... (or) ... (b) láaw si paj... (or) ...

2. Translate the following sentences into Lao: (a) Come here. (Command). (b) Go over there. (c) Go way over there. (d) Come over here.

3. (a) What would you say if you wanted to indicate that something was in the same room with you but was about 8 feet away?

   (b) What would you say if you wanted someone to come over in your general area but not right close to you?

   (c) If you were asked where someone was, what would you say to indicate that he was a considerable distance away but still visible?

   (d) If you were asked where someone was, how would you indicate that he wasn't near you?

Answers: 1(a) nîi or phìi (b)hân or phùn 2(a)máa nîi (b)paj hân (c)paj phùn (d)máa phìi 3(a)jūū hân (b)máa phìi (c)jūū phùn (d)(láaw) bɔ̄ɔ̄ jūū nîi

CYCLE 17

M-1

sáthǎanthùut améelīkan	American Embassy
càw hùu tháaŋ paj sáthǎan thùut améelīkan bɔɔ?	Do you know the way to the American Embassy?
hýan láaw	his house
càw hùu tháaŋ paj hýan láaw bɔɔ?	Do you know the way to his house?
hóoŋ síinée nìi	this movie house
càw hùu tháaŋ paj hóoŋ síinée nìi bɔɔ?	Do you know the way to this movie house?
hàan tátphǒm	barbershop
càw hùu tháaŋ paj hàan tátphǒm bɔɔ?	Do you know the way to the barbershop?
komkhóosánáakaan láaw	Lao information service
càw hùu tháaŋ paj kom khóosánáakaan láaw bɔɔ?	Do you know the way to the Lao information service?

M-2

lìaw sàaj	turn left
hùu, lìaw sàaj jūū thánǒn nâa.	Yes (I know), turn left on the next street.
lìaw khǔa	turn right
hùu, lìaw khǔa jūū thánǒn nâa	Yes, turn right on the next street.

paj sȳy sȳy	go straight ahead
hùu, paj sȳy sȳy taam thánɔ̆n nîi	Yes, go straight ahead on this street.
lîaw khŭa lɛ̀ɛw paj sȳy sȳy	turn right then go straight
hùu, lîaw khŭa jūu thánɔ̆n làan sàaŋ lɛ̀ɛw paj sȳy sȳy	Yes, turn right on Lane Xang Street then go straight.
bɔ̄ɔ	no
bɔ̄ɔ, khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ hùu	No, I don't know.

C-1

(hàan tátphɔ̆m)

A. càw hùu tháaŋ paj hàan tátphɔ̆m bɔɔ?	Do you know the way to the barbershop?

(sàaj, thánɔ̆n nâa)

B. hùu, lîaw sàaj jūu thánɔ̆n nâa	Yes, turn left on the next street.

ຈົ່ງພຍາຍາມຈຳກັດການໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ "ຮູ້" ໄວ້ແຕ່ສະເພາະກັບ "ຮູ້ທາງ" ເສັຽກ່ອນ. ຢ່າພຍາຍາມໃຊ້ໃຫ້ກວ້າງກວ່ານີ້! ໃນບົດຕໍ່ໄປຍັງຈະມີການສອນຄຳວ່າ "ຮູ້" ໃນທຳນອງໃຫມ່ອີກ. ໃນຂັ້ນນີ້ນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານອາດຈະສົນທະນາກັບທ່ານໄດ້ຫລາຍເຕີບແລ້ວ. ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານຝຶກຫັດໃຊ້ພາສາລາວສເມີ!

NOTES

1) The noun tháaŋ 'way, direction' can be followed by Verb Phrase 'modifiers', such as paj hýan láaw 'go to his house' indicating 'destination'. The whole construction tháaŋ + VP is a Noun Phrase and may serve as the NP complement of a verb, such as hùu 'to know'.

NP + MV + NP

khɔ̂j hùu tháaŋ paj hóoŋ síinée
(I know way go building cinema)
'I know the way to the movies.'

2) Where English uses Verb+Adverbials or Preposition+Noun Phrase to indicate directions and locations, Lao normally has Verb+Verb or Verb+VP, as in the following examples:

(1) English: Verb + Adverbial
Turn left/right.

Lao: Verb + Verb
lìaw sàaj/khŭa

(2) English: Verb + Adverbial + Preposition-NP
Go straight ahead on this street.

Lao: Verb + Verb + Verb Phrase
paj sȳȳ sȳȳ taam thánɔ̆n nìi

3) The affirmative response to bɔ̄ɔ̄ type (Yes-No) questions is repetition of the Verb; the negative response is bɔ̄ɔ̄, bɔ̄ɔ̄ + Verb.

NP + MV + Complement + Question

càw hùu tháaŋ paj tálâat bɔɔ
'Do you know the way to the market?'

Affirmative
Response: hùu, (lìaw sàaj jūū thánɔ̆n nâa)
'Yes, I do. (Turn left at the next block.)'

Negative
Response: bɔ̄ɔ̄, (khɔ̂j) bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùu
'No, I don't.'

The negative is normally followed by another sentence supplying additional information.

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence láaw hùu tháaŋ paj hýan càw, paj hýan càw is (a) the predicate (b) VP (c) 'modifier' of thaaŋ (d) NP (e) verb.

2. In the above sentence tháaŋ paj hýan càw is (a) NP (b) VP (c) predicate (d) complement of the verb hùu (e) subject of the sentence.

3. In the sentence lìaw sàaj (a) both lìaw and sàaj are verbs (b) sàaj is an adjective (c) neither is a verb (d) only lìaw is a verb.

4. In the sentence paj sȳȳ sȳȳ taam thánɔ̆n nìi, tam is (a) a preposition (b) NP (c) verb (d) VP (e) particle (f) it means 'to follow or go along'.

5. Complete the following sentences: (a) lìaw... jūū thánɔ̆n nâa (b) ...sȳȳ sȳȳ (c) bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂j... hùu (d) ...khŭa jūū thánɔ̆n làan sàaŋ (e) càw hùu thaaŋ... hýan láaw bɔɔ (f) hùu, paj ... ... taam... nìi.

Answers: 1b and c, 2a and d, 3a, 4c and f, 5(a)sàaj/khŭa (b)paj (c)bɔ̄ɔ̄ (d)lìaw (e)paj (f)sȳȳ sȳȳ... thánɔ̆n

CYCLE 18

M-1

phūū njíŋ phūū nìi	this woman
càw hùucák phūū njíŋ phūū nìi bɔɔ?	Do you know this woman?
phūū sáaj phūū nìi	this man
càw hùucák phūū sáaj phūū nìi bɔɔ?	Do you know this man?
déknɔ̀ɔj phūū nìi	this child
càw hùucák déknɔ̀ɔj phūū nìi bɔɔ?	Do you know this child?
nɔ̀ɔŋ sáaj khɔ̂j	my younger brother
càw hùucák nɔ̀ɔŋ sáaj khɔ̂j bɔɔ?	Do you know my younger brother?
nɔ̀ɔŋ sǎaw khɔ̂j	my younger sister
càw hùucák nɔ̀ɔŋ sǎaw khɔ̂j bɔɔ?	Do you know my younger sister?
àaj khɔ̂j	my older brother
càw hùucák àaj khɔ̂j bɔɔ?	Do you know my older brother?
phɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄ láaw	his parents
càw hùucák phɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄ láaw bɔɔ?	Do you know his parents?

yàj khɔ̂j	my older sister
càw hùucák yàj khɔ̂j bɔɔ?	Do you know my older sister?
lùuk khɔ̂j	my child
càw hùucák lùuk khɔ̂j bɔɔ?	Do you know my child?

M-2

hóoŋkaan càw	your office
hùu, khɔ̂j dàj hùucák káp láaw jūū hóoŋkaan càw	Yes, I met him at your office.
wāt inpɛɛŋ	Inpeng temple
hùu, khɔ̂j dàj hùucák káp láaw jūū wāt inpɛɛŋ	Yes, I met her at the Wat Inpeng.
sámóosɔ̌ɔn	club
hùu, khɔ̂j dàj hùucák káp láaw jūū sámóosɔ̌ɔn	Yes, I met him at the club.
náj rōtfáj	on the train
hùu, khɔ̂j dàj hùucák káp láaw jūū náj rōtfáj	Yes, I met him on the train.
náj ŋáan kinlìaŋ	at the party
hùu, khɔ̂j dàj hùucák káp láaw jūū náj ŋáan kinlìaŋ	Yes, I met her at the party.

M-3

phŭa	husband
khɔ̂j si dàj hùucàk kàp phŭa láaw	I'll get to meet her husband.
mía	wife
khɔ̂j si dàj hùucák káp mía láaw	I'll get to meet his wife.
phɔ̄ɔ̄ thâw	father in law
khɔ̂j si dàj hùucák káp phɔ̄ɔ̄thâw láaw	I'll get to meet his father-in-law.
mɛ̄ɛ̄ thâw	mother-in-law
khɔ̂j si dàj hùucák káp mɛ̄ɛ̄ thâw láaw	I'll get to meet his mother-in-law.
phɔ̄ɔ̄ pūū	father-in-law
khɔ̂j si dàj hùucák káp phɔ̄ɔ pūu láaw	I'll get to meet her father-in-law.
mɛ̄ɛ njāa	mother-in-law
khɔ̂j si dàj hùucák káp mɛ̄ɛ njāa láaw	I'll get to meet her mother-in-law.

C-1

(phūu njíŋ)	woman
A. càw hùucák phūu njíŋ phūu nìi bɔɔ?	Do you know this woman?
(wāt inpɛɛŋ)	Inpeng temple
B. hùu, khɔ̆j dàj hùucák káp láaw jūu wāt inpɛɛŋ	Yes, I met her at the Inpeng temple.

C-2

(làaw)	she
A. càw dàj hùucák káp láaw jūu sǎj?	Where did you meet her?
(hóoŋhían)	school
B. khɔ̂j dàj hùucák káp láaw jūu hóoŋhían	I met her at school.

C-3

A. càw hùucák mía láaw bɔɔ?	Do you know his wife?
B. bɔ̄ɔ, khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ hùucák láaw	No, I don't know her.
A. càw si dàj hùucák káp láaw bɔɔ?	Will you get to meet her?
B. mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j si dàj hùucák káp láaw	Yes, I'll get to meet her.
khácàw si máa hýan khɔ̂j	They will come to my house.

ເມື່ອສອນບົດຮຽນບົດນີ້ແລ້ວ ທ່ານລອງຖາມນັກຮຽນກ່ຽວກັບພໍ່ແມ່ອ້າຍນ້ອງຂອງຂະເຈົ້າເບິ່ງດູ! ຂໍ້ສຳຄັນກໍຄື ບໍ່ແມ່ນວ່າຂະເຈົ້າຕອບໄດ້ແລ້ວຈະແລ້ວ. ຈົ່ງສັງເກດເບິ່ງວ່າ ວິທີຕອບຂອງຂະເຈົ້າພໍໃຈທ່ານແລ້ວຫລືບໍ່!

NOTES

1) hùucák means 'to be acquainted or familiar with (someone or something)'.

khɔ̂j hùucák láaw	'I know her.'
càw hùucák mýaŋ wíaŋcan bɔɔ?	'Are you familiar with Vientiane?'

2) dàj + Main Verb means 'to have the opportunity (to do something)' as in these examples:

khɔ̂j dàj hùucák káp láaw	(I had the opportunity to become acquainted with him. 'I got to meet him.'
khɔ̂j si dàj hùucák káp láaw	'I will get to meet her.'

3) ŋáan kinlìaŋ is a Noun Compound meaning 'a party' and is made up of ŋáan 'celebration' + kin 'to eat' + lìaŋ 'to treat s.o.'

4) In Lao when referring to the male and female offspring in a family one must indicate not only their sex but also their relative ages. Consider this hypothetical family of 5 children:

Sex:	M	F	M	F	M
Age:	21	19	17	15	10
Rank:	1	2	3	4	5

Child number 3 refers to	1	as àaj (khɔ̂j)	'older brother'.
	2	as ỳaj (khɔ̂j)	'older sister'.
	4	as nɔ̀ɔŋsǎaw (khɔ̂j)	'younger sister.'
	5	as nɔ̀ɔŋsáaj (khɔ̂j)	'younger brother'.

5) When referring to in-laws, one must indicate whether they are the husband's or the wife's.

phɔ̄ɔ pūu (1)	mɛ̄ɛ ɲāa (2)	phɔ̄ɔ thâw (3)	mɛ̄ɛ thâw (4)
phǔa 'husband'		mía 'wife'	

(1) her father-in-law (2) her mother-in-law

(3) his father-in-law (4) his mother-in-law

APPLICATION

1. If you heard someone say khɔ̂j dàj hùucák káp láaw, you would assume that the speaker (a) knew the person he was talking about, (b) did not know that person, (c) had met that person, (d) had not met that person.

2. If you heard someone say khɔ̂j hùucàk mýaŋ wíaŋcan, (a) you would know that he had been to Vientiane. (b) You would know that he knew at least where Vientiane is located.

3. If a person says ỳaj khɔ̂j, you know the person he is talking about is (a) older than he, (b) younger than he, (c) male, (d) female, (d) you can not tell whether the person is younger or older, male or female.

4. If a person says àaj khɔ̂j, you know the person he is talking about is (a) female, (b) male (c) younger than the speaker (d) older than the speaker (e) sex and age are unclear.

5. Is the situation described in the following statement possible?
láaw pen nɔ̀ɔŋ sǎaw khɔ̂j lɛʔ khɔ̂j pen nɔ̀ɔŋsaaj láaw

6. In the situation described in the following statement possible?
khɔ̂j pen ỳaj càw lɛʔ càw pen nɔ̀ɔŋsáaj khɔ̂j.

Answers: 1a and c, 2b, 3a and d, 4b and d, 5no, 6yes

7. Fill in the blanks with dékǹɔɔj or lùuk as appropriate:
cǎw hěn __________ (1) phūū nàn bɔɔ? láaw pen __________ (2) sǎaw khɔ̂j

8. If a person said to someone phɔ̄ɔ̄ pūū càw pen phȳan khɔ̂j would he be talking to (a) a man (b) a woman (c) either (d) neither

9. If someone said khɔ̂j dàj hùucák káp mɛ̄ɛ̄ thâw càw, you would know she was talking to a man. True or false?

10. Could this be a true statement? mɛ̄ɛ̄ njāā cáw pen mɛ̄ɛ̄ khɔ̂j

11. Could this be true? phɔ̄ɔ̄ thâw khɔ̂j pen phɔ̄ɔ̄ pūū càw

CYCLE 19

M-1

phàak kaaŋ	Central part
khɔ̂j máa câak phàak kaaŋ	I am from the Central part.
phàak tàj	Southern part
khɔ̂j máa câak phàak tàj	I am from the Southern part.
phàak ny̌a	Northern part
khɔ̂j máa câak phàak ny̌a	I am from the Northern part.
phàak táwén ɔ̂ɔk	Eastern part
khɔ̂j máa câak phàak táwén ɔ̂ɔk	I am from the Eastern part.
phàak táwén tók	Western part
khɔ̂j máa câak phàak táwén tók	I am from the Western part.

Amswers: 7(1)dékǹɔɔj (2)lùuk, 8b, 9true, 10yes, 11no

M-2

phàak kaaŋ	Central part
mýaŋ khɔ̂j jūu tháaŋ phàak kaaŋ khɔ̌ɔŋ páthèet láaw	My hometown is in the Central part of Laos.
phàak táwén ɔ̂ɔksǐaŋtàj	Southeastern part
mýaŋ khɔ̂j jūu tháaŋ phàak táwén ɔ̂ɔksǐaŋtàj khɔ̌ɔŋ páthèet láaw	My hometown is in the Southeastern part of Laos.
phàak táwén ɔ̂ɔksǐaŋny̌a	Northeastern part
mýaŋ khɔ̂j jūu tháaŋ phàak táwén ɔ̂ɔksǐaŋny̌a	My hometown is in the Northeastern part of Laos.
phàak táwén tóksǐaŋny̌a	Northwestern part
mýaŋ khɔ̂j jūu tháaŋ phàak táwén tóksǐaŋny̌a khɔ̌ɔŋ páthèet láaw	My hometown is in the Northwestern part of Laos.
phàak táwén tóksǐaŋtàj	Southwestern part
mýaŋ khɔ̂j jūu tháaŋ phàak táwén tóksǐaŋtàj khɔ̌ɔŋ páthèet láaw	My hometown is in the Southwestern part of Laos.

C-1

A.	náaj khúu máa câak phàak daj khɔ̌ɔŋ páthèet láaw?	What part of Laos is the teacher from?
B.	láaw máa câak phàak...	He is from the... part.

ຈົ່ງໃຊ້ແຜນທີ່ ແລະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນບອກທິດທາງຕາມນັ້ນເບິ່ງດູ! ນາຍຄຣູທີ່ດີຈະພຍາຍາມໃຊ້ກົນອຸບາຍຕ່າງໆເພື່ອຢັ່ງເບິ່ງຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈຂອງນັກຮຽນ.

C-2

(phàak táwén ʔòoksǐaŋtàj)		Southeastern
A.	phɯ̄an càw máa câak phàak táwén ʔòoksǐaŋtàj khɔ̌ɔŋ páthèet láaw, mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	Your friend is from the Southeastern part of Laos, isn't he?
(phàak táwén tóksǐaŋtàj)		Southwestern
B.	bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, láaw máa câak phàak táwén tóksǐaŋtàj khɔ̌ɔŋ páthèet láaw	No, he is from the Southwestern part of Laos.

ທ່ານຄົງເຂົ້າໃຈດີແລ້ວວ່າ ພາກ C ຢູ່ໃນບົດຮຽນເປັນພຽງແຕ່ຕົວຢ່າງຫລືແນວທາງແນະນຳໃນການຝຶກຫັດເທົ່ານັ້ນ. ແລະແຕ່ລະບົດ C ຢູ່ໃນແຕ່ລະໄຊເກືອບຍັງບໍ່ພຽງພໍສຳລັບການຝຶກຫັດ.

C-3

A.	càw sɯ̄ɯ njǎŋ?	What's your name?
B.	khɔ̂j sɯ̄ɯ súksɔ̌mbuun	My name is Souksomboun.
A.	càw pen khón láaw mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	You are a Laotian, aren't you
B.	mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j pen khón láaw	Yes, I am a Laotian.

A. càw máa câak sǎj?	Where are you from?
B. khɔ̂j máa câak mýaŋ wíaŋcan	I am from the city of Vientiane.
A. mýaŋ wíaŋcan jūu sǎj?	Where is Vientiane?
B. mýaŋ wíaŋcan jūu náj pátheet láaw	Vientiane is in Laos?
A. mýaŋ wíaŋcan jūu náj phàak daj khɔ̌ɔŋ pátheet láaw?	In what part of Laos is Vientiane?
B. mýaŋ wíaŋcan jūu náj phàak kaan khɔ̌ɔŋ pátheet láaw	Vientiane is in the Central part of Laos.

ນາຍຄຣູຈະຕ້ອງເປັນຄົນທີ່ຊ່າງຄິດຄົ້ນເຣື່ອງຕ່າງໆຂຶ້ນມາໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຝຶກຫັດ. ຍິ່ງຄົ້ນໄປ ເຣື່ອງທີ່ຈະນຳມາຝຶກຝົນໄດ້ກໍ່ຄວນຍິ່ງຈະຫລາຍຂຶ້ນ. ທັງນັ້ນກໍ່ຍ້ອນຄຣູຮູ້ວ່ານັກຮຽນເຂົ້າໃຈຫຍັງຫລືອາດຈະບໍ່ເຂົ້າໃຈຫຍັງ.

NOTES

1) Except for tàj 'South' and nȳa 'North' all compass points are compounds:

tâwénɔ̂ok 'East': táwén 'sun' + ɔ̂ok 'to come up'

táwéntók 'West': táwén 'sun' + tók 'to fall'

Compounds such as Southeast are made with sĭaŋ 'direction':

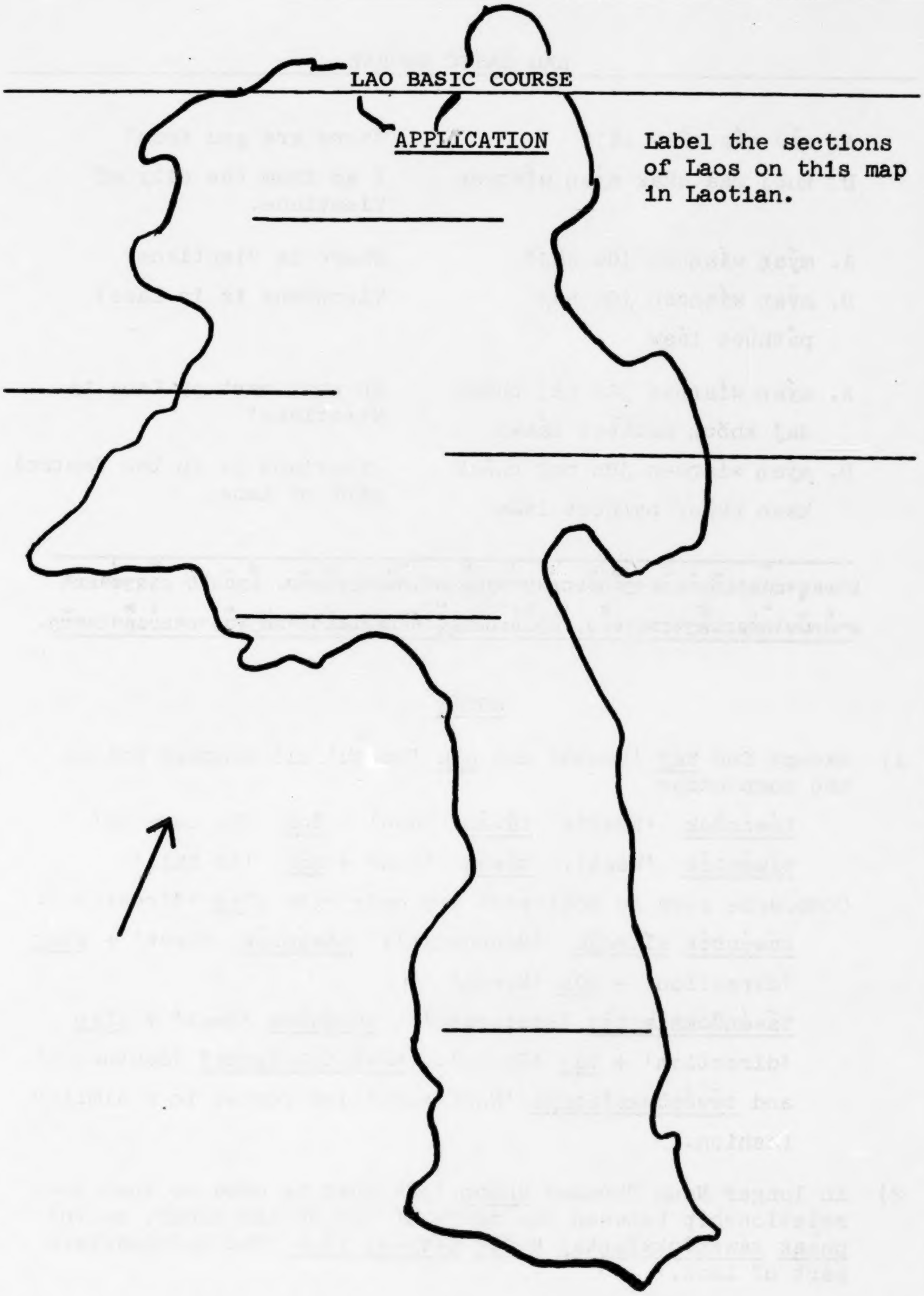
táwéntók sĭaŋnȳa 'Northwest': táwéntók 'West' + sĭaŋ 'direction' + nȳa 'North'

táwénɔ̂oksĭaŋtàj 'Southeast': táwénɔ̂ok 'East' + sĭaŋ 'direction' + tàj 'South'. táwéntóksĭaŋtàj 'Southwest' and táwénɔ̂oksĭaŋnȳa 'Northeast' are formed in a similar fashion.

2) In longer Noun Phrases khɔ̌ɔŋ 'of' must be used so that the relationship between the parts of the NP are clear, as in: phàak táwénɔ̂oksĭaŋtàj khɔ̌ɔŋ pátheet láaw 'The Southeastern part of Laos.'

APPLICATION

Label the sections of Laos on this map in Laotian.



CYCLE 20

M-1

wáaŋ wàj	put
càw si wáaŋ wàj sǎj? wàj phìi bɔɔ?	Where are you going to put (it)? Over here?
thée lóŋ	pour out
càw si thée lóŋ sǎj? lóŋ phìi bɔɔ?	Where are you going to pour (it) out? Over here?
tàŋ wàj	set up
càw si tàŋ wàj sǎj? wàj phìi bɔɔ?	Where are you going to set (it) up? Over here?
njíŋ sāj	shoot at
càw si njíŋ sāj sǎj? sāj phìi bɔɔ?	Where are you shooting at? Over here?
lɛɛn ɔ̂ɔk	run out
càw si lɛɛn ɔ̂ɔk sǎj? ɔ̂ɔk phìi bɔɔ?	What exit are you going to run out through? (The one) here?

M-2

wáaŋ wàj	put down
khɔ̂j si aw paj wáaŋ wàj phùn	I'm going to take it over there and put it down.
páʔ wàj	leave
khɔ̂j si aw paj páʔ wàj phùn	I'm going to take it over there and leave it.

tít sāj	stick up
khɔ̂j si aw paj tít sāj phùn	I'm going to take it over there and stick it up.
ʔɔ̂k	take out
khɔ̂j si aw paj ʔɔ̂k phùn	I'm going to take it out that exit over there.
thîm lóŋ	drop
khɔ̂j si aw paj thîm lóŋ phùn	I'm going to take it over there and drop it.

C-1

A. càw si wáaŋ pỳm hŭa nìi wáj sǎj? wàj phìi bɔɔ?	Where are you going to put this book? Over here?
B. bɔ̄ɔ, khɔ̂j si aw pỳm hŭa nìi paj wáaŋ wàj phùn	No. I'm going to take this book and put it over there.

C-2

A. càw si aw pỳm hŭa nìi paj páʔ wàj phùn bɔɔ?	Are you going to take this book and leave it over there?
B. bɔ̄ɔ, khɔ̂j si páʔ pỳm hŭa nìi wàj nìi	No. I'm going to leave this book here.

ຈົ່ງສະແດງທ່າທີຕ່າງໆປະກອບກັບຄວາມໝາຍຂອງປໂຍກຢູ່ໃນບົດຮຽນນີ້. ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ: "ເອົາໄປພຸ້ນ" ຕ່າງກັນກັບ "ເອົາມານີ້" ຢ່າງໃດ. ຫລັງຈາກນັ້ນແລ້ວທ່ານລອງບອກໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນປະຕິບັດຕາມທ່ານເບິ່ງດູ!

NOTES

1) In Lao Verb Compounds are used in situations where Verb + Preposition or Verb + Adverb would be used in English: wáaŋ wàj 'to put something in a place and leave it there': wáaŋ 'to put, place' + wàj 'to leave for future use'; thée lóŋ 'to pour, dump something out': thée 'to pour, dump' + lóŋ 'to go down'; tàŋ wàj 'to set something up and leave it there': tàŋ 'to put something in a standing position' + wàj 'Leave for future use' njíŋ sāj 'to shoot towards': njíŋ 'to shoot a firearm; etc.' + sāj 'to put in'; lɛɛn ɔ̂ɔk 'to escape out through': lɛɛn 'to run' + ɔ̂ɔk 'to go out'.

2) If we analyze an English verb like 'bring', we will see that at least two things are involved: (1) taking hold of something and (2) moving it from one place to another in the direction of the speaker. In Lao both of these actions are reflected in the verb combination aw... máa (aw 'to take hold of' + máa 'to go towards the speaker). aw... paj is used to indicate that the action is away from the speaker.

   (a) Any object that is to be carried occurs after aw, thus aw pỳm paj 'take the book away', etc.

   (b) A series of other verbs may occur after aw... paj, etc. aw paj wáaŋ wàj phùn 'to take (it) over there and leave it'.

3) thîm lóŋ means literally 'to throw down' but corresponds to English 'drop'.

4) páʔ means 'to leave something', thus páʔmía 'to divorce your wife'; páʔwàj 'to leave something temporarily.'

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence khɔ̂j si aw paj wáaŋ wàj phùn, aw paj wàaŋ wàj is (a) a series of Nouns, (b) Verb + Preposition (c) a series of verbs (d) none of these.

2. True or false? aw means 'to bring'.

3. wàj in the Verb Compound wáaŋ wàj indicates that (a) the speaker has no further use for something, (b) He has further use for it, (c) There is no reference to further use.

4. Match these Lao sentences with the English sentences:

(a) aw sɔ̌ɔdam láaw paj wàj phùn	(a) He didn't drop his umbrella.
(b) láaw si aw mûak paj páʔ wàj sǎj	(b) Is the policeman aiming his gun over there?
(c) láaw bɔ̄ɔ dàj thîm khán hōm láaw lóŋ	(c) Put his pencil over there.
(d) tamlûat si njíŋ sāj phùn bɔɔ	(d) Where is he going to leave his hat?

Answers: 1c, 2false, 3b, 4a and c, b and d, c and a, d and b.

CYCLE 21

M-1

náj káp	in the box
jūu sǎj? jūu náj káp nìi nìi bɔɔ?	Where? In this box here?
thə́ŋ lǎŋ tùu	on top of the cabinet
jūu sǎj? jūu thə́ŋ lǎŋ tùu nìi nìi bɔɔ?	Where? On top of this cabinet here?
náj lìnsāk	in the drawer
jūu sǎj? jūu náj lìnsāk nìi nìi bɔɔ?	Where? In this drawer here?
náj kápɔɔŋ	in the can
jūu sǎj? jūu náj kápɔɔŋ nìi nìi bɔɔ?	Where? In this can here?
khâaŋ màanāŋ	beside the bench
jūu sǎj? jūu khâaŋ màanāŋ nìi nìi bɔɔ?	Where? Beside this bench here?

M-2

thǒŋ	bag
jūu náj thǒŋ nàn hân	In that bag there.
hɔ̄ɔ	package
jūu náj hɔ̄ɔ nàn hân	In that package there.

kɛ̀ɛw, nūaj	bottle, classifier
jūu náj kɛ̀ɛw nūaj nàn hân	In that bottle there.
cɔ̂ɔk, nūaj	glass, classifier
jūu náj cɔ̂ɔk nūaj nàn hân	In that glass there.
kátāa, nūaj	basket, classifier
jūu náj kátāa nūaj nàn hân	In that basket there.

C-1

A.	jūu sǎj? jūu náj káp nīi nīi bɔɔ?	Where? In this box here?
B.	bɔ̄ɔ, jūu náj káp nàn hân	No. In that box there.

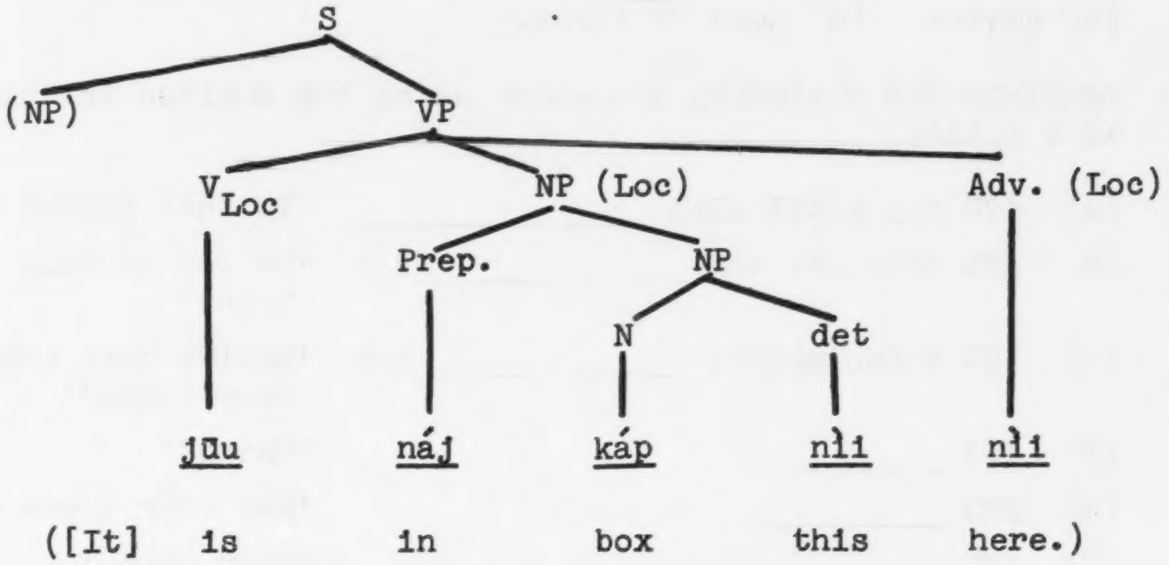
C-2

A.	jūu sǎj? jūu náj kɛ̀ɛw nàn hân bɔɔ?	Where? In that bottle there?
B.	bɔ̄ɔ, jūu náj kɛ̀ɛw nīi nīi	No. In this bottle here.

ການສະແດງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເຫັນດ້ວຍຕາຈະຊ່ອຍໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຈຳໄດໄວກວ່າການແປຄວາມໝາຍ. ດັ່ງນັ້ນ, ທ່ານຄວນຈະສະແດງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເບິ່ງໃນເວລາທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າກຳລັງຮຽນ. ຈະໃຫ້ດຳອິກກໍໄດ້ ແຕ່ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ຈຳກັດ!

NOTES

1) As can be seen in this grammatical exposition, nìi may function both as a Determiner and as an Adverb of Place:



'It's in this box here.'

A complete list of words functioning like nìi is given here:

Determiner		Adverb of Place	
nìi	'this'	nìi	'here'
		phìi	'around here'
nàn	'that'	hân	'there'
		phùn	'way over there'

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence jūū náj thɔ̆ŋ nàn hân, hân is (a) NP (b) preposition (c) determiner (d) adverb.

2. In the sentence above nàn is (a) NP (b) determiner (c) adverb (d) none of these.

3. Complete the following sentences using the English translation as a guide:

(a) jūū náj kátāā nūaj ______ ______ 'In that basket there.'

(b) jūū thə́ŋ lăŋ tùu ______ ______boo 'On top of this cabinet here?'

(c) jūū khâaŋ màanāŋ ______ ______boo 'Beside that bench way over there?'

(d) jūū ______? 'Where?'

(e) jūū ______ 'Way over there.'

(f) jūū ______ 'Near here.'

(g) jūū náj thɔ̆ŋ ______ 'In that bag.'

(h) jūū náj kɛ̀ɛw ______ nàn hân 'In that bottle there.'

(i) jūū ______ ______ tùu nìi nìi bɔɔ 'On top of this cabinet here?'

Answers: 1d, 2b, 3(a)nàn hân (b)nìi phìi (or) nìi nìi (c) nàn phùn (f) phìi (or nìi) (g)nàn (h)nūaj (i)thə̀ŋ lăŋ

CYCLE 22

M-1

khǎj pátuu	open the door
càw si khǎj pátuu nìi phìi bɔɔ?	Are you going to open this door over here?
át pɔ̄ɔŋ-jìam	close the window
càw si át pɔ̄ɔŋ-jìam nìi phìi bɔɔ?	Are you going to close this window over here?
sāj kácɛɛ lìnsāk	lock the drawer
càw si sāj kácɛɛ lìnsāk nìi phìi bɔɔ?	Are you going to lock this drawer over here?
khǎj kácɛɛ hîip	unlock the trunk
càw si khǎj kácɛɛ hîip nìi phìi bɔɔ?	Are you going to unlock this trunk over here?
lóŋ khândaj	go down the stairs
càw si lóŋ khândaj nìi phìi bɔɔ?	Are you going down these stairs over here?

M-2

khǎj pátuu	open the door
khɔ̂j si khǎj pátuu nàn phùn	I'm going to open that door over there.
pîan jaaŋ	change the tire
khɔ̂j si pîan jaaŋ nàn phùn	I'm going to change that tire over there.

paj hǎa, phūu	go to, (classifier)
khɔ̂j si paj hǎa phūu nàn phùn	I'm going to see that person over there.
sɔ̄ɔjlýa, phūu	help, (classifier)
khɔ̂j si sɔ̄ɔjlýa phūu nàn phùn	I'm going to help that person over there.
tít-tɔ̄ɔ káp	contact, communicate with
khɔ̂j si tít-tɔ̄ɔ káp phūu nàn phùn	I'm going to contact that person over there.

C-1

A. càw si át pɔ̄ɔŋ-jìam nìi phìi bɔɔ?	Are you going to close this window over here?
B. bɔ̄ɔ khɔ̂j si át pɔ̄ɔŋ-jìam nàn phùn	No. I'm going to close that window over there.

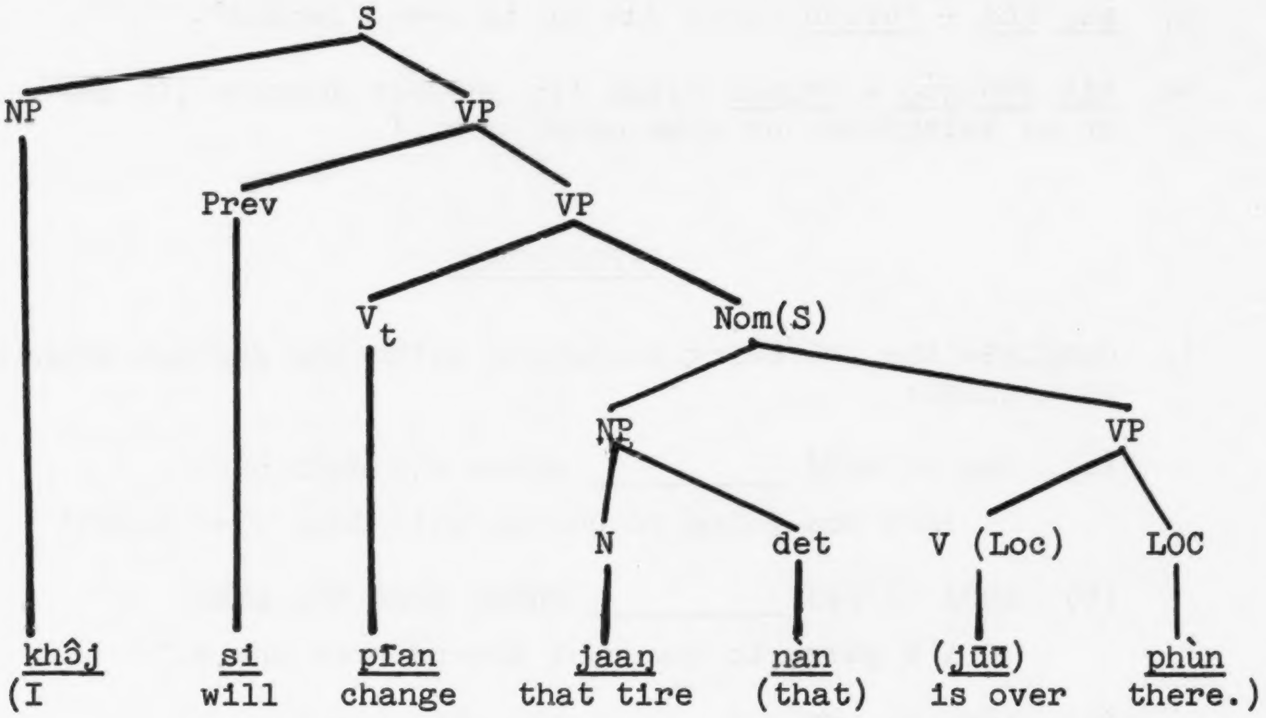
C-2

A. càw si lóŋ khândaj nàn phùn bɔɔ?	Are you going to go down those stairs over there?
B. bɔ̄ɔ, khɔ̂j si lóŋ khândaj nìi phìi	No. I'm going to go down these stairs over here.

ຖ້າທ່ານຄິດເຫັນວ່າມີຄຳກິຣິຍາຄຳໃດ ທີ່ຈະເປັນປໂຍດສຳລັບນັກຮຽນກໍໃຫ້ບອກຂະເຈົ້າຕື່ມອີກກໍໄດ້. ແຕ່ຕ້ອງພາຂະເຈົ້າຮຽນເອົາໃຫ້ໄດ້ ບໍ່ແມ່ນວ່າເອົາໃຫ້ໄປຊື່ໆ. ລອງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນປະຕິບັດຕາມຄຳບອກເບິ່ງດູ!

NOTES

1) phìi and phùn may serve to indicate the location of the Noun Phrase they follow as in the example below:



'I will change that tire over there.'

In this example the reference is to a particular thing which is in a particular place. If a person didn't understand the statement above, his question would be jaaŋ daj? 'Which tire?'

2) khǎj 'to open, unlock', át 'to close', and sāj 'to put in' occur in constructions like these:

khǎj pátuu, pɔ̄ɔ̄ŋ-jìam, tùu, etc.	'to open the door, window, closet, etc.
khǎj kácɛɛ pátuu, hîip, tùu, lìnsāk, etc.	'to unlock the door, trunk, closet, drawer, etc.'

át pátuu, pɔ̄ɔŋ-jìam, etc.	'to close the door, etc.'
sāj kǎcɛɛ pátuu, hîip, tùu, lìnsāk, etc.	'to lock the door, etc.'

3) paj hǎa + Person means 'to go to see a person'.

4) tít tɔ̄ɔ káp + Person means 'to contact someone (in person, or by telephone, or some other way).'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English translation as a guide:

(a) càw si khǎj __________ pátuu nìi phìi bɔɔ?

'Are you going to unlock this door over here?'

(b) khɔ̂j si paj __________ phȳan phɯɯ nàn phùn

I'm going to see that friend over there.'

(c) láaw si bɔ̄ɔ __________ tùu nìi bɔɔ?

'Isn't he going to close this closet?'

(d) khɔ̂j si tít tɔ̄ɔ __________ phɯɯ nàn phùn

'I'm going to contact that person over there.'

(e) khɔ̂j si __________ láaw

'I'll help her.'

2. Read the Noun Phrase and answer the questions:

(a) pátuu nìi phìi. pátuu jɯɯ sǎj? __________

(b) jaaŋ nàn phùn. jaaŋ jɯɯ sǎj? __________

Answers: 1(a)kácɛɛ,(b)hǎa, (c)át, (d)káp, (e)sɔ̄ɔj lȳ̌a 2(a)jɯɯ phìi (b)jɯɯ phùn

3. (c) phūu nàn phùn. phūu nàn jūu sǎj? ______________

   (d) pɔ̄ɔŋ jìam nìi phìi. pɔ̄ɔŋ jìam jūu sǎj? ____________

3. In the NP lìnsāk nìi phìi, phìi is (a) determiner (b) adverb (c) verb (d) none of these.

4. In the NP above, phìi (a) indicates the location of lìnsāk, (b) modifies nìi, (c) has no grammatical relationship to lìnsāk nìi.

Answers: 2(c)jūu phùn, (d)jūu phìi, 3b, 4a

CYCLE 23

M-1

āan, pỳm, hŭa	to read, book, (classifier)
càw si āan pỳm hŭa nìi jūū phìi bɔɔ?	Are you going to read this book over here?
pɛɛŋ, lōt, khán.	to fix, car, (classifier)
càw si pɛɛŋ lōt khán nìi jūū phìi bɔɔ?	Are you going to fix this car over here?
sàj, khɔ̆ɔŋ, lāwnìi.	to use, thing, these
càw si sàj khɔ̆ɔŋ lāwnìi jūū phìi bɔɔ?	Are you going to use these things over here?
sāk, sŷa-nɔ̀ɔk, phỹyn.	to wash, jacket, (classifier)
càw si sāk sŷa-nɔ̀ɔk phỹyn nìi jūū phìi bɔɔ?	Are you going to wash this jacket over here?

M-2

āan, pỳm, hŭa	to read, book, (classifier)
khɔ̂j si paj āan pỳm hŭa nìi jūū phùn	I'm going to read this book over there.
phím, nǎŋsỹy	to print, type; letter
khɔ̂j si paj phím nǎŋsỹy nìi jūū phùn	I'm going to type this letter over there.

sỳy, cìa	to buy, paper
khɔ̂j si paj sỳy cìa nìi jūu phùn	I'm going to buy this paper over there.
sìicɛɛŋ, lỳaŋ	to explain; matter, about
khɔ̂j si paj sìicɛɛŋ lỳaŋ nìi jūu phùn	I'm going to explain this matter over there.

M-3

lōtdút, pɛɛŋ, khán	bulldozer; to repair, fix; (classifier)
láaw si aw lōtdút khán nàn máa pɛɛŋ jūu phìi bɔɔ?	Is he going to bring that bulldozer over here and fix it?
khȳaŋcák, nūaj, pákɔ̂ɔp	engine, motor, machine, (classifier), to assemble
láaw si aw khȳaŋcák nūaj nàn máa pákɔ̂ɔp jūu phìi bɔɔ?	Is he going to bring that engine over here and assemble it?
mɔ̂ɔfáj, nūaj, sâak	battery (car), (classifier), charge (electricity)
láaw si aw mɔ̂ɔfáj nūaj nàn máa sâak jūu phìi bɔɔ?	Is he going to bring that battery over here and charge it?
thûaj, sáam, lāwnàn, làaŋ	bowl, plate, those, wash
láaw si aw thûaj-sáam lāwnàn máa làaŋ jūu phìi bɔɔ?	Is he going to bring those dishes over here and wash them?

M-4

jaaŋ lōt, sên, tâap	tire (car),(classifier), patch
láaw si aw jaaŋ lōt sên nàn paj tâap jūu phùn	He is going to take that tire over there and patch it.
tákiaŋ, nūaj, tàj	lamp,(classifier), to light
láaw si aw tákiaŋ nūaj nàn paj tàj jūu phùn	He is going to take that lamp over there and light it.
phâahōm, lāwnàn, cɛ̂ɛkjaaj	blanket, those, to distribute
láaw si aw phâahōm lāwnàn paj cɛ̂ɛkjaaj jūu phùn	He is going to take those blankets over there and distribute them.
tiaŋ, nūaj, tàŋ	bed,(classifier), to set up
láaw si aw tiaŋ nūaj nàn paj tàŋ jūu phùn	He is going to take that bed over there and set it up.

C-1

A. càw si āan pỳm hǔa nìi jūu phìi bɔɔ?	Are you going to read this book over there?
B. bɔ̄ɔ, khɔ̂j si āan jūu phùn	No. I'm going to read it over there.

C-2

A. láaw si aw lōtdút khán nàn máa pɛɛŋ jūu phìi bɔɔ?	Is he going to bring the bulldozer over here and fix it?
B. bɔ̄ɔ, láaw si aw paj pɛɛŋ jūu phùn	No. He is going to take it over there and fix it.

C-3 (With reference to Cycles 20, 21 and 22)

Tutor: 'láaw si āan pỳm hŭa nìi nìi.'	'He is going to read this book here.'
A. láaw si hēt njăŋ?	What is he going to do?
B. láaw si āan pỳm	He is going to read a book.
A. láaw si āan pỳm hŭa daj?	Which book is he going to read?
B. láaw si āan pỳm hŭa nìi.	He is going to read this book.
A. pỳm hŭa nìi jūu săj?	Where is this book?
B. pỳm hŭa nìi jūu nìi	This book is here.
A. láaw si āan pỳm jūu săj?	Where is he going to read the book?
B. khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ hùu	I don't know.

ທ່ານລອງແຕ່ງປໂຍກຄ້າຍໆກັນກັບຢູ່ໃນຂໍ້(3)ນີ້ຈັກສາມສີ່ປໂຍກເບິ່ງດູ ແລ້ວຈຶ່ງພານັກຮຽນຝຶກຫັດໃນຫ້ອງດຽວກັນ.

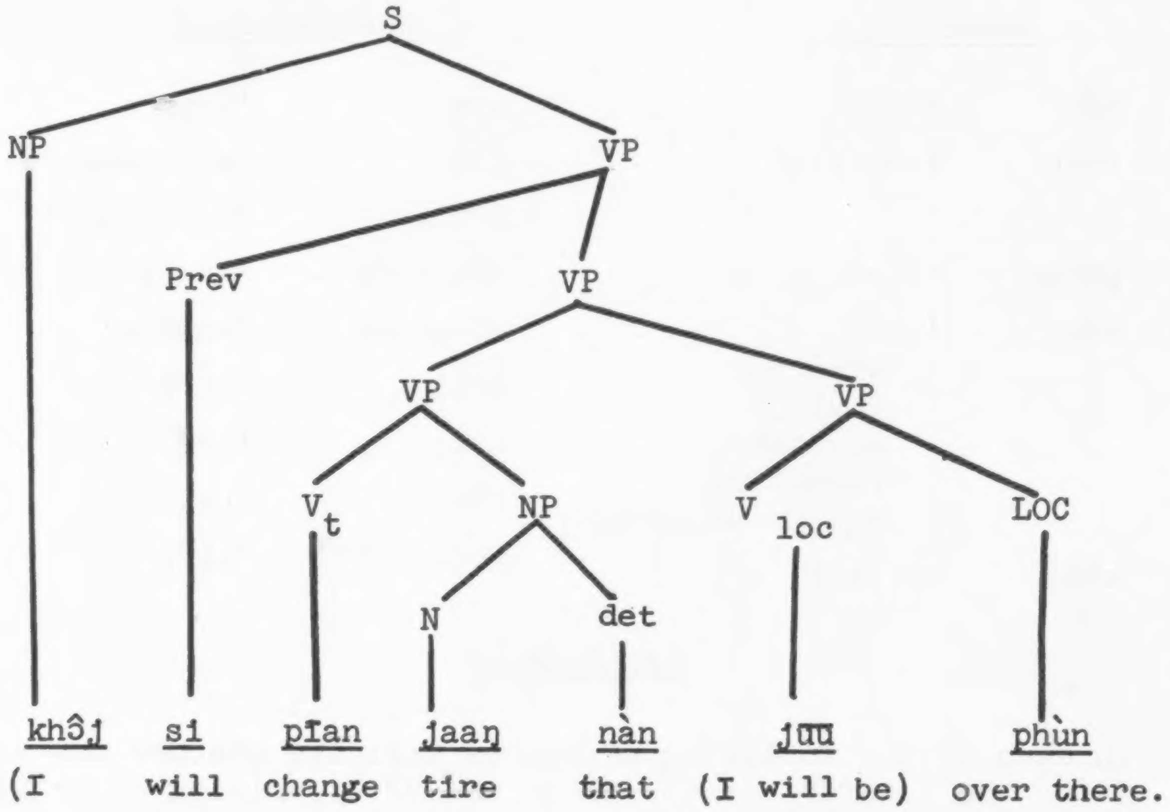
C-4

Tutor:	'láaw si pīaŋ jaaŋ sên nàn jūu phùn.'	'He is going to change that tire over there.'
A.	láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	What is he going to do?
B.	láaw si pīan jaaŋ.	He is going to change a tire.
A.	láaw si pīan jaaŋ sên daj?	Which tire is he going to change?
B.	láaw si pīan jaaŋ sên nàn	He is going to change that tire.
A.	láaw si pīan jūu sǎj?	Where is he going to change it?
B.	láaw si pīan jūu phùn	He is going to change it over there.
A.	jaaŋ sên nàn jūu sǎj?	Where is that tire?
B.	khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ hùu	I don't know.

ຂໍ້(4)ນີ້ຖ້າໃສ່ໃຈວິທີຝຶກຫັດທ່ານອາດຄືກັນກັບຂໍ້(3). ທ່ານເຫັນຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນໃນຄຳຖາມສຸດທ້າຍ ຂອງທັງສອງຂໍ້ບໍ່? ແລະນັກຮຽນທ່ານເດົາເຫັນດີກັນບໍ່?

NOTES

1) If instead of indicating the location of a particular object (pátuu nìi phìi), the reference is to the location of a particular activity, jɯɯ + LOC is attached to the main VP as illustrated below:



'I will change that tire (in that spot) over there.'

The emphasis here is on where the changing will take place not on the particular tire to be changed; hence, the question which would elicit this response is:

càw si pīan (jaaŋ) jɯɯ sǎj 'Where will you change the tire?'

2) lāw 'group, bunch' is frequently used with Count Nouns to indicate 'plurality'.

khɔ̌ɔŋ lāw nìi	'these things'
phâahōm lāw nàn	'those blankets'

3) A list of unit classifiers and the nouns they are used with is given below:

Classifier		Noun Referent	
hǔa	'head'	pỳm	'book'
khán	'vehicle'	lōt	'automobile'
		lōtdút	'bulldozer'
phy̌yn	'cloth'	sŷa nɔ̂ɔk	'jacket'
nūaj	'unit' (It is used for fruit, machines, furniture, equipment, etc.	khȳaŋcák	'engine'
		tákiaŋ	'lamp'
		tiaŋ	'bed'
		mɔ̂ɔfáj	'battery'
sên	'string'	jaaŋ (lōt)	'tire'

APPLICATION

1. In each of the following sentences indicate whether the emphasis is on the location of the NP or the VP by writing NP or VP in the blank after the sentence:

(a) khɔ̂j si paj āān pỳm hǔa nìi jūū phùn ________

(b) khɔ̂j si paj hǎa phūū nàn phùn ________

(c) càw si lóŋ khândaj nìi phìi bɔɔ? ________

(d) láaw si aw thûaj-sáam lāwnàn máa làaŋ jūū phìi bɔɔ? ______

(e) càw si sàj khɔ̌ɔŋ lāwnìi jūū phìi bɔɔ? ________

Answers: 1(a)VP (b)NP (c)NP (d)VP (e)VP

2. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) càw si āān pỳm ________ nìi bɔɔ?
'Are you going to read this book?'

(b) khɔ̂j si paj ________ lỳaŋ nìi jɯɯ phùn
'I'm going to explain this matter over there.'

(c) aw lōtdút ________ ________ máa pɛɛŋ jɯɯ phìi
'Bring that bulldozer over here and fix it.'

(d) láaw si aw phâahōm lāwnàn paj cɛ̂ɛkjaaj ________ ________
'He is going to take those blankets over there and distribute them.'

(e) khɔ̂j si sāk sŷanɔ̀ɔk ________ ________ jɯɯ phìi
'I'm going to wash this jacket over here.'

(f) láaw si aw jaaŋ lōt ________ nàn paj ________ jɯɯ phùn
'He's going to take that tire over there and patch it.'

Answers: 2(a)hǔa (b)sìicɛɛŋ (c)khán nàn (d)jɯɯ phùn (e)phŷyn nìi (f) sên /tâap

CYCLE 24

M-1

sǔun	zero
sǔun káp nȳŋ pen nȳŋ	Zero and one is one.
nȳŋ	one
nȳŋ káp nȳŋ pen sɔ̌ɔŋ	One and one is two.
sɔ̌ɔŋ	two
sɔ̌ɔŋ káp nȳŋ pen sǎam	Two and one is three.
sǎam	three
sǎam káp nȳŋ pen sīi	Three and one is four.
sīi	four
sīi káp nȳŋ pen hâa	Four and one is five.
hâa	five
hâa káp nȳŋ pen hók	Five and one is six.
hók	six
hók káp nȳŋ pen cét	Six and one is seven.
cét	seven
cét káp nȳŋ pen pɛ̂ɛt	Seven and one is eight.
pɛ̂ɛt	eight
pɛ̂ɛt káp nȳŋ pen kàw	Eight and one is nine.
kàw	nine
kàw káp nȳŋ pen síp	Nine and one is ten.

M-2

nȳŋ	one
síp káp nȳŋ pen síp-ét	Ten and one is eleven.
nȳŋ	one
síp-ét káp nȳŋ pen sípsɔ̌ɔŋ	Eleven and one is twelve.
pɛ̂ɛt	eight
sípsɔ̌ɔŋ káp pɛ̂ɛt pen sáaw	Twelve and eight is twenty.
nȳŋ	one
sáaw káp nȳŋ pen sáaw-ét	Twenty and one is twenty one.
nȳŋ	one
sáaw-ét káp nȳŋ pen sáawsɔ̌ɔŋ	Twenty-one and one is twenty two.
pɛ̂ɛt	eight
sáawsɔ̌ɔŋ káp pɛ̂ɛt pen sǎamsíp	Twenty-two and eight is thirty.
nȳŋ	one
sǎamsíp káp nȳŋ pen sǎamsíp-ét	Thirty and one is thirty-one.
nȳŋ	one
sǎamsíp-ét káp nȳŋ pen sǎamsípsɔ̌ɔŋ	Thirty-one and one is thirty two.
kàw	nine
sǎamsípsɔ̌ɔŋ káp kàw pen sīisíp-ét	Thirty-two and nine is forty one.

hâasíp-ét	fifty one
sīisíp-ét káp hâasíp-ét pen kàwsípsɔ̆ɔŋ	Forty-one and fifty-one is ninety two.
pɛ̂ɛt	eight
kàwsípsɔ̆ɔŋ káp pɛ̂ɛt pen nȳŋ hɔ̀ɔj	Ninety-two and eight is one hundred.
kàw hɔ̀ɔj	nine hundred
nȳŋ hɔ̀ɔj káp kàw hɔ̀ɔj pen nȳŋ phán	One hundred and nine hundred is one thousand.
nȳŋ	one
nȳŋ phán káp nȳŋ pen nȳŋ phán káp nȳŋ	One thousand and one is one thousand and one.
kàwsípkàw	ninety nine
nȳŋ phán káp nȳŋ káp kàwsíp kàw pen phán-ét lȳy nȳŋ phán nȳŋ hɔ̀ɔj	One thousand and one and ninety nine is one thousand one hundred.
phán-ét	one thousand one
phán-ét káp phán-ét pen sɔ̆ɔŋ phán sɔ̆ɔŋ	One thousand and one and one thousand is two thousand and one.

M-3

sɔ̆ɔŋ, hâa	two, five
sɔ̆ɔŋ káp hâa pen thāwdaj?	What is two and five?
sípsīi, sǎam	fourteen, three
sípsīi káp sǎam pen thāwdaj?	What is fourteen and three?
sáawhók, cét	twenty-six, seven
sáaw hók káp cét pen thāwdaj?	What is twenty six and seven?
sǎam síp sɔ̆ɔŋ, sɔ̆ɔŋ	thirty-two, two
sǎm síp sɔ̆ɔŋ káp sɔ̆ɔŋ pen thāwdaj?	What is thirty two and two?
hâa síp-ét, hók	fifty-one, six
hâa síp-ét káp hók pen thāwdaj?	What is fifty one and six?

C-1

A. ... káp ... pen thāwdaj?	... and ... is how much?
B. ... káp ... pen	... and ... is ... .

C-2

A. ... káp ... pen ... mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	... and ... is ...,isn't it?
B. bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, ... káp ... pen ...	No, it isn't. .. and --- is ...

ຢ່າສອນນັກຮຽນນັບຕາມລຳດັບຂອງຕົວເລກ. ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫັດບອກຕົວເລກເປັນພາສາລາວຢ່າງໄວ ໂດຍທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າບໍ່ຕ້ອງຄິດເຖິງລຳດັບຂອງຕົວເລກ. ທ່ານຈະສອນການບວກ, ລົບ, ຄູນ, ຫານ ໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າກໍໄດ້.

NOTES

1) The Lao numerical system is a decimal system and with a few exceptions complex numbers are made by multiplying by and/or adding to the numbers from 1 to 10.

The numbers from 1 to 10 are: nȳŋ '1', sɔ̌ɔŋ '2', sǎam '3', sīī '4', hâa '5', hók '6', cét '7', pɛ̂ɛt '8', kàw '9', síp '10'.

Multiples of ten (except for 20) are made by putting the multiplier in front of ten, thus 30 is sǎam síp (3x10), 70 is cét síp (7x10), etc. Numbers to be added to ten or multiples of ten occur afterwards, thus 13 is síp sǎam (10+3), 34 is sǎam síp sīī (3x10+4), etc. 20 is sáaw; 22 is sáaw sɔ̌ɔŋ, etc.

The number one alone is nȳŋ, but in compounds it is -ét, thus 21 is sáaw-ét; 51, hâa síp-ét; 61, hók síp-ét, etc.

100 is nȳŋ hɔ̀ɔj (lɔ̀ɔj) or hɔ̀ɔj (lɔ̀ɔj), but 101 is hɔ̀ɔj ét (lɔ̀ɔj ét) and 400 is sīī hɔ̀ɔj (sīī lɔ̀ɔj). hɔ̀ɔj and lɔ̀ɔj are interchangeable. phán-ét means '1100'; 1001 is phán káp nȳŋ.

2) káp means 'and' or 'plus' when used as a connective between Nouns, NP, and numbers. It indicates that something has been added.

(1) sɔ̌ɔŋ káp sǎam pen hâa — 'two plus three is five'

(2) náaj khúu káp nākhían — 'the teacher and students'

káp is not used as a sentence connective.

3) thāwdaj 'how much, how many' is used to request a numerical or quantitative response:

Q: sǎam síp sɔ̌ɔŋ káp sɔ̌ɔŋ pen thāwdaj

'How much is 32 and 2?'

A: sǎam síp sīī. '34'.

APPLICATION

1. If the correct Lao form is written after the arabic number, write 'correct' after the Lao; if it is incorrect, write in the correct Lao form.

(a) 93 : kàw síp sǎam ____________________

(b) 27 : sɔ̌ɔŋ síp cét ____________________

(c) 71 : cét síp nȳŋ ____________________

(d) 58 : pɛ̀ɛt síp hâa ____________________

(e) 101 : hɔ̀ɔj ét ____________________

(f) 24 : sáaw sīi ____________________

(g) 605 : hók lɔ̀ɔj hâa ____________________

(h) 42 : sīī sɔ̌ɔŋ ____________________

(i) 1 : ét ____________________

(j) 25 : sáaw síp hâa ____________________

2. Write in the correct answers to the following problems. Use arabic numbers.

(a) pɛ̂ɛt káp hók pen ____________

(b) sǎam síp ét káp sīī síp kàw pen ____________

(c) hâa hɔ̀ɔj káp cét síp cét pen ____________

(d) sǔun káp sǔun pen ____________

(e) sáaw kàw káp pɛ̂ɛt síp cét pen ____________

Answers: 1(a)correct (b)sáaw cét (c)cét síp-ét (d)hâa síp pɛ̂ɛt (e)correct (f)correct (g)correct (h)sīī síp sɔ̌ɔŋ (i)nȳn (j)sáaw hâa 2(a)14 (b)80 (c)577 (d)0 (e)116

CYCLE 25

M-1

mỳy nìi	today
mỳy nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán njăŋ?	What day is today?
mỳy-ȳyn	tomorrow
mỳy-ȳyn mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán njăŋ?	What day is tomorrow?
mỳy-hýy	the day after tomorrow
mỳy-hýy mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán njăŋ?	What day is the day after tomorrow?
mỳy-wáan nìi	yesterday
mỳy-wáan nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán njăŋ?	What day was yesterday?
mỳy-sýyn	day before yesterday
mỳy-sýyn mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán njăŋ?	What day was the day before yesterday?
mỳy kɔ̄ɔ̄n	three days ago
mỳy kɔ̄ɔ̄n mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán njăŋ?	What day was three days ago?
sīi mỳy kɔ̄ɔ̄n	four days ago
sīi mỳy kɔ̄ɔ̄n mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán njăŋ?	What day was four days ago?

M-2

wán-aathīt	Sunday
mỳy nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán-aathīt	Today is Sunday.

wán-can	Monday
mỳy nìi mɛɛn wán-can	Today is Monday.
wán-aŋkháan	Tuesday
mỳy nìi mɛɛn wán-aŋkháan	Today is Tuesday.
wán-phūt	Wednesday
mỳy nìi mɛɛn wán-phūt	Today is Wednesday.
wán-phāhát	Thursday
mỳy nìi mɛɛn wán-phāhát	Today is Thursday.
wán-súk	Friday
mỳy nìi mɛɛn wán-súk	Today is Friday.
wán-sǎw	Saturday
mỳy nìi mɛɛn wán-sǎw	Today is Saturday.

C-1

A. mỳy nìi mɛɛn wán njǎŋ?	What day is today?
B. mỳy nìi mɛɛn	Today is ....

C-2

A. mỳy-wáan nìi mɛɛn ..., mɛɛn bɔɔ?	Yesterday was ..., right?
B. bɔ̄ɔ mɛɛn, mỳy-wáan nìi mɛɛn	No, yesterday was ......

ການສອນວັນກໍເຮັດດັ່ງດຽວກັນກັບເລກ ຈິງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຈື່ວັນຕ່າງໆໂດຍບໍ່ຕ້ອງຄຳນຶງເຖິງລຳດັບກ່ອນ.

NOTES

1) mỳy 'day' is used in constructions indicating relative time, thus: mỳy nìi 'today', mỳy ȳȳn 'tomorrow', etc. mỳy is also used when referring to a period of time, thus sɔ̆ɔŋ mỳy 'two days' khə̄ŋ mỳy 'half a day', etc.

   wán 'day' is used when giving the names of the days of the week: wán aathīt 'Sunday', wán aŋkháan 'Tuesday', etc.

2) When asking the day of the week, mỳy nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán njăŋ 'What day is today?' is used.

3) kɔ̄ɔ̄n 'before', ago' is used to refer to a specific time in the past. sīī mỳy kɔ̄ɔ̄n 'four days ago', etc.

APPLICATION

1. Starting with the assumption that today is Wednesday fill in the blanks:

   (a) mỳy hýy mɛ̄ɛ̄n ____________________

   (b) sīī mỳy kɔ̄ɔ̄n mɛ̄ɛ̄n ____________________

   (c) mỳy wáan nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n ____________________

   (d) mỳy nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n ____________________

   (e) mỳy sýn mɛ̄ɛ̄n ____________________

   (f) mỳy ȳȳn mɛ̄ɛ̄n ____________________

Answers: 1(a)wán-súk (b)wán-săw (c)wán-aŋkháan (d)wán-phūt (e)wán-can (f)wán-phāhát

2) Starting with the assumption that today is Sunday, fill in the blanks below:

(a) ______________________________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán-aŋkháan

(b) ______________________________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán-sǎw

(c) ______________________________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán-súk

(d) ______________________________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán-aathīt

(e) ______________________________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán-phāhát

(f) ______________________________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán-can

(g) ______________________________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n wán-phūt

Answers: 2(a)mỳy-hýy (b)mỳy-wáan nìi (c)mỳy-sỳyn (d)mỳy nìi (e) mỳy kɔ̄ɔ̄n (f)mỳy ȳȳn (g)sīī mỳy kɔ̄ɔ̄n

CYCLE 26

M-1

mɔ̄kkáráa	January
mɔ̄kkáráa mɛ̄ɛn dyan thíi nȳŋ, tɔ̄ɔ paj mɛ̄ɛn dyan njăŋ?	January is the first month. What's the next month?
kumpháa	February
kumpháa mɛ̄ɛn dyan thíi sɔ̆ɔŋ tɔ̄ɔ paj mɛɛn dyan njăŋ?	February is the second month. What's the next?
míináa	March
míináa mɛ̄ɛn dyan thíi săam, tɔ̄ɔ paj mɛ̄ɛn dyan njăŋ?	March is the third month. What's the next?
méesăa	April
méesăa mɛ̄ɛn dyan thíi sīi, tɔ̄ɔ paj mɛ̄ɛn dyan njăŋ?	April is the fourth month. What's the next?
phȳtsápháa	May
phȳtsápháa mɛ̄ɛn dyan thíi hâa, tɔ̄ɔ paj mɛ̄ɛn dyan njăŋ?	May is the fifth month. What's the next?
mīthúnáa	June
mĭthúnáa mɛ̄ɛn dyan thíi hók, tɔ̄ɔ paj mɛ̄ɛn dyan njăŋ?	June is the sixth month. What's the next?
kɔɔrākádaa	July
kɔɔrākádaa mɛ̄ɛn dyan thíi cét, tɔ̄ɔ paj mɛ̄ɛn dyan njăŋ?	July is the seventh month. What's the next month?

sǐŋhǎa	August
sǐŋhǎa mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan thíi pɛ̂ɛt, tɔ̄ɔ paj mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan njǎŋ?	August is the eighth month. What's the next?

M-2

mōkkáráa	January
lǎŋcâak dyan mōkkáráa mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan kumpháa	The month after January is February.
kumpháa	February
lǎŋcâak dyan kumpháa mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan míináa	The month after February is March.
míináa	March
lǎŋcâak dyan míináa mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan méesǎa	The month after March is April.
méesǎa	April
lǎŋcâak dyan méesǎa mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan phȳtsápháa	The month after April is May.
phȳtsápháa	May
lǎŋcâak dyan phȳtsápháa mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan mīthúnáa	The month after May is June.
mīthúnáa	June
lǎŋcâak dyan mīthúnáa mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan kɔɔrākádaa	The month after June is July.

M-3

mɔ̄kkáráa	January
kɔ̄ɔn dyan mɔ̄kkáráa mɛ̄ɛn dyan thánwáa	The month before January is December.
thánwáa	December
kɔ̄ɔn dyan thánwáa mɛ̄ɛn dyan phȳtsácíkaa	The month before December is November.
phȳtsácíkaa	November
kɔ̄ɔn dyan phȳtsácíkaa mɛ̄ɛn dyan túláa	The month before November is October.
túláa	October
kɔ̄ɔn dyan túláa mɛ̄ɛn dyan kannjáa	The month before October is September.
kannjáa	September
kɔ̄ɔn dyan kannjáa mɛ̄ɛn dyan sǐŋhǎa	The month before September is August.
sǐŋhǎa	August
kɔ̄ɔn dyan sǐŋhǎa mɛ̄ɛn dyan kɔɔrākádaa	The month before August is July.

C-1

A.	... mɛ̄ɛn dyan thíi ...,tɔ̄ɔ paj mɛ̄ɛn dyan njǎŋ?	... is the ... month. What's the next?
B.	tɔ̄ɔ paj mɛ̄ɛn dyan	The next is ....

C-2

A.	lǎŋcâak dyan ... mɛ̄ɛn dyan njǎŋ?	What's the month after....?
B.	lǎŋcâak dyan ... mɛ̄ɛn dyan	The month after ... is ...

C-3

A.	kɔ̄ɔn dyan ... mɛ̄ɛn dyan njǎŋ?	What's the month before ...?
B.	kɔ̄ɔn dyan ... mɛ̄ɛn dyan ...	Before ... is ... .

ໃຫ້ພຍາຍາມໃຊ້ປະຕິທິນປະກອບໃນການສອນ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫັດໃຊ້ເປັນພາສາລາວ. ຄຳວ່າ "ຫລັງຈາກ", "ກ່ອນ", "ຕໍ່ໄປ" ແລະ "ທີ" ຈະນຳໄປໃຊ້ຝຶກຫັດກັບຄຳອື່ນໆທີ່ຮຽນມາແລ້ວກໍໄດ້.

NOTES

1) The names of the months in Lao are (in order): mōkkáráa, kumpháa, míináa, méesǎa, phȳtsápháa, mīthúnáa, kɔɔrākádaa, sīŋhǎa, kannjáa, túláa, phȳtsácíkaa, thánwáa.

2) Ordinal numbers (first, second, etc.) are formed by placing thíi before Cardinal numbers (one, two, etc.): thíi nȳŋ 'first', thíi sǎam 'third', thíi hóksíp '60th', thíi pɛ̂ɛtsípkàw '89th', etc.

3) tɔ̄ɔ̄ paj 'next' is a Verb Phrase made up of tɔ̄ɔ̄ 'to join, extend' + paj '(to go) forward' (in this type of construction). tɔ̄ɔ̄ paj may be used to indicate an extension in time or space. In time expressions it normally refers to future time.

tɔ̄ɔ̄ paj mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan njǎŋ	'What month is next?'

4) lǎŋcâak 'after' is a Verb Phrase and refers to time. It may be followed by NP, VP, or S.

With NP:	lǎŋcâak dyan mōkkáráa	'After January'
With VP:	lǎŋcâak kin khâw	'After eating'
With S:	lǎŋcâak láaw paj tálâat...	'After he went to the market...'

5) kɔ̄ɔ̄n 'before, previous' is a verb. It refers only to time. It may be followed by NP, VP, or S.

Before NP:	kɔ̄ɔ̄n dyan thánwáa	'Before December'
Before VP:	kɔ̄ɔ̄n paj kin khâw	'Before going to eat'
Before S:	kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw paj ...	'Before he went...'

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks with the name of the month:

(a) dyan thíi hók mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan __________________

(b) dyan thíi síp-ét mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan ________________

(c) dyan thíi sɔ̌ɔŋ mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan __________________

(d) dyan thíi hâa mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan __________________

(e) dyan thíi pɛ̂ɛt mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan __________________

(f) dyan thíi sīī mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan __________________

2. Fill in the blanks with the number of the month:

(a) dyan thíi ______________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan míináa

(b) dyan thíi ______________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan mōkkáráa

(c) dyan thíi ______________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan túláa

(d) dyan thíi ______________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan kɔɔrākádaa

(e) dyan thíi ______________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan kannjáa

(f) dyan thíi ______________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan thánwáa

3. Fill in the blanks with tɔ̄ɔ̄ paj, kɔ̄ɔ̄n, or lǎŋcâak as required:

(a) ___________________ dyan phȳtsácíkaa mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan túláa

(b) ___________________ dyan kumpháa mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan míináa

(c) kannjáa mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan thíi kàw. _________ mɛ̄ɛ̄n dyan túláa

---

Answers: 1(a)mīthúnáa (b)túláa (c)kumpháa (d)phȳtsápháa
(e)sǐŋhǎa (f)méesǎa, 2(a)sǎam(b)nȳŋ (c)síp (d)cét(e)kàw
(f)síp sɔ̌ɔŋ, 3(a)kɔ̄ɔ̄n (b)lǎŋcâak (c)tɔ̄ɔ̄paj

CYCLE 27

M-1

mỳy nìi	today
mỳy nìi mɛ̄ɛn wánthíi thāwdaj?	What's the date today?
wán-kə̂ət	birthday
wán-kə̂ət càw mɛ̄ɛn wánthíi thāwdaj?	What's your birth date?
pii-māj láaw	Lao New Year
pii-māj láaw mɛ̄ɛn wánthíi thāwdaj?	What's the date of the Lao New Year?
wán êekkáràat	Independence Day
wán êekkáràat mɛ̄ɛn wánthíi thāwdaj?	What's the date of Independence Day?
wán rāthāthámmānúun	Constitution Day
wán rāthāthámmānúun mɛ̄ɛn wánthíi thāwdaj?	What's the date of Constitution Day?
wán kammākɔɔn	Labor Day
wán kammākɔɔn mɛ̄ɛn wánthíi thāwdaj?	What's the date of Labor Day?

M-2

kə̂ət	born
càw kə̂ət wánthíi thāwdaj?	What date were you born?

tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋŋáan	get married
càw tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋŋáan wánthíi thāwdaj?	What date did you get married on?
míi nāt	have a date
càw míi nāt wánthíi thāwdaj?	What date do you have a date on?
ɔ̂ɔk dəəntháaŋ	begin a trip
càw ɔ̂ɔk dəəntháaŋ wánthíi thāwdaj?	What date did you begin your trip?
paj/máa hɔ̀ɔt	arrive
càw paj hɔ̀ɔt wánthíi thāwdaj?	What date did you arrive there?

C-1

A. mỳy nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n wánthíi thāwdaj?	What's the date today?
B. mỳy nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n wánthíi sípsīi phȳtsápháa pii phán kàw hɔ̀ɔj cét-síp	Today is the 14th of May 1970.

C-2

A. càw kə̂ət wánthíi thāwdaj?	What date were you born?
B. khɔ̂j kə̂ət wánthíi síp hâa mōkkáráa pii phán kàw hɔ̀ɔj sīisíp-ét	I was born on the fifteenth of January nineteen forty-one.

C-3

A.	càw si ŝɔk dəəntháaŋ wánthíi kàw mɛɛn bɔɔ?	You are going to begin your trip on the ninth, right?
B.	bɔ̄ɔ mɛɛn, khôj si ŝɔk dəəntháaŋ wánthíi síp míináa	No. I'll begin my trip on the tenth of March.

ຖາມວັນເກີດຂອງບຸກຄົນຕ່າງໆຫລືວັນທີ່ສຳຄັນຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! ຕໍ່ໄປກໍໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມກັນໂດຍນາຍຄູ ເປັນຜູ້ຄອຍກວດການເວົ້າຂອງຂະເຈົ້າ. ຈົ່ງພຍາຍາມໃຊ້ຄຳທີ່ຮຽນມາແລ້ວໃຫ້ຫລາຍໆ.

NOTES

1) wán thíi thāwdaj (lit. the how many-eth day) 'What day?' is used in asking for dates. In the response the sequence of elements is (a) day (b) month (c) year.

Q:	càw kə̂ət wánthíi thāwdaj	'When were you born?'
A:	khôj kə̂ət wánthíi síp hâa mōkkaráa pii phán kàw hòoj sīi síp ét	'I was born January 15, 1941.'

(a)	day:	wánthíi síp hâa	'the fifteenth'
(b)	month:	mōkkaráa	'January'
(c)	year:	pii phán kàw hòoj sīi síp-ét	(Lit. year thousand nine hundred forty one) '1941'

pii 'year' always precedes the designation for year. The year is always given thusly: phán ... hòoj ... (one thousand ... hundred ...) and never: síp kàw hòoj ... (nineteen hundred ...).

APPLICATION

1. On a separate piece of paper write out in full the dates given below, then check your answers:

   (a) May 7, 1931 (b) September 23, 1919
   (c) February 1, 1947 (d) December 25, 1963
   (e) August 30, 1926 (f) April 14, 1970

Answers: (a)wánthíi cét dyan phȳtsáphaa phán kàw hɔ̀ɔj sǎam síp-ét (b)wánthíi sáaw sǎam dyan kannjáa phán kàw hɔ̀ɔj síp kàw (c)wánthíi nȳŋ dyan kumpháa phán kàw hɔ̀ɔj sII síp cét (d)wánthíi sáaw hâa dyan thánwáa phán kàw hɔ̀ɔj hók síp sǎam (e)wánthíi sǎam síp dyan siŋhǎa phán kàw hɔ̀ɔj sáaw hók (f)wánthíi síp sII dyan méesǎa phán kàw hɔ̀ɔj cét síp

CYCLE 28

M-1

mỳy	day
càw si paj mỳy daj?	When (what day) will you go?
pii	year
càw si paj pii daj?	When (what year) will you go?
aathīt	week
càw si paj aathīt daj?	When (which week) will you go?
ookâat	occasion
càw si paj ookâat daj?	When (on what occasion) will you go?
wéeláa	time
càw si paj wéeláa daj?	When will you go?
sūamóoŋ	hour
càw si paj sūamóoŋ daj?	Which hour will you go?
dyan	month
càw si paj dyan daj?	What month will you go?

M-2

sūamóoŋ thíi sɔ̌ɔŋ	second hour
khɔ̂j si paj sūamóoŋ thíi sɔ̌ɔŋ	I will go at the second hour.

aathīt nâa	next week
khɔ̂j si paj aathīt nâa	I will go next week.
pii nâa	next year
khɔ̂j si paj pii nâa	I will go next year.
mỳy ȳyn	tomorrow
khɔ̂j si paj mỳy ȳyn	I will go tomorrow.
náj ookâat bun thàat lǔaŋ	on the occasion of That Luang festival
khɔ̂j si paj náj ookâat bun thàat lǔaŋ	I will go on the occasion of That Luang festival.
wéeláa càw máa	when you come
khɔ̂j si paj wéeláa càw máa	I will go when you come.

M-3

khâw hóoŋhían	enter school
mỳy daj càw si khâw hóoŋhían?	When will you enter school?
ɔ̂ɔk lùuk	give birth
mỳy daj càw si ɔ̂ɔk lùuk ?	When will you have your baby?
cɛ̀ɛŋ tamlûat	report to the police
mỳy daj càw si cɛ̀ɛŋ tamlûat ?	When will you report to the police?
aw khýyn hâj láaw	return (it) to him
mỳy daj càw si aw khýyn hâj láaw ?	When will you return it to him?

hían sǎmrēt	finish study
mỳy daj càw si hían sǎmrēt	When will you finish your studies?

M-4

mỳy nìi càw si hēt njǎŋ?	What are you going to do today?
aathīt nìi càw si paj sǎj?	Where are you going to go this week?
sūamóoŋ nìi càw si hían njǎŋ?	What are you going to study this hour?
wéeláa nìi càw phāk jūu sǎj?	Where are you staying at the present time?
paj thīaw	to go on a pleasure trip (or walk)
pii nìi láaw si paj thīaw sǎj?	Where is he going to go on a pleasure trip this year?
sɔ̌ɔn	to teach
mỳy wáncan nìi láaw si sɔ̌ɔn phǎj?	Who is she going to teach this Monday?

M-5

týkbét	to fish
aathīt nìi khɔ̂j si paj týkbét	This week I am going to go fishing.
kinkhâw pāa	picnic
aathīt nìi khɔ̂j si paj kinkhâw pāa.	This week I'm going to go picnicking.

khɛ́ɛm thālée	seashore
aathīt nìi khɔ̂j si paj khɛ́ɛm thālée	This week I'm going to go to the seashore.
làa sát	hunt
aathīt nìi khɔ̂j si paj làa sát	This week I'm going to go hunting.
thātsánáacɔɔn	sightseeing
aathīt nìi khɔ̂j si paj thātsánáacɔɔn	This week I'm going to go sightseeing.
tāaŋ páthèet	foreign country
aathīt nìi khɔ̂j si paj tāaŋ páthèet	This week I'm going abroad.
C-1	
(mỳy)	day
A. càw si paj mỳy daj?	{ When / What } day are you going?
(mỳy nìi)	today
B. khɔ̂j si paj mỳy nìi	I am going today.
C-2	
(láaw)	she
A. láaw si paj bɔɔ?	Is she going?
B. paj	Yes, she is going.

(wéeláa)	time
A. láaw si paj wéeláa daj?	When is she going?
(phùakháw paj)	we go
B. láaw si paj wéeláa phùakháw paj	She is going when we go.

C-3

A. mỳy nìi càw si hēt njǎŋ?	What are you going to do today?
B. mỳy nìi khɔ̂j si paj kinkhâw pāa	Today I'm going to go picnicking.

C-4

A. pii daj càw si hían sǎmrēt	What year will you complete your studies?
B. khɔ̂j si hían sǎmrēt pii nâa	I'll complete my studies next year.

ບົດນີ້ຍາວແດ່ຈັກໜ້ອຍ. ສະນັ້ນ ຈຶ່ງເຮັດໃຫ້ແນ່ໃຈວ່ານັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານເຂົ້າໃຈຢ່າງລະອຽດ. ຜູ້ຂຽນຢາກຂໍແນະນຳອີກເທື່ອນຶ່ງວ່າ ການສອນ"ໄຊເກີລ"ນີ້ ຄັນເບິ່ງເຜີນໆແລ້ວຄືຈະງ່າຍໆ. ແຕ່ຖ້າຈະໃຫ້ໄດ້ຜົນຢ່າງພໍໃຈແລ້ວ ນາຍຄຣູຈະຕ້ອງຄິດຢູ່ສເມີວ່າ ກ່ອນທີ່ນັກຮຽນຈະສາມາດເວົ້າພາສາທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າຮຽນໄດ້ຢ່າງສະບາຍແລະແນ່ນອນ ຂະເຈົ້າຈະຕ້ອງມີຄວາມເຊື່ອໝັ້ນໃນຕົວເອງ; ການເວົ້າຢ່າງກະຕຸກກະຕັກຍ່ອມສະແດງໃຫ້ເຫັນເຖິງຄວາມບໍ່ໝັ້ນໃຈ ແລະຄວາມເລືອນລາງໃນຄວາມຈື່ຈຳຂອງຜູ້ເວົ້າ. ເມື່ອເຫັນວ່າເປັນດັ່ງນີ້ແລ້ວ ກໍຈົ່ງພານັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານເວົ້າທຸກໆປໂຍກຈົນລ່ຽນເສັຽກ່ອນຈຶ່ງຮຽນອັນໃໝ່ຕໍ່ໄປ.

NOTES

1) Time Expressions, such as aathīt nâa, etc. may occur in sentence initial or sentence final position with little or no difference in meaning. Their position is determined by the type of sentence they occur in. (1) When they occur in sentences with njǎŋ or sǎj as question words, they are in sentence initial position:

Q:	mỳy nìi càw si hēt njǎŋ	'What are you going to do today?'
A:	mỳy nìi khɔ̂j si hēt kaan	'Today I'm going to work.'

2) When they occur in other types of sentences, they may occur in sentence initial or sentence final position:

Q:	mỳy daj càw si khâw hóoŋhían	'When will you start school?'
Q:	càw si khâw hóoŋhían mỳy daj	'When will you start school?'
A:	khɔ̂j si khâw hóoŋhían mỳy ȳyn	'I'm starting tomorrow.'
A:	mỳy ȳyn	'Tomorrow'.

mỳy ȳyn khɔ̂j si khâw hóoŋhían might occur in a statement, but it would not occur in a response to a question.

2) daj 'which, what' may occur after time words like mỳy 'day' aathīt 'week', pii 'year', etc. with the meaning 'one particular unit of time': mỳy daj 'what day?', pii daj 'which year', etc. Or it may occur after wéeláa 'time' with the meaning 'indefinite time': wéeláa daj 'when (what time)'

3) wéeláa 'time' is used in the following senses:

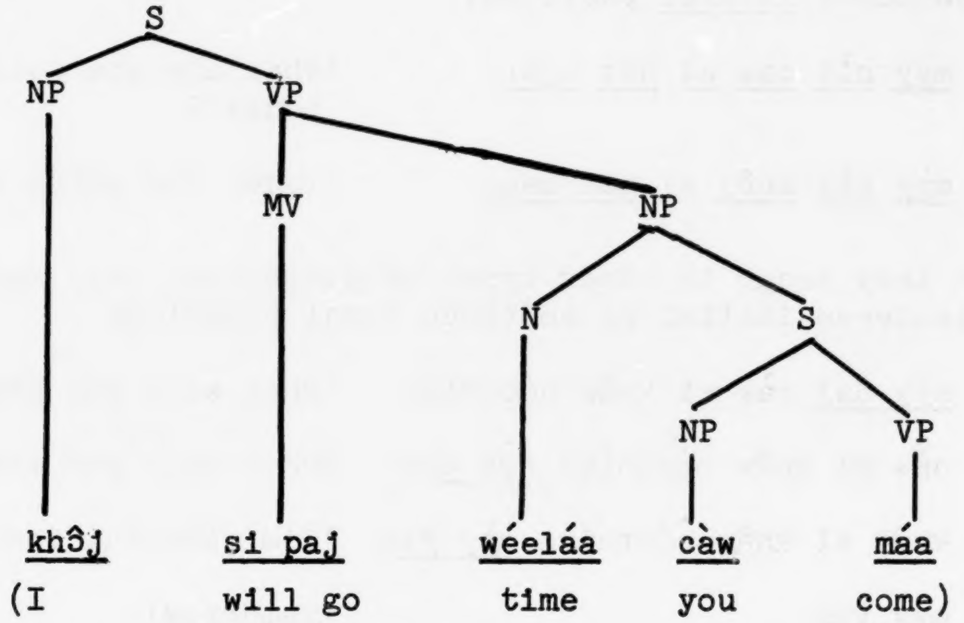
(a) a time for doing something

wéeláa kin khâw 'time to eat'

(b) a particular moment or period of time

wéeláa láaw máa 'when (the time) he came'

In this last sense it may serve as a connector between the Main Sentence and an included sentence as illustrated in the example below:



'I will go when you come.'

kɔ̄ɔn 'before' and lǎŋcâak 'after' can replace wéeláa in the construction above.

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence khɔ̂j si paj pii nâa, pii nâa is (a) VP (b) NP (c)MV (d) time expression.
2. A possible answer to the question càw si máa pii daj would be (a) aathīt nâa (b) pii daj (c) bɔ̄ɔ máa (d) pii nâa

---

Answers: 1b and d, 2d

3. Which of the following are acceptable answers to the question càw si paj wéeláa daj (a) mỳy ȳȳn, (b) náj ɔɔkâat bun thàat lǔaŋ (c) aathīt nâa (d) sūa mooŋ thīí sɔ̆ɔŋ (e) all of these.

4. Give reasonable answers to the following questions: (a) càw si máa wéeláa daj (b) dyan nâa ỳaj càw si paj sǎj (c) aathīt nâa càw si paj tát phǒm jūū háan tát phǒm bɔɔ (d) láaw si paj mỳy daj (e) càw si sɔ̀ɔkhǎa phȳan láaw wéeláa daj...

5. Using wéeláa as a connective, combine the following pairs of sentences.

   (a) khɔ̂j si paj ______________ càw máa

   (b) láaw si máa ______________ khácàw paj

   (c) láaw si paj thóorāsáp ______________ càw máa

   (d) khɔ̂j si paj kin khâw ______________ càw máa

   (e) déknɔ̀ɔj phūū nàn lîn ______________ mɛ̄ɛ̄ láaw fáŋ wīthānjū?

   (f) láaw si sɔ̄ŋ thóorālèek ______________ phɔ̄ɔ láaw máa

6. Repeat No.5 using kɔ̄ɔ̄n as a connective.

7. Repeat No.5 using lǎŋcâak as a connective.

Answers: 3e, 4(a)khɔ̂j si máa aathīt nâa (or) aathīt nâa ,etc. (b)dyan nâa láaw si paj... (c)bɔ̄ɔ̄, bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj (or) si paj (d)mỳy ȳȳn (or) láaw si paj mỳy ȳȳn (e)dyan nâa (or) khɔ̂j si sɔ̀ɔkhǎa phȳan láaw dyan nâa 5put wéeláa in the spaces between sentences 6put kɔ̄ɔ̄n in the spaces 7put lǎŋcâak in the spaces.

CYCLE 29

M-1

pêɛt	eight
diawnìi pêɛt móoŋ	It's eight o'clock.
síp	ten
diawnìi síp móoŋ	It's ten o'clock.
pêɛt... khə̄ŋ	eight, half
diawnìi pêɛt móoŋ khə̄ŋ	It's half past eight.
kàw, síphâa	nine, fifteen
diawnìi kàw móoŋ síphâa	It's 9:15.
cét, njáŋ síp	seven, ten of
diawnìi cét móoŋ njáŋ síp	It's ten to seven (6:50).
hâa... sáaw	five, twenty
diawnìi hâa móoŋ sáaw	It's 5:20
săam, njáŋ síphâa	three, 15 of
diawnìi săam móoŋ njáŋ síphâa	It's 2:45.
sɨɨ, síp	four, ten
diawnìi sɨɨ móoŋ síp	It's 4:10.
hók... khə̄ŋ	six, half
diawnìi hók móoŋ khə̄ŋ	It's 6:30.

M-2

diawnìi cák móoŋ lɛ̀ɛw?	What time is it?

C-1

A. diawnìi cák móoŋ lɛ̀ɛw	What time is it?
B. diawnìi	It's ....

ຈົງຖາມນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານກ່ຽວກັບເຣື້ອງໂມງແລະເວລາຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! ດຽວນີ້ຈັກໂມງແລ້ວ? ຈົງຖາມເຖິງເວລາຂອງການປະກອບກິຈວັດປະຈຳວັນຂອງນັກຮຽນເອງ ແລະຈົງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຕອບຈົນທ່ານພໍໃຈ.

NOTES

1) móoŋ 'o'clock' is used in asking and telling time.

Asking the time:

diawnìi + Number (Q) + móoŋ lɛ̀ɛw

diawnìi cák móoŋ lɛ̀ɛw

'What time is it?'

2) Telling time:

(diawnìi) + Number + móoŋ + Part of hour

diawnìi		pɛ̂ɛt	móoŋ	síp hâa
(now	it's	8	o'clock	15)

'It's 8:15.'

If it is after the half hour, the number of minutes remaining before the hour is indicated by putting njáŋ 'yet' after the hour followed by the number of minutes remaining:

síp móoŋ njáŋ síp

(ten o'clock yet ten)

'10 minutes to ten.'

APPLICATION

1. Using the numbers as a guide, complete the following time expressions:

   (a) diawnìi pɛ̂ɛt móoŋ __________ (8:15)

   (b) diawnìi __________ móoŋ (9:00)

   (c) diawnìi síp móoŋ __________ síp (9:50)

   (d) diawnìi sīi móoŋ __________ (4:30)

   (e) diawnìi __________ móoŋ lɛ̀ɛw? (What time is it?)

   (f) diawnìi hâa móoŋ __________ (5:10)

   (g) diawnìi sɔ̌ɔŋ móoŋ njáŋ __________ (1:35)

   (h) diawnìi cét móoŋ __________ (7:20)

2. Look at your watch and write out in full the correct time on this line. ______________________________

____

Answers: 1(a)síphâa (b)kàw (c)njáŋ (d)khə̄ŋ (e)cák (f)síp (g)sáaw hâa (h)sáaw 2you'll have to decide what the correct answer to this is yourself.

CYCLE 30

M-1

pɛ̂ɛt, sàw	8, morning
khɔ̂j paj sỳy khɔ̌ɔŋ pɛ̂ɛt móoŋ sàw	I go shopping at eight in the morning.
sípsɔ̌ɔŋ, thīaŋ	12, noon
khɔ̂j paj sỳy khɔ̌ɔŋ síp sɔ̌ɔŋ móoŋ thīaŋ	I go shopping at 12 noon.
sɔ̌ɔŋ, bāaj	2, afternoon
khɔ̂j paj sỳy khɔ̌ɔŋ bāaj sɔ̌ɔŋ móoŋ	I go shopping at 2 in the afternoon.
hâa, lɛ́ɛŋ	5, evening
khɔ̂j paj sỳy khɔ̌ɔŋ hâa móoŋ lɛ́ɛŋ	I go shopping at 5 in the evening.
kàw, kaaŋkhýyn	9, night
khɔ̂j paj sỳy khɔ̌ɔŋ kàw móoŋ kaaŋkhýyn	I go shopping at 9 in the evening.
síp ét, khə̄ŋ	11, half
khɔ̌j paj sỳy khɔ̌ɔŋ síp-ét móoŋ khə̄ŋ	I go shopping at 11:30.

M-2

hóoŋhían	school
càw paj hóoŋhían cák móoŋ?	What time do you go to school?
hētkaan	work
càw paj hētkaan cák móoŋ?	What time do you go to work?
sỳy khɔ̌ɔŋ	shop
càw paj sỳy khɔ̌ɔŋ cák móoŋ?	What time did you go shop?
kin kaafée	have coffee
cáw paj kin kaafée cák móoŋ?	What time do you go to drink coffee?
dȳm nàmsáa	drink tea
càw paj dȳm nàmsáa cák móoŋ?	What time do you go to drink tea?
nɔ́ɔn	sleep
càw paj nɔ́ɔn cák móoŋ?	What time do you go to bed?
lɔ́ɔj nàm	swim
càw paj lɔ́ɔj nàm cák móoŋ?	What time do you go to swim?

M-3

hóoŋhían, kàw móoŋ sàw	school, 9:00 a.m.
khɔ̂j paj hóoŋhían kàw móoŋ sàw	I go to school at 9:00 a.m.

hētkaan, pɛ̂ɛt móoŋ khə̄ŋ tɔɔn sàw	work, 8:30 a.m.
khɔ̂j paj hēt kaan pɛ̂ɛt móoŋ khə̄ŋ tɔɔn sàw	I go to work at 8:30 a.m.
sỳy khɔ̆ɔŋ, síp-ét móoŋ sàw	shopping, 11 a.m.
khɔ̂j paj sỳy khɔ̆ɔŋ síp-ét móoŋ sàw	I went shopping at 11 a.m.
kin kaafée, bāāj săam móoŋ	drink coffee, 3 p.m.
khɔ̂j paj kin kaafée bāāj săam móoŋ	I went to drink coffee at 3:00 p.m.
dȳm nàmsáa, bāāj sīī móoŋ khə̄ŋ	drink tea, 4:30 p.m.
khɔ̂j paj dȳm nàmsáa bāāj sīī móoŋ khə̄ŋ	I went to drink tea at 4:30 p.m.
nɔ́ɔn, síp móoŋ kaaŋkhýyn	(go) to bed, 10:00 p.m.
khɔ̂j paj nɔ́ɔn síp móoŋ kaaŋkhýyn	I go to bed at 10:00 p.m.
bə̄ŋ siinée, cét móoŋ lɛ́ɛŋ	go to the movies, 7:00 p.m.
khɔ̂j paj bə̄ŋ siinée cét móoŋ lɛ́ɛŋ	I went to the movies at 7:00 p.m.
lɔ́ɔj nàm, síp sɔ̆ɔŋ móoŋ thīaŋ	go swimming, 12 noon
khɔ̂j paj lɔ́ɔj nàm síp sɔ̆ɔŋ móoŋ thīaŋ	I go swimming at twelve noon.

C-1

(lɔ́ɔj nàm)

A. càw si paj lɔ́ɔj nàm cák móoŋ?	What time will you go to swimming?
(9, njáŋ 15)	
B. khɔ̌j si paj kàw móoŋ njáŋ síp hâa	I will go at a quarter to 9.

C-2

(sǎj)

A. láaw paj sǎj?	Where did he go?
(kin kaafée)	
B. láaw paj kin kaafée	He went to have coffee.
(cák móoŋ)	
A. láaw paj cák móoŋ?	What time did he go?
(pêɛt, síp)	
B. láaw paj pêɛt móoŋ síp.	He went at ten past eight.

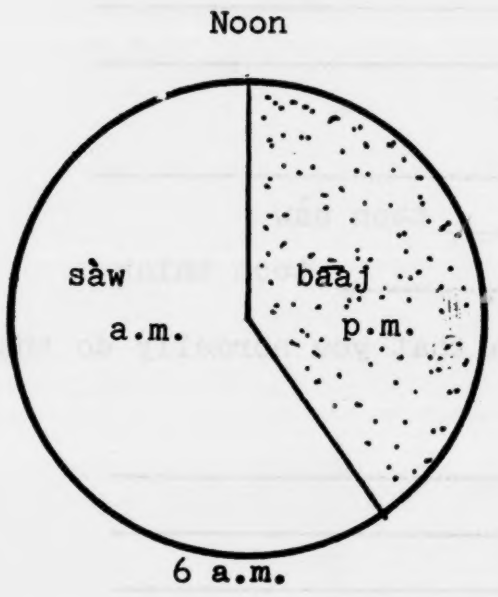
ຊີ້ແຈງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເຂົ້າໃຈເຖິງການໃຊ້ຫລືບອກເວລາຕ່າງໆ ຈົນຂະເຈົ້າບອກເວລາໄດ້ຢ່າງງ່າຍດາຍ. ອັນໃດເລີ່ມເວລາໃດ? ໃຜຈະເຮັດຫຍັງຫລືມີຫຍັງເກີດຂຶ້ນເວລາໃດ? ດັ່ງນີ້ເປັນຕົ້ນ.

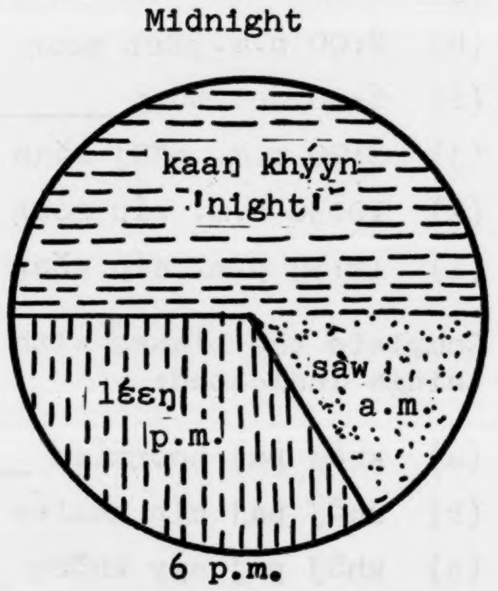
NOTES

1 Words designating the part of the day like sàw 'a.m.' are usually placed after móoŋ in time expressions, thus

cét móoŋ sàw	'7 a.m.'	síp sǒoŋ móoŋ thiaŋ	'12 noon'
hâa móoŋ léɛŋ	'5 p.m.'	síp-ét móoŋ kaaŋkhýyn	'11 p.m.'

The approximate period of time referred to by such terms as sàw, etc. is indicated on the clock faces below





APPLICATION

1. Complete the following examples:

(a) 9:00 a.m. kàw móoŋ ______________________________

(b) 1:30 p.m. __________ móoŋ khə̄ŋ

(c) 5:00 p.m. hâa móoŋ ______________________________

(d) 12:00 síp sɔ̌ɔŋ móoŋ ______________________________

(e) 4:00 p.m. bāāj sīī ______________________________

(f) 11:00 a.m. síp-ét móoŋ __________________________

(g) 10:00 p.m. síp móoŋ ______________________________

(h) 8:00 p.m. pɛ̂ɛt móoŋ ______________________________

(i) 6:50 cét móoŋ __________ síp

(j) 3:20 p.m. bāāj sǎam móoŋ __________________________

(k) 10:30 a.m. síp móoŋ __________ tɔɔn sàw

(l) 12:15 p.m. síp sɔ̌ɔŋ móoŋ __________ tɔɔn thīaŋ

2. Complete the blanks with the time that you normally do the things indicated:

(a) khɔ̂j paj hóoŋhían ______________________________

(b) khɔ̂j paj kin kaafée ______________________________

(c) khɔ̂j paj sỳy khɔ̌ɔŋ ______________________________

(d) khɔ̂j paj nɔ́ɔn ______________________________

Answers: 1(a)sàw (b)bāāj (c)lɛ́ɛŋ (d)thīaŋ (e)móoŋ (f)sàw (g)kaáŋ khýyn, lɛɛŋ (h)lɛɛŋ (i)njáŋ (j)sáaw (k)khə̄ŋ (l)síphâa 2you will have to check own answers here.

CYCLE 31

M-1

sáwmȳaj, náathíi, síp	rest, minute, ten
láaw sáwmȳaj síp náathíi	He rested ten minutes.
phākphɔ̄ɔn, aathīt, sǎam	take vacation, week, three
láaw phākphɔ̄ɔn sǎam aathīt	He took three weeks vacation.
bɔ̄ɔ sábaaj, mỳy, sīi	sick, day, four
láaw bɔ̄ɔ sábaaj sīi mỳy	He was sick for three days.
tiisə́k, dyan, sɔ̌ɔŋ	fight the war, month, two
láaw tiisə́k sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan	He fought (in a war) for two months.
jūu mýaŋnɔ̀ɔk, pii, hók	be abroad, year, six
láaw jūu mýaŋnɔ̀ɔk hók pii	He spent six years abroad.
kàncaj, wīnáathíi, sǎamsíphâa	hold one's breath, second, thirty-five
láaw kàncaj sǎamsíphâa wīnáathíi	He held his breath for 35 seconds.
thâa càw, sūamóoŋ, khə̄ŋ	wait for you, hour, half
láaw thâa càw khə̄ŋ sūamóoŋ	He waited for you for half an hour.
khâw thɛ̌ɛw	form a line
láaw khâw thɛ̌ɛw sūamóoŋ khə̄ŋ	He was in line for one and a half hours.

M-2

jūū mýaŋ láaw, pii	be in Laos, year
láaw jūū mýaŋ láaw cák pii?	How many years was he in Laos?
lŏŋtháaŋ, sūamóoŋ	lose one's way, hour
láaw lŏŋtháaŋ cák sūamóoŋ?	How many hours was he lost?
āan, bóthían, náathíi	read, lesson, minute
láaw āan bóthían cák náathíi?	How many minutes did he read the lessons?
dəənth※áaŋ, aathīt	travel, week
láaw dəənthá aŋ cák aathīt?	How many weeks did he travel?
tiisək, mỳy	fight the war, day
láaw tiisək cák mỳy?	How many days was he in battle?

M-3

phākphɔ̄ɔ̄n	rest, take vacation
càw si phākphɔ̄ɔ̄n don paandaj?	How long will you take for vacation?
fýk-hát	practice
càw si fýk-hát don paandaj?	How long will you practice?
páʔ wàj, lōt	leave, car
càw si páʔ lōt càw wàj nìi don paandaj?	How long will you leave your car here?

sǟksàa	delay, be delayed
càw si sǟksàa don paandaj?	How long will you be delayed?
khǎŋ, láaw	imprison, he
càw si khǎŋ láaw don paandaj?	How long will you imprison him?
khùapkhúm	control
càw si khùapkhúm láaw don paandaj?	How long will you keep him under control?

C-1

A. láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	What is he going to do?
B. láaw si (sáwmȳaj)	He is going to (take a rest.)
A: láaw si (sáwmȳaj) cák (náathíi)?	How many (minutes) will he (rest)?
B. (sáaw náathíi).	(Twenty minutes).

C-2

A. khácàw si hēt njǎŋ?	What are they going to do?
B. khácàw si (paj phākphɔ̄ɔn).	They are going to (take a vacation.)
A. khácàw si (paj phākphɔ̄ɔn) don paandaj?	How long will they be going?
B. (sɔ̌ɔŋ aathīt).	(Two weeks).

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫັດໃຊ້ໄລຍະເວລາ ທັງສັ້ນແລະຍາວ. ຖາມນັກຮຽນກ່ຽວກັບເຣື່ອງອື່ນໆທີ່ນອກເໜືອໄປກວ່າທີ່ຢູ່ໃນບົດຮຽນນີ້ເບິ່ງດູ! ແຕ່ຕ້ອງພຍາຍາມໃຫ້ຢູ່ພາຍໃນຂອບເຂດທີ່ນັກຮຽນໄດ້ຮຽນຮູ້ມາແລ້ວເທົ່ານັ້ນ.

NOTES

1) The following words are used for various periods of time: pii 'year', dyan 'month', aathīt 'week', mỳy 'day', sūamóoŋ 'hour', náathíi 'minute', and wīnáathíi 'second.' If one wishes to find out precisely how many units of time (hour, minute, etc.) were used in a particular activity cák + Time Unit is used: cák aathīt 'how many weeks', etc. The question can be put in a more general and less precise way by saying don paandaj (lit. long to what extent) 'How long?'. don paandaj is always used in situations in which the speaker has no idea how long a time was involved (hence no knowledge of what time units the response might be given in).

2) khə̄ŋ 'half' may occur before or after a Time Unit. When it occurs before the unit it means 'half of the unit': khə̄ŋ mỳy 'half a day', khə̄ŋ pii 'half a year', etc.

When khə̄ŋ occurs after a time unit, it means 'one and one half units': sūamóoŋ khə̄ŋ 'one and a half hours', náathíi khə̄ŋ 'one and a half minutes', etc.

If numbers precede a time unit and khə̄ŋ follows it, khə̄ŋ means 'one half is added to the other number':

sǎam mỳy khə̄ŋ '3 1/2 days', hók pii khə̄ŋ '6 1/2 years.' etc.

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks below with the correct information:

(a) ______________ nȳŋ míi síp-sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan.

(b) náathíi nȳŋ míi 60 ______________

(c) ______________ nȳŋ míi 24 sūamóoŋ

Answers: 1(a)pii (b)wīnáathíi (c)mỳy

(d) dyan nȳŋ míi 30 ____________________

(e) 60 wīnáathíi mɛ̄ɛn 1 ________________

(f) 4 sūamóoŋ mɛ̄ɛn 240 ________________

(g) 12 dyan mɛ̄ɛn 1 ____________________

(h) 7 mỳy mɛ̄ɛn 1 ______________________

(i) mỳy nȳŋ míi 86,000 ________________

(j) ________________ sūamóoŋ (how many hours?).

(k) ________________ paandaj (how long?).

(l) ________________ sūamóoŋ (half an hour).

(m) kàw mỳy ________________ (9 1/2 days).

(n) pii ____________________ (1 1/2 years).

Answers: (d)mỳy (e)náathíi (f)náathíi (g)pii (h)aathīt
(i)wīnáathíi (j)cák (k)don (l)khə̄ŋ
(m)khə̄ŋ (n)khə̄ŋ

CYCLE 32

M-1

míi wéeláa, phóɔ, sǎmlāp	have time, enough, for
càw bɔ̄ɔ míi wéeláa phóɔ sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	What don't you have enough time for?
sàj	use
càw sàj wéeláa nìi hēt njǎŋ?	What did you use this time for?
phéɛŋ wàj	save
càw phéɛŋ wéeláa wàj hēt njǎŋ?	What did you save the time for?
sǐa wéeláa, njɔ̀ɔn	lose time, because of
càw sǐa wéeláa njɔ̀ɔn njǎŋ?	What caused you to lose time?

M-2

khúakin	cook
khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ míi wéeláa phóɔ sǎmlāp khúakin.	I don't have enough time to cook.
pɛɛŋ, lōtcák	fix, motor bike
khɔ̂j sàj wéeláa nìi pɛɛŋ lōtcák.	I used this time to fix the motorbike.
sáwmȳaj	rest
khɔ̂j phéɛŋ wéeláa nìi wàj sáwmȳaj	I saved this time for resting.

sɔ̀ɔkhǎa, phȳan	look for, friend
khɔ̂j sǐa wéeláa njɔ̀ɔn sɔ̀ɔkhǎa phȳan khɔ̂j	I lost the time in looking for my friend.

M-3

hían nǎŋsy̌y, aathīt	study, week
càw míi wéeláa hían nāŋsy̌y cák aathīt?	How many weeks do you have for studying?
khúakin, sūamóoŋ	cook, hour
càw míi wéeláa khúakin cák sūamóoŋ?	How many hours do you have for cooking?
sɔ̀ɔkhǎa, mỳy	look for, day
càw sàj wéeláa sɔ̀ɔkhǎa phȳan càw cák mỳy?	How many days did you use in looking for your friend?
pɛɛŋ lōt, sūamóoŋ	fix the car, hour
càw sàj wéeláa pɛɛŋ lōt cák sūamóoŋ?	How many hours did you use for fixing your car?
sǐa wéeláa, khón sàj	lose time, servant
càw sǐa wéeláa sɔ̀ɔkhǎa khónsàj càw cák mỳy?	How many days did you want for looking for your servant?
pɛɛŋ, thóorāthāt	fix, television
càw sàj wéeláa pɛɛŋ thórāthāt cák sūamóoŋ?	How many hours did it take you to fix the television set?

M-4

míi, dyan, pɛ̂ɛt	have, month, eight
càw míi wéeláa hían pháasǎa láaw pɛ̂ɛt dyan	You have eight months to study Lao.
sáwmȳaj, náathíi, síphâa	rest, minute, fifteen
càw míi wéeláa sáwmȳaj síphâa náathíi	You have fifteen minutes to rest.
sàj, kinkhâw, sǎamsíp	use, eat, thirty
càw sàj wéeláa kinkhâw sǎamsíp náathíi.	You took thirty minutes to eat.
sìicɛɛŋ, lỳaŋ, sáaw	explain, matter, twenty
càw sàj wéeláa sìicɛɛŋ lỳaŋ nìi sáaw náathíi	You took twenty minutes to explain this matter.
síphâa	fifteen
càw sǐa wéeláa khúakin síphâa náathíi	You wasted fifteen minutes cooking.
thâa, hâa	wait for, five
càw sǐa wéeláa thâa phȳan càw hâa sūamóoŋ	You wasted five hours waiting for your friend.

C-1

A. càw bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi wéeláa phɔ́ɔ sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	You don't have enough time for what?
B. khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi wéeláa phɔ́ɔ sǎmlāp khúakin	I don't have enough time to cook.

C-2

A. càw sǐa wéeláa sɔ̀ɔkhǎa láaw cák náathíi?	How much time did you waste looking for him?
B. khɔ̂j sǐa wéeláa sīisíphâa náathíi	I wasted forty five minutes.

C-3

A. càw míi wéeláa phɔ́ɔ bɔɔ?	Do you have enough time?
B. wéeláa sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	Enough time for what?
A. sǎmlāp (khúakin).	For (cooking).
B. phɔ́ɔ, khɔ̂j míi wéeláa lǎaj síp náathíi	Oh yes, I have tens of minutes.

ນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ"ໂມງ"ແລະ"ຊົ່ວໂມງ"ໄດ້ຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງແລ້ວບໍ່? ຈົ່ງຖາມນັກຮຽນຫລືໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມກັນເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ຂະເຈົ້າມີ,ເສັຽ,ໃຊ້...ເວລາສຳລັບຫຍັງແລະດົນປານໃດ?

NOTES

1) As was indicated in Cycle 28 wéeláa 'time' may be followed by VP indicating some kind of activity: wéeláa kin khâw 'time to eat/for eating'. When wéeláa is followed by phɔ́ɔ 'enough, sufficient', sǎmlāp 'for the purpose of' occurs before the VP of Purpose:

míi wéeláa phɔ́ɔ sǎmlāp khúakin	(have time enough for (to) cook)
	'have enough time to cook'

In questions the VP of Purpose is replaced by njǎŋ: míi wéeláa phɔ́ɔ sǎmlāp njǎŋ? 'You have sufficient time for what?'

2) njɔ̀ɔn 'because of, due to' + VP of Activity is used to provide an explanation for some action:

khɔ̂j sǐa wéeláa njɔ̀ɔn sɔ̀ɔkhǎa phȳan khɔ̂j	(I lost time due to looking for my friend.)
	'I spent time (in vain) looking for my friend.'

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences:

(a) khɔ̂j míi wéeláa ______________ (fix motorbike)

(b) càw bɔ̄ɔ míi wéeláa ______________ (to rest)

(c) láaw sǐa wéeláa ______________ thâa phȳan láaw (due to)

Answers: 1(a)pɛɛŋ lōtcák (b)sáwmȳaj (c) njɔ̀ɔn

(d) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi wéeláa __________ sǎmlāp khúakin (enough time time...)

(e) càw sàj wéeláa kin khâw cák __________? (how many minutes)

(f) càw míi wéeláa _______________ hók **dyan** (study Lao)

(g) wéeláa _______________ njǎŋ (for **what?**)

(h) càw sǐa wéeláa sɔ̀ɔkhǎa khónsàj càw __________ (how long?)

2. Answer the following questions:

(a) mỳy wáan nìi càw sàj wéeláa hían pháasǎa láaw don paandaj?

(b) mỳy ȳȳn càw si míi wéeláa nɔ́ɔn cák sūamóoŋ?

(c) wán sǎw lɛ̀ɛw nìi (last Saturday) càw jyyn thâa mía càw don paandaj?

(d) mỳy ȳyn càw si míi wéeláa phɔ́ɔ sǎmlāp hían pháasǎa láaw bɔɔ?

(e) càw sǐa wéeláa njɔ̀ɔn njǎŋ?

Answers: 1(d)phɔ́ɔ (e)náathíi (f)hían pháasǎa láaw (g)sǎmlāp (h)don paandaj 2You can work out the answers yourself.

CYCLE 33

M-1

lōt mée	bus
khɔ̂j si paj nám lōt mée	I will go by bus.
hýa	boat
khɔ̂j si paj nám hýa	I will go by boat.
hýa bin	airplane
khɔ̂j si paj nám hýa bin	I will go by air plane.
lōt	car
khɔ̂j si paj nám lōt	I will go by car.
lōt thîip	bicycle
khɔ̂p si paj nám lōt thîip	I will go by bicycle.
lōt fáj	train
khɔ̂j si paj nám lōt fáj	I will go by train.
sǎam lɔ̀ɔ	tricycle
khɔ̂j si paj nám sǎam lɔ̀ɔ	I will go by tricycle.

M-2

nám	with, by
càw si paj nám njǎŋ?	How will you go?
nɛ́ɛw daj	how
càw si paj nɛ́ɛw daj?	How will you go?

C-1

(nám)	with, by
A. càw si paj nám njǎŋ?	How will you go?
(lōt)	car
B. khɔ̂j si paj nám (lōt)	I will go by (car).

C-2

(nɛ́ɛwdaj)	how
A. càw si paj nɛ́ɛwdaj?	How will you go?
(hýa)	boat
B. khɔ̂j si paj nám (hýa).	I will go by (boat).

ເມື່ອນັກຮຽນເວົ້າແລະເຂົ້າໃຈບົດຮຽນນີ້ໄດ້ດີແລ້ວ ທ່ານຈະສອນການໃຊ້ຍານພາຫະນະຢ່າງອື່ນອີກກໍ່ໄດ້. ຈົ່ງໃຊ້ແຕ່ສິ່ງທີ່ນັກຮຽນຮູ້ເຫັນ ແລະທີ່ທ່ານຄິດວ່າຈະເປັນປໂຍດ; ບໍ່ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ຈະເສັຽເວລາລ້າໆ.

NOTES

1) Mode of Transportation may be indicated by nám '(to go) along with' + Type of Vehicle following a verb of motion.

NP + MV + VP (Mode of Transportation)

khɔ̂j si paj nám lōt mée

(I will go go along with bus)

'I will go by bus.'

2) The Verb Phrase nám + Vehicle may be questioned in either of two ways:

Statement: khɔ̂j si paj nám lōt 'I'll go by car'.

Question 1: càw si paj nám njǎŋ 'How will you go?'

Question 2: càw si paj nɛ́ɛw daj 'How will you go?'

APPLICATION

1. In the sentence khɔ̂j si paj nám lōt fáj, nám lōt fáj is (a) NP (b) VP (c) preposition plus noun (d) MV (e) predicate.

2. In the question càw si paj nám njǎŋ, njǎŋ probably refers to (a) a person (b) a vehicle (c) a motion (d) a place.

3. In the question càw si paj nɛ́ɛwdaj, nɛ́ɛw means something like (a) how? (b) manner, way (c) by what means? (d) what? (e) none of these.

4. Complete the following sentences:

   (a) __________ si paj nám hýa (b) càw si paj nɛ́ɛw ________?

   (c) láaw si paj ______ hýa bin (d) khɔ̂j si paj nám _____ mée

   (e) càw si paj _______ njǎŋ?

5. Translate the following sentences into English:

   (a) láaw si paj nám lōtfáj (b) càw máa hóoŋhían nám njǎŋ?

   (c) wéeláa càw si paj hàanaahǎan, càw si paj nám njǎŋ?

   (d) phȳan càw paj nɛ́ɛwdaj?

Answers: 1b, 2b, 3b, 4(a)càw, khɔ̂j, etc. (b)daj (c)nám (d)lōt (e)nám 5(a)He'll go by train. (b)How did you come to school? (c)When you go to the restaurant, how will you go? (d)How did your friend go?

CYCLE 34

M-1

náaj tháaŋ	a guide
láaw si paj nám náaj tháaŋ	He will go with the guide.
káp paj	return
láaw si káp paj nám náaj tháaŋ	He will return with the guide.
lùuk láaw	his children
láaw si káp paj nám lùuk láaw	He will return with his children.
pýksǎa	consult
láaw si pýksǎa nám lùuk láaw	He will consult with his children.
phūū hūam ŋáan	colleagues
láaw si pýksǎa nám phūu hūam ŋáan láaw	He will consult with his colleagues.
aasǎj jūū	live
láaw si aasǎj jūū nám phūū hūam ŋáan láaw	He will live with his colleagues.
phīīnɔ̀ɔŋ	relatives
láaw si aasǎj jūū nám phīīnɔ̀ɔŋ láaw	He will live with his relatives.

M-2

khɔ̌ɔ anūnjàat	ask permission
láaw si khɔ̌ɔ anūnjàat nám phǎj?	From whom will he ask permission?
fýkhát	practice
láaw si paj fýkhát nám phǎj?	With whom is he going to practice?
hūam ŋáan	cooperate
láaw si paj hūam ŋáan nám phǎj?	With whom is he going to cooperate?
sámák hētkaan	apply for the job
láaw si paj sámák hētkaan nám phǎj?	To whom is he going to apply for the job?

C-1

(pýksǎa)	consult
A. càw si paj pýksǎa nám phǎj?	Who are you going to consult with?
(náaj tháaŋ)	guide
B. khɔ̂j si paj pýksǎa nám náaj tháaŋ	I am going to consult with the guide.

C-2

(aasăj jūū)	to live
A. phăj si máa aasăj jūū nám càw?	Who will come to live with you?
(phūū hūam ŋáan)	colleague
B. phūū hūam ŋáan khɔ̂j si máa aasăj jūū nám khɔ̂j	My colleague is going to come to live with me.

C-3

(lùuk)	children
A. càw si paj hēt njăŋ nám lùukcàw?	What are you going to do with your children?
(fýkhát)	practice
B. khɔ̂j si paj fýkhát nám khácàw	I am going to practice with them.

ລອງປະດິດເຣື່ອງຂຶ້ນປະກອບອີກເບິ່ງດູ! ຈົ່ງພຍາຍາມແຕ່ງເຣື່ອງງ່າຍໆແລະແປກປລາດ ຫລືເຣື່ອງທີ່ເປັນຫນ້າຢາກຫົວ ຈຶ່ງຈະພາໃຫ້ບັນຍາກາດຢູ່ໃນຫ້ອງຮຽນມີຊີວິດຊີວາຍິ່ງຂຶ້ນ.

NOTES

1) When nám is followed by NP in which the N is human, the relationship between the persons involved may be any one of the following:

(a) Accompaniment:

láaw si káp paj nám lùuk láaw

'He will return with his child.'

(b) Joint effort (with participants having equal status).

láaw si pýksǎa nám phūū hūam ŋáan láaw

'He will consult with his colleagues.'

(c) Joint effort (with participants have unequal status).

láaw si paj sámák hētkaan nám phǎj?

'Who is he going to apply to for a job?'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English: (a) láaw si njāaŋ paj nám nākhían (b) láaw si khīī lōt nám khôj (c) láaw si hían nám náaj khúu (d) láaw si khɔ̌ɔthòot nám khácàw (e) láaw si paj hǎa paa nám khácàw (f) láaw si wàw nám náaj khúu (g) láaw jūū mýaŋ láaw nám phɔ̄ɔ láaw (h) láaw bɔ̄ɔ māk hētwīak nám hǔa nâa láaw (i) láaw khɔ̌ɔ paj náj mýaŋ nám khácàw. (j) láaw si bɔ̄ɔ pýksǎa nám phə̄n.

Answers: 1(a) He will walk with the students. (b) He will ride with me. (c) He will study with the teacher (or under the teacher) (d) He will ask their pardon. (e) He will go fishing with them. (f) He will talk with (or to) the teacher. (g) He lives in Laos with his father. (h) He doesn't like to work with his boss. (i) He asked (to be allowed) to go into town with them. (j) He won't consult with him.

CYCLE 35

M-1

njāāŋ	to walk
khɔ̂j si njāāŋ {paj / máa}	I will walk.
kháp lōt	to drive
khɔ̂j si kháp lōt {paj / máa}	I will drive (there).
lɛ̄ɛ̄n	to run
khɔ̂j si lɛ̄ɛ̄n {paj / máa}	I will run.
khīī hýa	to ride in a boat
khɔ̂j si khīī hýa {paj / máa}	I will go by boat.
tèn khâam	to jump over
khɔ̂j si tèn khâam {paj / máa}	I will jump over it.
lɔ́ɔj nàam	to swim
khɔ̂j si lɔ́ɔj nàam {paj / máa}	I will swim (there).

M-2

nám	with, by
càw si paj nám njǎŋ	How will you go?
nέεw daj	how
càw si paj nέεw daj	How will you go?

M-3

njāāŋ	walk
láaw njāāŋ $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{paj}\\ \text{máa}\end{matrix}\right.$ bàannɔ̀ɔk	He walked to the country side.
khīī màa	ride a horse
láaw khīī $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{máa}\\ \text{paj}\end{matrix}\right.$ bàannɔ̀ɔk	He rode a horse to the country side.
khīī kian	ride in an ox car
láaw khīī kian $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{paj}\\ \text{máa}\end{matrix}\right.$ bàannɔ̀ɔk	He rode in an ox cart to the country side.
dəəntháaŋ	travel
láaw dəəntháaŋ $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{máa}\\ \text{paj}\end{matrix}\right.$ bàannɔ̀ɔk	He travels to the country side.
ʔ̂ɔk	exit
láaw ʔ̂ɔk $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{paj}\\ \text{máa}\end{matrix}\right.$ bàannɔ̀ɔk	He went (came) out to the country.

M-4

njāāŋ, kinkhâw, hàan aahǎan	walk, eat, restaurant
khɔ̂j si njāāŋ paj kin khâw jūū hàan aahǎan	I'll walk over to the restaurant and eat.
kháplōt, āān nǎŋsy̌y, hɔ̂ɔŋsámút	drive, read, library
khɔ̂j si kháplōt paj āān nǎŋsy̌y jūū hɔ̂ɔŋsámút	I'll drive over to library and read.
khīī lōtmée, jaam, hýan	ride on a bus, visit, house
láaw si khīī lōtmée máa jaam khɔ̂j jūū hýan khɔ̂j	He will ride on a bus over to my house to visit me.
lɛ̄ɛ̄n, cɛ̀ɛŋ tamlûat, komtamlûat	run, report to the police, police station
láaw si lɛ̄ɛ̄n paj cɛ̀ɛŋ tamlûat jūū komtamlûat	He will run over to report to the police at the police station.

M-5

kháp lōt	drive
láaw si kháp lōt paj sǎj?	Where is he driving to?
lɛ̄ɛ̄n	run
láaw si lɛ̄ɛ̄n paj sǎj?	Where is he running to?

C-1

(nám)

A. càw si paj nám njǎŋ?	How are you going?

(lōt mée)

B. khɔ̂j si paj nám lōt mée	I'm going by bus.

C-2

(nɛ́ɛwdaj)

A. láaw si paj nɛ́ɛwdaj?	How will she go?

(njāāŋ)

B. láaw si njāāŋ paj	She will walk.

C-3

(sǎj)

A. càw si dəənthάaŋ paj sǎj?	Where are you travelling to?

(bàannɔ̀ɔk)

B. khɔ̂j si dəənthάaŋ paj bàannɔ̀ɔk	I'm travelling to the country side.

ທ່ານແນ່ໃຈແລວບໍ່ວ່ານັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານເຂົ້າໃຈແລະຮູ້ຈັກຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງລະຫວ່າງຄຳວ່າ "ໄປນຳຫຍັງ" ແລະ "ໄປນຳໃຜ". ແລະຄຳວ່າ "ຂັບລົດໄປ" ແລະ "ໄປຂັບລົດ" ເດ? ທ່ານລອງທົດສອບຂະເຈົ້າເບິ່ງດູ!

NOTES

1) paj and máa may occur as the Main Verb in the sentence indicating motion in a particular direction (máa 'toward the speaker; paj, 'away from the speaker'):

máa hàanaahǎan	'to come to the restaurant'
paj kin khâw	'to go eat'

paj and máa also occur as secondary verbs indicating direction of motion after VP indicating type of locomotion (njāāŋ 'to walk', kháp lōt 'to drive', etc.); in fact, if any actual travel is indicated either paj or máa must follow VP of this kind:

kháp lōt paj	'to drive (some place)'
khīī hýa máa	'to come (some place) by boat'
njāāŋ paj kin khâw	'to walk (some place) to eat'
kháp lōt paj kin khâw jūū hàanaahǎan	'to drive to the restaurant to eat'

2) Although paj nám njǎŋ and paj nɛ́ɛw daj both mean 'How are (you) going?', there is a little difference in meaning between them. paj nám njǎŋ suggests that you are going on some sort of vehicle; whereas, paj nɛ́ɛw daj is simply a request as to how you are going from one place to another. The following exchange will illustrate this difference:

Q:	càw paj nám njǎŋ?	'How are you going?'
A:	khɔ̂j si bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj nám njǎŋ khɔ̂j si njāāŋ paj	'I'm not going in any kind of vehicle. I'm going to walk.'

APPLICATION

1. Add paj or máa and rearrange the following sentence parts into sentences:

(a) khīī hýa, hɔ̂ɔŋ sámút, āān nǎŋsy̌y
(b) hàan aahǎan, njāāŋ, kin khâw
(c) páthèet cīīn, dəəntháaŋ
(d) sǎj, khīī kian
(e) jaam phȳan, kháp lōt, hýan
(f) bàannɔ̀ɔk, ɔ̂ɔk
(g) hóoŋhían, lɛ̄ɛ̄n
(h) jūū náj mýaŋ, lîn, njāāŋ
(i) pásúm, khīī lōtmée, jūū hóoŋhían
(j) jūū sǎj, sōŋ thóorālèek
(k) si, njāāŋ, phùn
(l) mýaŋ wíaŋcan, dəəntháaŋ

Answers: Either paj or máa may be used. khɔ̂j, càw, láaw, etc. may be used as the subject. (a)khɔ̂j khīī hýa paj āān nǎŋsy̌y jūū hɔ̂ɔŋsámút (b)láaw njāāŋ máa kin khâw jūū hàan aahǎan (c)càw si dəəntháaŋ paj páthèet cīīn bɔɔ (d)láaw si khīī kian paj sǎj (e)khɔ̂j si kháp lōt máa jaam phȳan khɔ̂j jūū hýan láaw (f)khɔ̂j si ɔ̂ɔk paj bàannɔ̀ɔk (g)láaw lɛ̄ɛ̄n paj hóoŋhían (h)láaw njāāŋ paj lîn jūū náj mýaŋ (i)láaw khīī lōtmée paj pásúm jūū hóoŋhían (j)càw si paj sōŋ thóorālèek jūū sǎj (k)láaw si njāāŋ paj phùn (l)khɔ̂j si dəəntháaŋ paj mýaŋ wíaŋcan

CYCLE 36

M-1

hētwìak	to work
càw si hētwìak dàj bɔɔ?	Will you be able to work?
njāāŋ paj	walk
càw si njāāŋ paj dàj bɔɔ?	Will you be able to walk?
sỳy	buy
càw si sỳy dàj bɔɔ?	Will you be able to buy (it)?
nɔ́ɔn	sleep
càw si nɔ́ɔn dàj bɔɔ?	Will you be able to sleep?
thǎam	ask, question
càw si thǎam dàj bɔɔ?	Will you be able to ask?
njíŋ	shoot
càw si njíŋ dàj bɔɔ?	Will you be able to shoot?
tɔ̂ɔp	answer
càw si tɔ̂ɔp dàj bɔɔ?	Will you be able to answer?

M-2

dàj	can, be able
dàj	Yes, (I will be able to...)
bɔ̄ɔ̄	no
bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj	No, (I will not be able to...)

C-1

(hētwìak)

A. càw si hētwìak dàj bɔɔ?	Will you be able to work?

(dàj)

B. dàj	Yes.

C-2

(njíŋ)

A. càw si njíŋ dàj bɔɔ?	Will you be able to shoot?

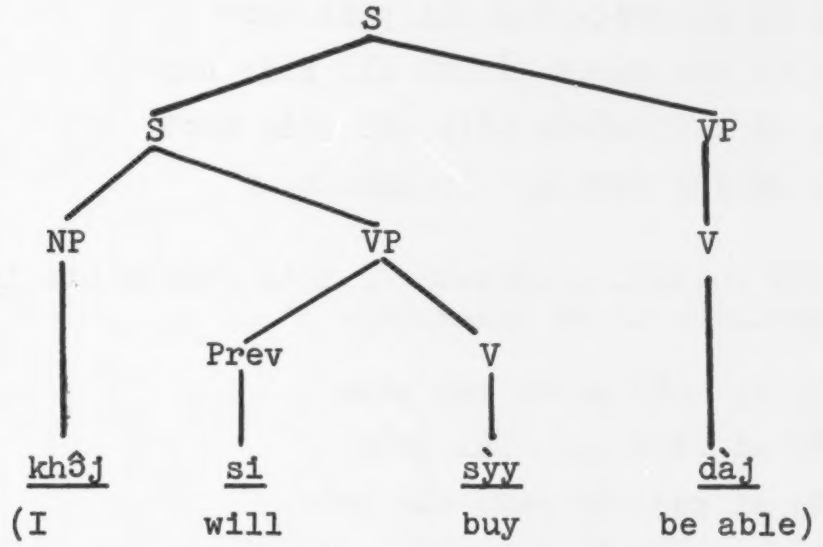
(bɔ̄ɔ̄)

B. bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj	No.

ຈົງຖາມນັກຮຽນຈ້ຳອີກເຖິງຄວາມສາມາດຂອງຂະເຈົ້າໃນດ້ານຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! ຂະເຈົ້າຕອບທ່ານໄດ້ຢ່າງເປັນທີ່ພໍໃຈແລ້ວບໍ່? ລືມຕື່ມໃຊ້ຄຳສັບເກົ່າອີກແດ່ ຍັງມີຫລາຍຄຳອີກທີ່ຈະໃຊ້ກັບ"ໄດ້"ໄດ້.

NOTES

1) dàj means 'to be able, possible', and it normally occurs as VP (Predicate) with a Sentence as NP (Subject).



'I will be able to buy it.'

2) Negation of this type of sentence is Sentence + bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj: khɔ̂j paj bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj 'I can't go.'

The question form is Sentence + dàj + bɔɔ? 'Can you...?'

The affirmative response is: dàj 'Yes, I can.'

The negative response is: bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj 'No, I can't.'

APPLICATION

1. Change the following questions into 'possibility' situations.

   (a) càw si khǎj pátuu nìi phìi bɔɔ?

   (b) càw si át pɔ̄ɔŋ-jìam nìi phìi bɔɔ?

   (c) càw si sāj kácɛɛ lìnsāk nìi phìi bɔɔ?

   (d) càw si khǎj kácɛɛ hîip nìi phìi bɔɔ?

   (e) càw si lóŋ khândaj nìi phìi bɔɔ?

2. Change the following statements into statements indicating one's inability to do something.

   (a) khɔ̂j si khǎj pátuu nàn phùn

   (b) khɔ̂j si pīan jaaŋ nàn phùn

   (c) khɔ̂j si paj hǎa phūu nàn phùn

   (d) khɔ̂j si sɔ̄ɔ̄jly̌a phūū nàn phùn

   (e) khɔ̂j si tít-tɔ̄ɔ káp phūū nàn phùn

3. Respond affirmatively to the questions in 1 above.

4. Give negative responses to the questions in 1 above.

Answers: 1change bɔɔ to dàj bɔ̄ɔ̄ 2Add bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj to the sentence. 3the response to all questions is dàj 4the response to all questions is bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj.

CYCLE 37

M-1

kháp lɔ̄t	drive
càw kháp lɔ̄t pen bɔɔ?	Do you know how to drive?
njíŋ pyyn	shoot a gun
càw njíŋ pyyn pen bɔɔ?	Do you know how to shoot a gun?
pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t	fix a car
càw pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t pen bɔɔ?	Do you know how to fix a car?
wàw pháasǎa aŋkít	speak English
càw wàw pháasǎa aŋkít pen bɔɔ?	Do you know how to speak English?
thāaj hùup	take picture
càw thāāj hùup pen bɔɔ?	Do you know how to take pictures?

M-2

pen	be
pen	Yes, (I know how to...)
bɔ̄ɔ̄	no
bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen	No, (I don't know how to...)

C-1

(kháp lōt)	drive
A. càw kháp lōt pen bɔɔ?	Do you know how to drive?
(pen)	
B. pen	Yes, I do.

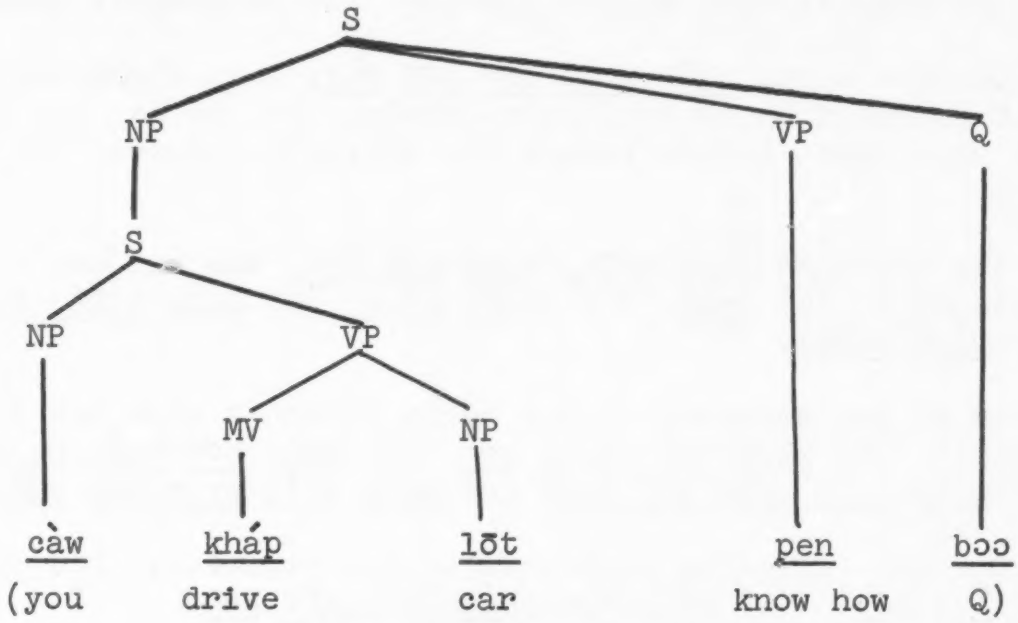
C-2

(pɛɛŋ lōt)	
A. càw pɛɛŋ lōt pen bɔɔ?	Do you know how to fix a car?
(bɔ̄ɔ̄)	
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen	No, I don't.

ຖາມນັກຮຽນເບິ່ງດູວ່າຂະເຈົ້າເຮັດຫຍັງເປັນແດ່! ໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຫັດຕອບທັງວິທີສັ້ນແລະວິທີຍາວ. ຈົ່ງເຮັດໃຫ້ແນ່ໃຈວ່າຂະເຈົ້າເຂົ້າໃຈຄວາມຫມາຍຂອງຄໍາວ່າ"ເປັນ"ຢູ່ໃນນີ້.

NOTES

1) Compare S + dàj constructions with S + pen constructions



'Do you know how to drive?'

The S + dàj and S + pen structure identical; the difference arises from the difference in meaning between pen 'to know how to perform some activity' and dàj 'to be able to do something'.

2) The affirmative response to S + pen bɔɔ is pen. The negative response is bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen. S + pen constructions are negated by putting bɔ̄ɔ̄ before pen.

3) dàj and pen may be combined with questions as in these examples:

láaw hēt njǎŋ pen	'What does he know how to do?'
càw sỳy njǎŋ dàj	'What can you buy?'

APPLICATION

1. láaw pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen. This sentence indicates that (a) he doesn't have any tools (b) he doesn't know how to fix cars (c) he doesn't want to fix the car (d) he doesn't have a car.

2. If someone said, khɔ̂j kháp lɔ̄t bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj, this might indicate that (a) he doesn't feel like driving (b) he has his right leg in a cast (c) he forgot his driver's license (d) he is ill.

3. In the sentence láaw thāāj hùup bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen, the subject of the sentence is (a) láaw (b) thāāj hùup (c) láaw thāāj hùup (d) láaw thāāj.

4. Which of the sentences below means 'I don't know how to shoot a gun'? (a) khɔ̂j njíŋ pyyn pen (b) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ njíŋ pyyn pen (c) khɔ̂j njíŋ pyyn bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen (d) khɔ̂j njíŋ pyyn pen bɔ̄ɔ̄.

5. Change the following sentences to the negative: (a) càw pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t pen bɔɔ? (b) khɔ̂j wàw pháasǎa aŋkít pen.

6. Answer this question affirmatively: càw pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t pen bɔɔ? ____

7. Answer this question negatively: càw thāāj hùup pen bɔɔ? ____

Answers: 1b, 2b, c, or d, 3c, 4c, 5(a)càw pɛɛŋ lɔ̄t bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen bɔɔ? (b)khɔ̂j wàw pháasǎa aŋkít bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen 6pen 7bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen.

CYCLE 38

M-1

tiicák	to type
láaw tiicák dàj bɔɔ?	Can she type?
sāk hùup	to take pictures
láaw sāk hùup dàj bɔɔ?	Can she take pictures?
sỳy khɔ̆ɔŋ	to shop
láaw sỳy khɔ̆ɔŋ dàj bɔɔ?	Can he shop?
tát phŏm	to cut hair
láaw tát phŏm dàj bɔɔ?	Can she cut hair?
púk hýan	to build a house
láaw púk hýan dàj bɔɔ?	Can she build a house?
khúakin	to cook
láaw khúakin dàj bɔɔ?	Can she cook?

M-2

khúakin	
bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj, phɔ̄wāā láaw khúakin bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen	No, because she doesn't know how to cook.
púk hýan	build a house
bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj, phɔ̄wāa láaw púk hýan bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen	No, because he doesn't know how to build a house.

tát phŏm	cut the hair
bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj, phɔ̄wāa láaw tát phŏm bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen	No, because he doesn't know how to cut hair.
sỳy khɔ̆ɔŋ	to shop
bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj, phɔ̄wāa láaw sỳy khɔ̆ɔŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen	No, because he doesn't know how to shop.
sāk hùup	take a picture
bɔ̄ɔ dàj, phɔ̄wāa láaw sāk hùup bɔ̄ɔ pen	No, because he doesn't know how to take a picture.
tiicák	type
bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj, phɔ̄wāa láaw tii cák bɔ̄ɔ pen	No, because he doesn't know how to type.

C-1

(khúakin)	
A. láaw khúakin dàj bɔɔ?	Can he cook?
(bɔ̄ɔ̄)	
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj, phɔ̄wāa láaw khúakin bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen	No, because he doesn't know how to cook.

C-2

(njăŋ)

A. láaw hēt njăŋ pen?	What does he know how to do?

(púk hýan)

B. láaw púk hýan pen	He knows how to build the house.

ບົດນີ້ທານລອງຈອມຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈຂອງນັກຮຽນໂດຍການປຽບທຽບຄຳວ່າ "ເປັນ" ແລະ "ໄດ້" ເບິ່ງດູ! ຂະເຈົ້າເຫັນຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງກັນແລ້ວບໍ? "ຂ້ອຍແປງຣົດເປັນ ແຕ່ວ່າມື້ນີ້ຂ້ອຍແປງຣົດບໍ່ໄດ້".

NOTES

1) phɔ̄wāā 'because' is a sentence connective. The sentence that follows phɔ̄wāā stands in causal relatiohship to the one that precedes it.

Sentence 1: láaw khúakin bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj

Sentence 2: láaw khúakin bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen

S 1 + S 2: láaw khúakin bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj phɔ̄wāā (láaw khúakin) bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen

'She can't cook because she doesn't know how (to cook).'

2) The difference in meaning between S + dàj 'to be in a position or situation to do something' and S + pen 'to know how to do something' may be illustrated in sentences like this one:

(láaw sāk hùup) bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj phɔ̄wāā láaw sāk hùup bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen

'He is unable to (take a picture) because he doesn't know how to take a picture'.

However, there are situations in which pen and dàj may be interchanged, as follows:

càw wàw pháasăa aŋkít bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen / dàj 'You can't speak English.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences:

    (a) bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj, phɔ̄wāā láaw tát phǒm ______________

    (b) bɔ̄ɔ̄ ______, phɔ̄wāā láaw sāk hùup bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen.

2. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences:

    (a) khɔ̂j si paj nám lɔ̄t thîip ______________ khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi lɔ̄t

    (b) khɔ̂j si njāāŋ paj ______________ khɔ̂j kháp lɔ̄t bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen

    (c) khɔ̂j si khīī hýa paj ______________ khɔ̂j njāāŋ paj bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj

3. Fill in the blanks with pen or dàj as indicated. If either is possible, put in both.

    (a) khɔ̂j paj nám hýa bɔ̄ɔ̄ ______________

    (b) láaw njāāŋ paj ______________

    (c) láaw hēt njǎŋ ______________

    (d) càw sāk hùup ______________ bɔɔ?

    (e) láaw tii cák bɔ̄ɔ̄ ______________

Answers: 1(a)bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen (b)dàj 2a, b and c: phɔ̄wāā
3(a)dàj (b)dàj (c)dàj/pen (d)dàj/pen (e)dàj/pen

CYCLE 39

M-1

sỳy	buy
càw sỳy màa cák too?	How many horses did you buy?
hěn	see
càw hěn màa cák too?	How many horses did you see?
míi	have
càw míi màa cák too?	How many horses do you have?
khǎaj	sell
càw khǎaj màa cák too?	How many horses did you sell?
dàj	get
càw dàj màa cák too?	How many horses did you get?
lìaŋ	raise
càw lìaŋ màa cák too?	How many horses did you raise?

M-2

pỳm	book
khɔ̂j hěn pỳm sɔ̌ɔŋ hǔa	I see two books.
sa̅a̅ŋmàj	carpenter
khɔ̂j hěn sa̅a̅ŋmàj sɔ̌ɔŋ khón	I see two carpenters.
mǎa	dog
khɔ̂j hěn mǎa sɔ̌ɔŋ too.	I see two dogs.

mâak kìaŋ	orange
khɔ̂j hěn mâak kìaŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ nūaj	I see two oranges.
paa	fish
khɔ̂j hěn paa sɔ̌ɔŋ too	I see two fish.
hùup	picture
khɔ̂j hěn hùup sɔ̌ɔŋ phɛ̄ɛn	I see two pictures.
ŋə́n, kîip	money, kip
khɔ̂j hěn ŋə́n sɔ̌ɔŋ kîip	I see two kips.

C-1

(paa, too)	
A. càw sỳy paa cák too	How many fish did you buy?
(sǎam)	
B. sǎam too.	Three.

C-2

(hěn)	
A. càw hěn njǎŋ?	What do you see?
(mǎa)	
B. khɔ̂j hěn mǎa.	I see some dogs.
(cák too)	
A. càw hěn mǎa cák too?	How many dogs do you see?
(sīī)	
B. sīī too	Four.

NOTES

1) When dàj is the Main Verb in a Sentence and is followed by NP (object), it has the meaning 'to get, earn, procure'.

khɔ̂j dàj pỳm 2 hǔa 'I procured 2 books.'

2) lìaŋ means 'to look after, raise'. It may occur only with animate NP as objects.

lìaŋ lùuk	'to raise' or 'to take care of children'
lìaŋ màa	'to raise horses'
lìaŋ sát	'to raise animals'

3) sāāŋ means 'artisan, skilled craftsman'. màj means 'wood'. sāāŋ màj is used to refer to a 'person who is skilled in working with wood', hence it includes carpenters, cabinet makers, coffin makers, etc.

NO APPLICATION PHASE

CYCLE 40

M-1

tóʔ	table
tóʔ nūaj nìi	This table
sát	animal
sát too nìi	This animal
pỳm	book
pỳm hǔa nìi	This book
hýan	house
hýan lǎŋ nìi	This house
lōt	car
lōt khán nìi	This car
náaj pháasǎa	interpreter
náaj pháasǎa phūu nìi	This interpreter
màa	horse
màa too nìi	This horse

M-2

tóʔnūaj nìi láakháa hâa hɔ̀ɔj kîip	This table costs 500 kips.
kɔ̀ɔŋ thāaj hùup nūaj nìi láakháa hâa hɔ̀ɔj kîip	This camera costs 500 kips.

fáj sǎaj an nìi láakháa hâa hɔ̀ɔj kîip	This flashlight costs 500 kips.
móoŋ nūaj nìi láakháa hâa hɔ̀ɔj kîip	This watch costs 500 kips.
pyyn kábɔ̂ɔk nìi láakháa hâa hɔ̀ɔj kîip	This gun costs 500 kips.
sŷa phy̌yn nìi láakháa hâa hɔ̀ɔj kîip	This shirt costs 500 kips.
mûak baj nìi láakháa hâa hɔ̀ɔj kîip	This hat costs 500 kips.

M-3

wɛ̄ɛ̄ntaa khūū nìi	this pair of glasses
wɛ̄ɛ̄ntaa khūū nìi láakháa thāwdaj?	How much does this pair of glasses cost?
thɔ̌ŋthàw khūū nìi	this pair of socks
thɔ̌ŋthàw khūū nìi láakháa thāwdaj?	How much does this pair of socks cost?
jaasûup sɔ́ɔŋ nìi	this pack of cigarettes
jaasûup sɔ́ɔŋ nìi láakháa thāwdaj?	How much does this pack of cigarettes cost?
káp fáj káp nìi	this box of matches
káp fáj káp nìi láakháa thāwdaj?	How much does this box of matches cost?

mìit duaŋ nìi	this knife
mìit duaŋ nìi láakháa thāwdaj?	How much does this knife cost?
kápaw nūaj nìi	this briefcase
kápaw nūaj nìi láakháa thāwdaj?	How much does this briefcase cost?

M-4

pỳm, hŭa	book (classifier)
pỳm nìi càw khǎaj hŭa lāʔ cák kîip	How many kips do these books cost apiece?
sìin, kiilóo	meat, kilo
sìin nìi càw khǎaj kiilóo lāʔ cák kîip	How many kips does this meat cost per kilo?
kápuu, too	crab (classifier)
kápuu nìi càw khǎaj too lāʔ cák kîip?	How many kips do these crabs cost each?
mâaklēn, nūaj	tomato (classifier)
mâaklēn nìi càw khǎaj nūaj lāʔ cák kîip	How many kips do these tomatoes cost apiece?
móoŋ, nūaj	watch, clock (classifier)
móoŋ nìi càw khǎaj nūaj lāʔ cák kîip?	How many kips do these watches cost apiece?

M-5

hâasíp kîip	fifty kips
hŭa lāʔ hâasíp kîip	Fifty kips each.
sǎam lɔ̀ɔj sáaw kîip	320 kips
kiilóo lāʔ sǎam lɔ̀ɔj sáaw kîip	320 kips per kilo.
sípcét sén	seventeen cents
too lāʔ sípcét sén	Seventeen cents each.
sáawpɛ̂ɛt kîip	twenty-eight kips
nūaj lāʔ sáawpɛ̂ɛt kîip	Twenty-eight kips apiece.

M-6

aw	take
əə, aw sǎa!	O.K., take it!
əə, paj sǎa!	O.K., go ahead!
aw hâj	give
əə, aw hâj láaw sǎa	O.K. give it to him!
əə, kin sǎa!	O.K. eat it!

C-1

(pyyn kábɔ̂ɔk nìi)	
A. pyyn kábɔ̂ɔk nìi láakháa thāwdaj?	How much is this gun?
(sípsɔ̌ɔŋ phán kîip)	
B. sípsɔ̌ɔŋ phán kîip	Twelve thousand kips.

C-2

A. an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n njǎŋ?	What's this?
(mìit)	
B. an nìi mɛ̄ɛ̄n mìit	It's a knife.
(mìit duaŋ nìi)	
A. mìit duaŋ nìi láakháa thāwdaj?	How much is this knife?
(sīī síp hâa kîip)	
B. sīī síp hâa kîip	Forty-five kips.

C-3

A. kāj nìi láakháa too lāʔ thāwdaj?	How much do these chickens cost apiece?
B. too lāʔ hâa hɔ̀ɔj sǎamsíp kîip	They are 530 kips each.

C-4

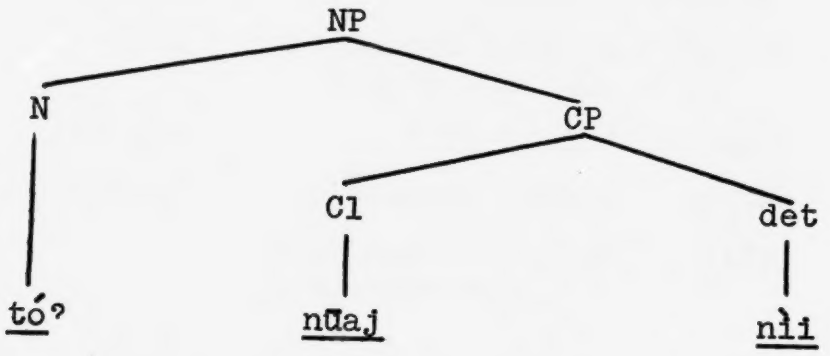
A. sìin nìi càw khǎaj kiilóo lāʔ cák kîip?	How many kips does this meat cost per kilo?
B. kiilóo lāʔ sɔ̌ɔŋ lɔ̀ɔj pɛ̂ɛt síp kîip	It's 280 kips per kilo.
A. sɔ̌ɔn lɔ̀ɔjcétsíp dàj bɔɔ?	Can you make it 270 kips?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj. aw sɔ̌ɔŋ lɔ̀ɔj cétsíp hâa kîip sǎa	No, I can't. Take it for 275 kips.

A. əə, aw hâj khɔ̂j sɔ̌ɔŋ kiilóo dɛɛ	O.K., please give me two kilos.

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫັດໃຊ້ສິ່ງຂອງຕ່າງໆກັບຈຳນວນເບິ່ງດູ! ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກໃຊ້ຄຳປະກອບນາມຊະນິດຕ່າງໆດີແລ້ວບໍ່? ຂະເຈົ້າຖາມລາຄາ ເວລາ ແລະກ່ຽວກັບຄົນຕ່າງໆໄດ້ຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງແລ້ວຫລືຍັງ? ຝຶກຫັດຫລາຍໆມັນຈຶ່ງວ່ອງ!

NOTES

1) The following NP contains a CP (classifier phrase):



The classifier phrase marks the count noun as definite singular:

tóʔ nūaj nìi	'this table'
tóʔ nìi	'these tables'

Some additional unit classifiers and their noun co-occurrents are given:

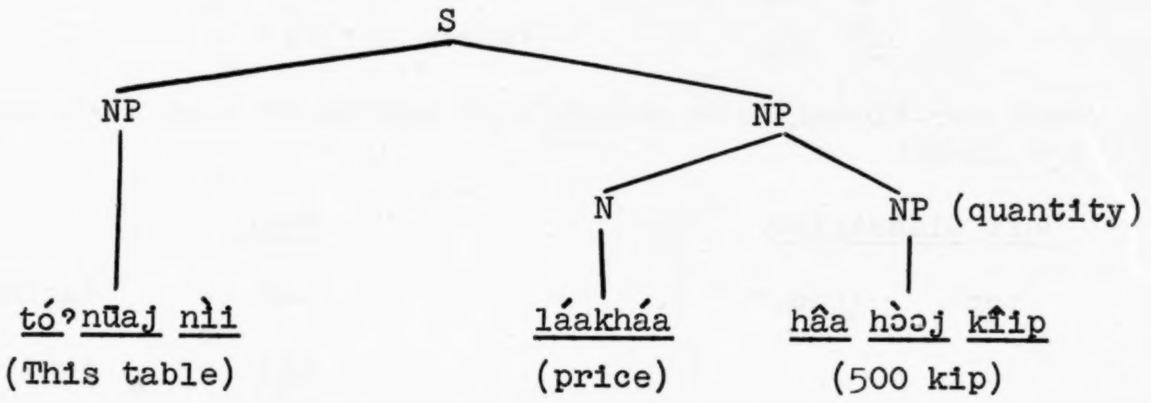
Unit Classifier		Noun	
too	'body'	sát	'animal'
		kāj	'chicken'
an	'object' (It can be used for most objects.)	fáj sǎaj	'flashlight'
baj	'sheet like'	mûak	'hat'

duaŋ	'something round'	mìit	'knife'
kábɔ̂ɔk	'barrel'	pyyn	'gun'
khūū	'objects in pairs'	wɛɛntaa	'eye glasses'
		thɔ̌ŋthàw	'socks'
lǎŋ		hýan	'house'

With mass nouns (sìin 'meat', nàam 'water, etc.) metric rather than unit classifiers are used:

Metric Classifier		Noun	
kiilóo	(either 1000 meters or 1000 grams)	sìin	'meat'
káp	'small box'	káp fáj	'matches'
sɔ́ɔŋ	'small package'	jaasûup	'cigarettes'
kîip	'kip (Laotian unit of currency)		

2) When asking or giving the price of something láakháa is used in a verbless sentence:



'This table costs 500 kips.'

In the question NP (quantity) is replaced by thāwdaj. mìit duaŋ nìi láakháa thāwdaj 'How much is this knife?'

APPLICATION

1) Fill in the blanks using English as a guide:

(a) kápuu ________________ 'these crabs'

(b) sìin ________________ 'this meat'

(c) wɛ̄ɛ̄ntaa ________________ 'this pair of glasses'

(d) màa ________________ 'this horse'

(e) kɔ̀ɔŋ thāāj hùup ________________ 'this camera'

(f) móoŋ ________________ 'these watches'

(g) ________________ nūaj nìi 'this briefcase, bag'

(h) mâaklēn ________________ 'these tomatoes'

(i) mâaklēn ________________ 'this tomato'

(j) kiilóo ________________ 320 kîip '320 kips per kilo'

(k) ________________ lāʔ 4000 kîip '4000 kip each (watches)'

(l) ________________ lāʔ 15 kîip '15 kip apiece (books)'

(m) kāj nìi ________________ cák kîip 'how much apiece?'

(n) baj lāʔ 30 ________________ '30 kip apiece'

(o) mìit duaŋ nìi ________________ 'What's the price of this knife?'

Answers: 1(a)nìi (b)nìi (c)khūū nìi (d)too nìi (e)nūaj nìi (f)nìi (g)kápaw (h)nìi (i)nūaj nìi (j)lāʔ (k)nūaj (l)hǔa (m)too lāʔ (n)kîip (o)láakháa thāwdaj?

CYCLE 41

M-1

sỳy njǎŋ bɔɔ?	buy anything
láaw sỳy njǎŋ bɔɔ?	Did he buy anything?
paj sǎj bɔɔ?	go anywhere
láaw paj sǎj bɔɔ?	Did he go anywhere?
paj nám phǎj bɔɔ?	going with anybody
láaw si paj nám phǎj bɔɔ?	Is he going with anybody?
phāk ju͞u hóoŋhɛ́ɛm daj bɔɔ?	to stay in any hotel
láaw si phāk ju͞u hóoŋhɛ́ɛm daj bɔɔ?	Is he going to stay in any hotel at all?

M-2

sỳy, láaw si sỳy kāj too nȳŋ	Yes, he will buy one chicken.
paj, láaw si paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ	Yes, he is going to see the doctor.
paj, láaw si paj nám àaj láaw	Yes, he is going with his older brother.
phāk, láaw si phāk ju͞u hóoŋhɛ́ɛm māj	Yes, he will stay in a new hotel at all?

M-3

mâak mūaŋ, nūaj	mango (classifier)
càw si sỳy mâak mūaŋ cák nūaj bɔɔ?	Are you going to buy any mangoes?
mâak kùaj, nūaj	banana (classifier)
càw si sỳy mâak kùaj cák nūaj bɔɔ?	Are you going to buy any bananas?
phák, māt	vegetable, bunch
càw si sỳy phák cák māt bɔɔ?	Are you going to buy any bunches of vegetables?
mâak phét, hɔ̄ɔ̄	hot pepper, pack
càw si sỳy mâak phét cák hɔ̄ɔ̄ bɔɔ?	Are you going to buy any packages of hot pepper ?
nàm paa, kèɛw	fish sauce, bottle
càw si sỳy nàm paa cák kèɛw bɔɔ?	Are you going to buy any bottles of fish sauce?

M-4

khɔ̂j si bɔ̄ɔ̄ sỳy pỳm cák hŭa	I'm not going to buy any books.
khɔ̂j si bɔ̄ɔ̄ sỳy kāj cák too	I'm not going to buy any chickens.
khɔ̂j si bɔ̄ɔ̄ sỳy mâak kùaj cák nūaj	I'm not going to buy any bananas.
khɔ̂j si bɔ̄ɔ̄ sɔ̆ɔn cák khón	I'm not going to teach anybody.

M-5

khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj sǎj	I didn't go anywhere.
sỳy	buy
khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ sỳy njǎŋ	I didn't buy anything.
nám	with
khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj nám phǎj	I didn't go with anybody.
míi, ŋə́n	have, money
khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi ŋə́n cák kîip	I have no kips. (I don't have any kips.)
hùucák	know
khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùucák cák khón	I do not know anybody. (in that group).
khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùucák phūū daj	I don't know anybody at all.

C-1

A. càw si sỳy njǎŋ bɔɔ?	Will you buy anything?
B. sỳy, khɔ̂j si sỳy pỳm sɔ̌ɔŋ hǔa	Yes, I will buy two books.

C-2

A. càw si sỳy paa cák too bɔɔ?	Are you going to buy any fish?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂j si bɔ̄ɔ̄ sỳy paa cák too.	No, I'm not going to buy any fish.

C-3

A. càw si paj nám phǎj bɔɔ?	Are you going with anybody?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂j si bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj nám phǎj?	No, I'm not going with anybody.

ລອງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນສົມມຸດແຕ່ງກັນໄປຊື້ຂອງກິນ ຫຼືໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຖາມກັນເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ໝູ່ໃດຈະໄປໃສບໍ່?
ເຮັດຫຍັງບໍ່? ຫຼືວ່າຈະເອົາຈັກໂຕບໍ່? ຈັກແຜ່ນບໍ່? ແລະຕໍ່ໆໄປ. ສຳຄັນກໍຄືໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເວົ້າຈົນຄ່ອງ.

NOTES

1) mâak means 'fruit of a tree or plant' and is the first element in many Noun Compounds referring to fruits and vegetables, mâak mūaŋ 'mango', mâak kwàaj 'banana', mâak kìaŋ 'orange', mâak phét 'hot peppers'. The general word for fruit is mâakmàj; however, mâak does occur with this meaning in

tônmàaj nìi bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen mâak	'This tree has no fruit on it'.

2) māt means literally 'to tie up'. It is used to mean 'bunch, or bundle' of vegetables, etc.

3) hɔ̄ɔ̄ 'to wrap up' is used to refer to 'packages, packets, etc.' or things that are wrapped in paper. It does not refer to boxes.

4) kὲεw means 'glass as a material'. It is also used to refer to 'glass bottles'. The word for a 'glass to drink out of' is cɔ̂ɔk . cɔ̂ɔk kὲεw is a 'glass drinking glass'.

5) njǎŋ, sǎj, and phǎj usually function as question words in sentences:

càw paj sǎj?	'Where are you going?'
láaw si khǎaj njǎŋ?	'What is he going to sell?'
càw si dəənthaáŋ nám phǎj?	'Who are you going to travel with?'

But in negative sentences or in questions with bɔ̄ɔ̄, they function as indefinite nouns:

láaw sỳy njǎŋ bɔɔ?	'Did he buy anything?'
láaw paj sǎj bɔɔ?	'Did he go anywhere?'
càw bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj nám phǎj bɔɔ?	'You didn't go with anybody?'

cák 'How many?' functions as a question word in

càw míi pỳm cák hǔa?	'How many books do you have?'

but in the negative sentence khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ mii cák hǔa 'I don't have a single one (book)', cák means 'any' or 'a single one'. daj 'any' has a similar meaning in the affirmative question.

láaw si phāk jūū hóoŋhɛ́ɛm daj bɔɔ?	'Is he going to stay in any hotel at all?'
bɔ̄ɔ̄, láaw si bɔ̄ɔ̄ phāk jūū hóoŋhɛ́ɛm daj	'No, he isn't going to stay in any hotel.'

cák and daj are both used in the negative for emphasis. In cases where either cák and/or daj can be used daj is usually more general in meaning. Compare:

khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùucák cák khón	'I don't know anybody in this group.'
khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùucák phūū daj	'I don't know anybody in this town.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentence into Lao: (Write the answers on a separate piece of paper or say them aloud and check your answers).

   (a) What do you see? I don't see anything.

   (b) Where did your friend go? He didn't go anywhere.

   (c) Do you have any money? No, I don't have a single kip.

   (d) Do you know anybody in Vientiane? No, I don't know a soul there.

Answers: 1(a)càw hěn njǎŋ? khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ hěn njǎŋ (b)phȳan càw paj sǎj? láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj sǎj (c)càw míi ŋən bɔɔ? bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi ŋə́n cák kîip (d)càw hùucák phūū daj jūū wíaŋcan bɔɔ? bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùucák phūū daj jūū hân cák khón

CYCLE 42

M-1

hùucák káp láaw	to know her
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ jâak hùucák káp láaw	Everybody wants to know her.
paj bə̄ŋ	to go see
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ jâak paj bə̄ŋ	Everybody wants to go see.
síim	to taste
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ jâak síim	Everybody wants to taste.
sỳy	to buy
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ jâak sỳy	Everybody wants to buy.
khīī	to ride
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ jâak khīī	Everybody wants to ride.
āān	to read
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ jâak āān	Everybody wants to read.

M-2

láaw, ŋáam	she, pretty
láaw ŋáam lǎaj	She is very pretty.
síinée, mūan	the film, good
síinée mūan lǎaj	The film is very good. (enjoyable)
aahǎan, sɛ̀ɛp	the food, delicious
aahǎan sɛ̀ɛp lǎaj	The food is very delicious.

M-2

khɔ̆ɔŋ, thŷyk	things, cheap
khɔ̆ɔŋ thŷyk lǎaj	Things are very cheap.
lɔ̄t, māj	the car, new
lɔ̄t māj lǎaj	The car is very new.
pỳm nìi, nâa sɔ̆ncaj	this book, interesting
pỳm nìi nâa sɔ̆ncaj lǎaj	This book is very interesting.

C-1

(ŋáam)	(pretty)
A. láaw ŋáam bɔɔ?	Is she pretty?
(hùucák káp láaw)	(to know her)
B. oo, láaw ŋáam lǎaj	Oh yes, she is very pretty.
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ jâak hùucák káp láaw	Everybody wants to know her.

C-2

(hùucák káp láaw)	(to know her)
A. pen njǎŋ phǎj phǎj kɔɔ cȳŋ jâak hùucák káp láaw.	Why does everybody want to know her?
(hùucák káp láaw, ŋáam)	(to know her, pretty)
B. phǎj phǎj kɔɔ jâak hùucák káp láaw phɔ̄ʔwāā láaw ŋáam lǎaj	Everybody wants to know her because she is very pretty.

NOTES

1) Doubling of phǎj 'who, anyone' gives it the general and all inclusive meaning 'everybody'. It is normally followed by kɔɔ, which in this case can not be translated.

2) jâak 'want, would like' is normally followed by VP: láaw jâak paj bə̄ŋ síinée 'He wants to go to a movie.' jâak should not be confused with māk 'like to': láaw māk paj bə̄ŋ síinée 'He likes to go to movies.'

3) lǎaj 'very' is an intensifier when it occurs after stative verbs like ŋáam 'pretty', etc.

4) mɯ̄an 'to be enjoyable, to be fun' may have only inanimate NP or VP as Subject:

pen thāhǎan mɯ̄an bɔɔ?	'Is it fun being a soldier?'
síinée mɯ̄an bɔɔ?	'Did you enjoy the movie?'

5) The construction pen njǎŋ... cɤ̄ŋ 'Why (how is it that...)' occurs initially in the sentence:

pen njǎŋ láaw cɤ̄ŋ jâak paj pácam jɯ̄ɯ páthèet láaw?	'Why (how is it that...) does he want to be stationed in Laos?'

6) nâasǒncaj 'interesting' functions like a stative verb, but it is a compound made up of nâa 'to be able' or 'ing' + sóncaj 'to be interested in'. nâa may occur before other verbs with a similar function: nâakin 'look good to eat', nâajɯ̄ɯ 'nice to live in', etc.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) ____________________ kɔɔ hùu lɛ̀ɛw
(Everybody already knows that.)

(b) ____________________ láaw ________ bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj bə̄ŋ síinée
(Why didn't he go to the movies?)

(c) mía láaw __________ ŋáam __________
(His wife isn't very pretty.)

(d) hían pháasǎa ______________________ bɔɔ?
(Is studying a language fun?)

(e) lōt càw __________ bɔɔ?
(Is your car new?)

(f) aahǎan láaw ____________________ bɔɔ?
(Is Lao food delicious?)

(g) láaw ____________________ lǎaj bɔɔ?
(Is she very short in height?)

(h) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ jâak ____________________
(I don't want to be fat.)

(i) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ ____________________ khón cɔ̄ɔ̄j
(I don't like skinny people.)

(j) jūū bàan nɔ̀ɔk ________________________
(It's no fun living out in the provinces.)

(k) ______________ càw __________ hían pháasǎa láaw ?
(How do you happen to be studying Lao?)

(l) ____________________________ mūan lǎaj
(Flying (going by plane) is a lot of fun.)

(m) ____________________________ bɔ̄ɔ̄ māk kháp lot
(Nobody likes to drive a car.)

(n) pỳm hǔa nàn ____________________________
(That book isn't very interesting.)

Answers: (a)phǎj phǎj kɔɔ (b)pen njǎŋ... cȳŋ (c)bɔ̄ɔ̄... paandaj (d)mūan (e)māj (f)sɛ̀ɛp (g)tām (h)tùj (i)māk (j)bɔ̄ɔ̄ mūan (k)pen njǎŋ... cȳŋ (l)paj nám hýabin (m)phǎj phǎj kɔɔ (n)bɔ̄ɔ̄ nâasɔ̌ncaj paandaj

CYCLE 43

M-1

hěn nâa láaw	to see her face
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ bɔɔ jâak hěn nâa láaw	No one wants to see her face.
pen phȳan láaw	to be his friend
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ jâak pen phȳan láaw	No one wants to be his friend.
njûŋkiaw	to be concerned
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ jâak njûŋkiaw	No one wants to be concerned.
jūū	to live (in it)
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ jâak jūū	No one wants to live (in it)
thíaw tháaŋ sên nìi	to take this road
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ jâak thíaw tháaŋ sên nìi	No one wants to take this road.
sàj hɔ̂ɔŋ nìi	to use this room
phǎj phǎj kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ jâak sàj hɔ̂ɔŋ nìi	No one wants to use this room.

M-2

bɔ̄ɔ súphàap	impolite
láaw bɔ̄ɔ súphàap lǎaj	He is very impolite.
khón khîi thīi	stingy person
láaw pen khón khîi thīi lǎaj	He is a very stingy person.
bɔ̄ɔ sǎmkhán paandaj	not so important
lỳaŋ nìi bɔ̄ɔ sǎmkhán paandaj	This matter is not so importan
nɔ̀ɔj	small
hýan lǎŋ nìi nɔ̀ɔj lǎaj	This house is very small.
kandaan	dangerous
tháaŋ sên nìi kandaan lǎaj	This road is very dangerous.

C-1

(bɔ̄ɔ súphàap)	(impolite)
A. láaw bɔ̄ɔ súphàap, mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	He is impolite, isn't he?
(hěn nâa láaw)	(to see his face)
B. mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, láaw bɔ̄ɔ súphàap lǎaj phǎj phǎj kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ jâak hěn nâa láaw.	Yes, he is very impolite. No one wants to see his face.

C-2

(ĵâak hěn nâa láaw)	(want to see his face)
A. pen nĵăŋ phăĵ phăĵ kɔɔ cỹŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ ĵâak hěn nâa láaw?	Why doesn't anybody want to see his face?
(bɔ̄ɔ̄ súphàap) láaw, bɔ̄ɔ̄ súphàap)	(impolite)
B. phăĵ phăĵ kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ ĵâak hěn nâa láaw phɔ̄waa̅ láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ súphàap lăaĵ.	No one wants to see his face because he is so impolite.

ມາໃນຕອນນີ້ອາດຈະເປັນໂອກາດດີສຳລັບແຕ່ງເຣື່ອງປະກອບ. ຈົ່ງຢ່າລືມວ່າທຸກໆເຣື່ອງທີ່ແຕ່ງຂຶ້ນໃໝ່ຈະຕ້ອງມີຄຳເວົ້າທີ່ເລືອກເຟັ້ນຂຶ້ນສເມີ ແລະຄ່ອຍໆຍາວອອກຕາມຄວາມສາມາດຂອງນັກຮຽນ. ວິທີສອນເຣື່ອງປະກອບທີ່ໄດ້ພົບຢ່າງນີ້ກໍດີ ບໍ່ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນອ່ານເຣື່ອງທີ່ເຮົາແຕ່ງຂຶ້ນ ແຕ່ໃຫ້ເຮັດດັ່ງນີ້:

1. ທ່ານເອງອ່ານໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຟັງເທື່ອລະນ້ອຍ ແລະຖາມນັກຮຽນຢູ່ສເມີວ່າຂະເຈົ້າເຂົ້າໃຈຫລືບໍ່. ຖ້າຂະເຈົ້າບໍ່ເຂົ້າໃຈກໍ່ໃຫ້ຢຸດອ່ານ ແລ້ວອະທິບາຍຈົນຂະເຈົ້າເຂົ້າໃຈ.
2. ໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າເວົ້າແຕ່ລະປໂຍກຕາມທ່ານຈົນລຽນ.
3. ຖາມຄຳຖາມກ່ຽວກັບເຣື່ອງ ແລະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຕອບດ້ວຍຄວາມແນ່ໃຈ.
4. ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນສຣຸບເຣື່ອງສູ່ທ່ານຟັງ.

CYCLE 44

M-1

ŋáam kwāa	prettier than
hýan lǎŋ nìi ŋáam kwāā lǎŋ nàn	This house is prettier than that one.
kwàaŋ kwāā	more spacious than
hýan lǎŋ nìi kwàaŋ kwāā lǎŋ nàn	This house is more spacious than that one.
khèɛp kwāā	less space than
hýan lǎŋ nìi khèɛp kwāā lǎŋ nàn	This house has less space than that one.
thŷyk kwāā	cheaper than
hýan lǎŋ nìi thŷyk kwāā lǎŋ nàn	This house is cheaper than that one.
phéɛŋ kwāā	more expensive than
hýan lǎŋ nìi phéɛŋ kwāā lǎŋ nàn	This house is more expensive than that one.
sǔuŋ kwāā	higher than
hýan lǎŋ nìi sǔuŋ kwāā lǎŋ nàn	This house is higher than that one.

M-2

lɛ̄ɛ̄n wáj	run fast
lōt khán nìi lɛ̄ɛ̄n wáj thāw kan káp khán nàn	This car runs as fast as that one.
láakháa	price
lōt kán nìi láakháa thāw kan káp khán nàn	This car has the same price as that one.
njāj thɔ̄ɔ̄	as big as
lōt khán nìi njāj thɔ̄ɔ̄ kan káp khán nàn	This car is as big as that one.
māj thāw	as new as
lōt khán nìi māj thāw kan káp khán nàn	This car is as new as that one.

C-1

(njāj kwāā)	(bigger than)
A. hýan lǎŋ nìi njāj kwāā lǎŋ nàn mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	This house is bigger than that one, isn't it?
(njāj thɔ̄ɔ̄)	(as big as)
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n, hýan lǎŋ nìi njāj thɔ̄ɔ̄ kan káp lǎŋ nàn	No, this house is as (big) as that one.

C-2

(lɛɛn wáj)	(run fast)
A. lōt khán nìi lɛɛn wáj thāw kan káp khán nàn, mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	This car runs as fast as that one, doesn't it?
(lɛɛn wáj kwāa)	(run faster than)
B. bɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛn, lōt khán nìi lɛɛn wáj kwāa khán nàn	No, this one runs faster than that one.

ຈົງທຽບຂນາດ ຄຸນພາບ ແລະຄຸນຄ່າຂອງສິ່ງຂອງທີ່ທຸກຄົນເຫັນຢູ່ໃນຫ້ອງນັ້ນເບິ່ງດູ!(ໃຫຍ່ ນ້ອຍ ດີ ຖືກ) ບັດນີ້ ຫັນໄປທຽບການກະທຳຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ! (ເຮັດວຽກ ແລ່ນ ຂັບຣົດ....). ໃຊ້ຄຳເກົ່າໃຫ້ຫມົດ.

NOTES

1) Two things may be equal or unequal as far as some quality (goodness, etc.) is concerned; consequently, there are in language, constructions that may be labeled 'Comparison of Equality' and 'Comparison of Inequality'.

(a) The Comparison of Inequality construction in Lao is:

NP^1	+	V_s	+	kwāa	+	NP^2
hýan lǎŋ nìi		ŋáam		kwāa		lǎŋ nàn
(this house		pretty		more		that one)

'This house is prettier than that one.'

(b) The Comparison of Equality construction is:

NP^1 + V_s + thāw kan káp + NP^2

lōt khán nìi	kāw	thāw kan káp	khán nàn
(This car	old	equal to	that one.)

'This car is as old as that one'.

When the stative verb refers to 'size', thɔ̄ɔ may replace thāw in construction like the one above:

lōt khán nìi njāj thɔ̄ɔ kan káp khán nàn	'This car is as big as that one.'

The stative verb may be replaced by V + Adverb (lɛ̄ɛn wáj) in either of the constructions above:

lōt khán nìi lɛ̄ɛn wáj kwāā khán nàn	'This car runs faster than that one.'
lōt khán nìi lɛ̄ɛn wáj thāwkan káp khán nàn	'This car runs as fast as that one.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw ____________________ càw bɔɔ?
(Is she taller than you?)

(b) mía càw ____________________ mía láaw
(Your wife's as pretty as his.)

(c) láaw njāaŋ ____________________ càw
(He walks faster than you do.)

(d) lỳaŋ nìi ______________________ lỳaŋ nàn
(This story is more interesting than that one.)

(e) láaw pen khón ______________________ càw
(He's as intelligent a person as you are.)

(f) láaw kháp lōt ______________________ phȳan càw
(He drives faster than your friend.)

(g) khɔ̂j míi ŋə́n ______________________ càw
(I have more money than you.)

(h) phǎj phǎj kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ ______________________ láaw
(Nobody is as evil (bad as he is.)

(i) pỳm hǔa nìi ______________________ hǔa nàn
(This book is as cheap as that one.)

(j) mâak mūaŋ nūaj nìi ______________________ nūaj nàn
(This mango is as big as that one.)

(k) móoŋ nūaj nìi ______________________ nūaj nàn
(This watch is more expensive than that one.)

(l) hâasíp kîip! ______________________
(50 kip. That's very expensive.)

(m) mỳy nìi làaw khǎaj ______________________ mỳy wáan nìi
(He is selling it cheaper today than yesterday.)

(n) ______________________ nàn
(It's much more delicious than that.)

Answers. (a)sǔuŋ kwāā (b)ŋáam thāw kan káp (c)wáj kwāā (d)nâa sǒncaj kwāā (e)sálâat thāw kan káp (f)wáj kwāā (g)lǎaj kwāā (h)sūa thāw kan káp (i)láakháa thāw kan káp (or) thŷyk thāw kan káp (j)njāj thɔ̄ɔ̄ kan káp (k)phɛ́ɛŋ kwāā (l)phɛ́ɛŋ lǎaj (m)thŷyk kwāā (n)sɛ̀ɛp lǎaj kwāā

CYCLE 45

M-1

ŋáam kwāā mūū	the prettiest
náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāā njíŋ phūūdaj ŋáam kwāā mūū?	Which of these three women do you think is the prettiest?
nâahāk kwāā mūū	the loveliest
náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāā njíŋ phūūdaj nâahāk kwāā mūū?	Which of these three women do you think is the loveliest?
khîihàaj kwāā mūū	the ugliest
náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāā njíŋ phūūdaj khîihàaj kwāā mūū?	Which of these three women do you think is the ugliest?
hìaphòoj kwāā mūū	the best-mannered
náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāā njíŋ phūūdaj hìaphòoj kwāā mūū?	Which of these three women do you think is the best-mannered?
khîi aaj kwāā mūū	the most bashful
náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāā njíŋ phūūdaj khîi aaj kwāā mūū?	Which of these three women do you think is the most bashful?

M-2

ŋáam thāw kan	equally pretty
njíŋ sǎam khón nìi ŋáam thāw kan	These three women are equally pretty.
kēŋ thāw kan	equally smart
njíŋ sǎam khón nìi kēŋ thāw kan	These three women are equally smart.
dii thāw kan	equally nice
njíŋ sǎam khón nìi dii thāw kan	These three women are equally nice.
dàjhāp kaan sýksǎa thāw kan	equally educated
njíŋ sǎam khón nìi dàjhāp kaan sýksǎa thāw kan	These three women have equal education.
míi aanjūʔthāw kan	the same age
njíŋ sǎam khón nìi míi aanjūʔ thāw kan	These three women are the same age.
míi wìak lǎaj thāw kan	have equal amount of work
njíŋ sǎam khón nìi míi wìak lǎaj thāw kan	These three women have equal amount of work.
míi ŋə́ndyan thāw kan	have equal salary
njíŋ sǎam khón nìi míi ŋə́ndyan thāw kan	These three women have equal salaries.

C-1

(ŋáam kwāā mūū)	(the prettiest)
A. náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāā njíŋ phūūdaj ŋáam kwāā mūū	Of these three women who do you think is the prettiest?
(ŋáam thāw kan)	(equally pretty)
B. khôj khīt wāā njíŋ sǎam khón nìi ŋáam thāw kan	I think these three women are equally pretty.

C-2

(ŋáam kwāā mūū)	(the prettiest)
A. náj sǎam khón nàn míi njíŋ phūū nȳŋ ŋáam kwāā mūū, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	Of these three women there's one who is the prettiest, don't you think?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n, khôj khīt wāā khácàw ŋáam thāw kan	No, I think they are equally pretty.

NOTES

1) The construction for Comparison of Inequality when more than two objects are being compared is:

NP (Number of Objects) +	NP (Subject) +	V_s	kwāā	+ mūū
náj sǎam khón nìi	njíŋ phūūdaj	ŋáam	kwāā	mūū
(of these 3 persons	which woman	pretty	more	group)

'Which of these three women is the prettiest?'

mūū 'group' always occurs in this construction. The classifier phūū is used before daj because it is the classifier for njíŋ. Observe the following construction with a different classifier:

náj sǎam nūaj nìi mâak kùaj nūaj daj sɛ̀ɛp kwāā mūū

'Which of these three bananas is the most delicious?'

2) The construction of Comparison of Equality when three or more objects are being compared is:

NP (Subject) + V_s + thāw kan

njíŋ sǎam khóon nìi sǔuŋ thāw kan

'These three women are equally tall.'

thāw kan 'equal, equally' may also occur after NP:

njíŋ sǎam khón nìi míi aanjūʔ thāw kan

(These three women have age equal)

'These three women are the same age.'

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences:

(a) náj sīī khón nìi lùuk phūūdaj nâahāk ____________

(Which of the four children is the most loveable?)

(b) náj sǎam khón nìi càw khīt wāā njíŋ phūūdaj __________

(Which of these three women do you think is the most bashful?)

(c) pỳm hók hǔa nìi ________________________

(These six books are priced the same.)

(d) phu͞usáaj hâa khón nìi míi ŋən ______________________
(These **five** boys have equal amounts of money.)

(e) sa͞aŋ màj **sǒɔŋ** khón nìi hēt wìak ______________________
(These two carpenters work equally skillfully.)

(f) náj 3 khón nîi thāhǎan phu͞udaj kháp lǒt ______________
(Which of these three soldiers drives the fastest?)

(g) náj 3 khón nìi nākhían phu͞udaj ______________________
(Which of these three students is the most studious?)

(h) náj 3 too nìi kāj toodaj ______________________
(Which is the biggest of these three chickens?)

(i) kèɛw sǎam nūaj nàn míi ______________________
(Those three bottles have equal amounts of water in them.)

(j) náj 3 khón nàn sa͞aŋ phu͞udaj pīan jaaŋ dàj ____________
(Of those three artisans which can change a tire the fastest?)

Answers: (a)kwa͞a mu͞u (b)khîiaaj kwa͞a mu͞u (c)láakháa thāw kan
(d)lǎaj thāw kan (e)kēŋ thāw kan (f)wáj kwa͞a mu͞u
(g)dúʔmān kwa͞a mu͞u (h)njāj kwa͞a mu͞u (i)nàm thāw kan
(j)wáj kwa͞a mu͞u

CYCLE 46

M-1

pỳm, hǔa	book, (classifier)
diawnìi khɔ̂j njáŋ lɨ̌a pỳm jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ hǔa	Now I have two books left.
ŋə́n, kîip	money, kip
diawnìi khɔ̂j njáŋ lɨ̌a ŋə́n jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ kîip	Now I have two kips left.
khâw, thɔ̌ŋ	rice, bag
diawnìi khɔ̂j njáŋ lɨ̌a khâw jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ thɔ̌ŋ	Now I have two bags of rice left.
paa, too	fish, (classifier)
diawnìi khɔ̂j njáŋ lɨ̌a paa jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ too	Now I have two fish left.
lùukpyyn, lùuk	bullet, (classifier)
diawnìi khɔ̂j njáŋ lɨ̌a lùukpyyn jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ lùuk	Now I have two bullets left.
lābə̂ət mýy, lùuk	hand grenade, (classifier)
diawnìi khɔ̂j njáŋ lɨ̌a lābə̂ət mýy jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ lùuk	Now I have two hand grenades left.
lâw bia, kɛ̀ɛw	beer, bottle
diawnìi khɔ̂j njáŋ lɨ̌a lâw bia jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ kɛ̀ɛw	Now I have two bottles of beer left.

pàaj, khámkhŭan, phɛ̄ɛn	sign, slogan, sheet (classifier)
diawnìi khɔ̂j njáŋ ly̌a pàaj khámkhŭan jūu sɔ̌ɔŋ phɛ̄ɛn	Now I have two slogan signs left.

M-2

ŋə́n, dooláa	money, dollar
càw njáŋ ly̌a ŋə́n jūu cák dooláa?	How many dollars do you have left?
thɔ̌ŋ, nūaj	sack,(classifier)
càw njáŋ ly̌a thɔ̌ŋ jūu cák nūaj?	How many sacks do you have left?
mâak kùaj, nūaj	banana,(classifier)
càw njáŋ ly̌a mâak kùaj jūu cák nūaj?	How many bananas do you have left?
bótkhwáam, lỳaŋ	article, story
càw njáŋ ly̌a bótkhwáam jūu cák lỳaŋ?	How many articles (in a newspaper) do you have left?
sámáasīk, khón	member, person
càw njáŋ ly̌a sámáasīk jūu cák khón?	How many members do you have left?
khón, khɔ̀ɔpkhúa	people, family
càw njáŋ ly̌a khón jūu cák khɔ̀ɔpkhúa?	How many families do you have left?

phâa sēt nâa, phy̌yn	towel (classifier)
càw njáŋ ly̌a phâa sēt nâa jūū cák phy̌yn	How many towels do you have left?
pɛɛŋ, thǔu khɛ̂ɛw, an	brush, brush teeth (classifier)
càw njáŋ ly̌a pɛɛŋ thǔu khɛ̂ɛw jūū cák an	How many tooth brushes do you have left?

C-1

(khâw) (sɔ̌ɔŋ thǒŋ)	(rice, two sacks)
A. diawnìi khácàw njáŋ ly̌a khâw jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ thǒŋ, mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	Now they have two sacks of rice left, isn't that right?
(khâw)	(rice)
B. mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, diawnìi khácàw njáŋ ly̌a jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ thǒŋ	Yes, that's right, now they have two sacks (of rice) left.

C-2

(mâak kùaj)	(bananas)
A. càw njáŋ ly̌a mâak kùaj jūū cák nūaj?	How many bananas do you have left?
(hâa)	(five)
B. khɔ̂j njáŋ ly̌a mâak kùaj jūū hâa nūaj	I have five bananas left.

C-3

(sɔ̌ɔŋ phy̌yn)	(two objects of cloth)
A. càw njáŋ ly̌a njǎŋ jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ phy̌yn?	Of what objects of cloth do you have two left?
(phâasētnâa)	(towels)
A. khɔ̂j njáŋ ly̌a phâasētnâa jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ phy̌yn?	I have two towels left.

ທ່ານລອງພານັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານໄລ່ເລກກັນເບິ່ງດູ! ຈົ່ງຕັ້ງເລກໂຈດອັນ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເປັນຜູ້ໄລ່ແລ້ວໃຫ້ຄຳຕອບແກ່ທ່ານເບິ່ງດູ! ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ: "ມື້ວານນີ້ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ຊື້ໝາກກ້ວຍ 25 ໜ່ວຍໆລະ 5 ກີບ. ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ກິນໝາກກ້ວຍຈັກໜ່ວຍຂ້ອຍກໍ່ບໍ່ຈື່; ຂ້ອຍຈື່ໄດ້ວ່າກ່ອນຊື້ໝາກກ້ວຍຂ້ອຍມີເງິນຢູ່ 260 ກີບ. ມື້ແລງວານນີ້ຂ້ອຍຍັງເຫຼືອໝາກກ້ວຍຢູ່ 21 ໜ່ວຍ. ຖາມວ່າ 1. ມື້ວານນີ້ຂ້ອຍກິນໝາກກ້ວຍຈັກໜ່ວຍ? 2. ດຽວນີ້ຂ້ອຍຍັງເຫຼືອເງິນຢູ່ຈັກກີບ? 3. ຂ້ອຍຊື້ໝາກກ້ວຍໄດ້ອີກຈັກໜ່ວຍ?"

ໝາຍເຫດ: ສິ່ງທີ່ຈະກ່າວຕໍ່ໄປນີ້ ແມ່ນວຽກທີ່ທ່ານຈະຕ້ອງພະຍາຍາມເຮັດໃຫ້ບັນລຸຜົນ:

1. ການອອກສຽງ. ນັກຮຽນຈະຕ້ອງເວົ້າພາສາລາວໃຫ້ໃກ້ສຳນຽງລາວທີ່ສຸດເທົ່າທີ່ຈະເວົ້າໄດ້.
2. ຫຼັກການເວົ້າ. ແມ່ນການເວົ້າໃຫ້ຖືກຕາມຫຼັກ ບໍ່ແມ່ນຈັບໜ້າໃສ່ຫຼັງ ຈັບຫຼັງໃສ່ໜ້າ.
3. ຄຳສັບ. ນັກຮຽນຈະຕ້ອງໃຊ້ຄຳໃຫ້ຖືກຕ້ອງແລະແມ່ນຢຳ; ໃຊ້ຄຳທີ່ກົງກັບຄວາມໝາຍ.
4. ຄວາມຄ່ອງໄວ. ນັກຮຽນຈະຕ້ອງສາມາດເວົ້າໄດ້ດ້ວຍຄວາມໄວທັມມະດາ ແລະສມ່ຳສເມີ.
5. ຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈ. ນີ້ໝາຍເຖິງຄວາມສາມາດເຂົ້າໃຈເມື່ອເວລາຟັງຄົນອື່ນເວົ້າ.

CYCLE 47

M-1

khâw	rice
khâw háw mót lὲεw	Our rice is all gone.
mâak phét	pepper
mâak phét háw mót lὲεw	Our (green, red) pepper is all gone.
nàm paa	fish sauce
nàm paa háw mót lὲεw	Our fish sauce is all gone.
kya	salt
kya háw mót lὲεw	Our salt is all gone.
nàmtaan	sugar
nàmtaan háw mót lὲεw	Our sugar is all gone.
phIktháj	black pepper
phIktháj háw mót lὲεw	Our black pepper is all gone.
khâwcII	bread
khâwcII háw mót lὲεw	Our bread is all gone.
sìin	meat
sìin háw mót lὲεw	Our meat is all gone.

M-2

khâw	rice
khâw háw kàj si mót lὲεw	Our rice is almost gone.
nàmmán bəə	butter
nàmmán bəə háw kàj si mót lὲεw	Our butter is almost gone.
nàmmán mʉʉ	lard
nàmmán mʉʉ háw kàj si mót lὲεw	Our lard is almost gone.
nàmmán sálát	salad dressing
nàmmán sálát háw kàj si mót lὲεw	Our salad dressing is almost gone.
phákbʉa	onion
phákbʉa háw kàj si mót lὲεw	Our onions are almost gone.
phákthíam	garlic
phákthíam háw kàj si mót lὲεw	Our garlic is almost gone.
mâak tεεŋ	cucumbers
mâak tεεŋ háw kàj si mót lὲεw	Our cucumbers are almost gone.
mâak thʉa	beans
mâak thʉa háw kàj si mót lὲεw	Our beans are almost gone.

M-3

mót lɛ̀ɛw	All gone.
kàj si mót lɛ̀ɛw	Almost all gone.

M-4

nàmpaa	fish sauce
nàmpaa háw njáŋ jūū	We still have fish sauce.
kya	salt
kya háw njáŋ jūū	We still have salt.
phīktháj	black pepper
phīktháj háw njáŋ jūū	We still have black pepper.
phákbūa	onions
phákbūa háw njáŋ jūū	We still have onions.
khâwcīī	bread
khâwcīī háw njáŋ jūū	We still have bread.
sìin ŋúa	beef
sìin ŋúa háw njáŋ jūū	We still have beef.
mâakmàj	fruit
mâakmàj háw njáŋ jūū	We still have fruit.

C-1

(màakphét)	(pepper)
A. màakphét háw mót lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	Are we out of pepper?
B. əə, mót lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, we are out of it.

C-2

(nàmmán sálát)	(salad dressing)
A. nàmmán sálát háw kàj si mót lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	Are we nearly out of salad dressing ?
B. əə, kàj si mót lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, we are almost out of it.

C-3

(mâakphét)	(pepper)
A. mâakphét háw mót lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	Are we out of pepper?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, mâakphét háw njáŋ jūū	No, we still have some.

ຖາມຫາສິ່ງຂອງຕ່າງໆທີ່ແຕ່ລະຄົນມີຢູ່ເບິ່ງດູ! ຂະເຈົ້າຍັງມີຢູ່ບໍ່ຫລືໃຊ້ຫມົດແລ້ວ? ຍັງບໍ່ຫມົດ, ຍັງເຫລືອຢູ່ບໍ່ ຫລື ຫມົດແລ້ວ. ໃກ້ສິຫມົດແລ້ວບໍ່ ຫລືວ່າຍັງຫລາຍຢູ່?

NOTES

1) mót means 'to be used up'. It is used to indicate that the supply of something is exhausted: nàmpaa mót lɛ̀ɛw 'The fish sauce is all gone.'

When kàj si precedes mót, it indicates that the supply is nearly used up.

The manner in which something was consumed can be indicated by puting a verb before mót : kin mót 'eaten up', etc.

2) lỹa is used to indicate that something remains from an amount which was originally set aside for some special purpose. Observe the use of lỹa in **sentences:**

khɔ̂j nján lỹa pỳm jūū sɔ̌ɔŋ hǔa (to me still remains book 2)	'I have two books left.' (of the ones I brought back from Germany.)

The classifier phrase indicating the amount is not immediately next to its NP but follows jūū.

3) nján ... jūū is used to indicate that a certain situation still continues to exist. It may be used without lỹa but with some difference in meaning. Compare:

mâak kwùaj nján jūū	'We still have bananas.' (There's no need to buy any more).
mâak kwùaj nján lỹa jūū	'We still have bananas (left over from making a banana cake).'

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks:

(a) càw njáŋ ______________ sámásɪk ______________ cák khón
(How many members do you have left?)

(b) nàmmán bəə háw ____________________ mót lὲεw
(Our butter is almost gone.)

(c) ________________________ háw mót lὲεw
(Our garlic is all gone.)

(d) kya háw ______________________________
(We still have salt.)

(e) mâakphét háw mót lὲεw _______________
(Are we out of pepper?)

(f) _____________________ háw njáŋ jūū
(We still have beef.)

(g) əə, _________________________________
(We're out of it.)

(h) khɔ̂j njáŋ lỹa paa jūū _______________
(I have two fish left.)

(i) khácàw __________ aahǎan __________ lὲεw
(They ate up the food.)

(j) diawnìi khôj njáŋ lɯ̌a __________ jʉʉ __________
(Now I have two kips left.)

(k) ______________________________ lὲεw
(Time's up!)

(l) càw njáŋ lɯ̌a ____________________ jʉʉ cák __________?
(How many bananas do you have left?)

Answers: (a)lɯ̌a... jʉʉ (b)kàj si (c)phákthíam (d)njáŋ jʉʉ (e)bɔɔ (f)sìin ŋúa (g)mòt lὲεw (h)sɔ̌ɔŋ too (i)kin... mót (j)ŋán... sɔ̌ɔŋ kîip (k)mót wéeláa (l)mâak kùaj ... nʉaj.

CYCLE 48

M-1

ŋən	money
khácàw mót ŋən lɛ̀ɛw	They are already broke.
khwáam khīt	idea, thought
khácàw mót khwáam khīt lɛ̀ɛw	They are already out of ideas.
kamláŋcaj	will power, encouragement
khácàw mót kamláŋcaj lɛ̀ɛw	They are already discouraged.
khwáam penhūaŋ	worry, concern
khácàw mót khwáam penhūaŋ lɛ̀ɛw	They are already free of concern
thòot	punishment, penalty
khácàw mót thòot lɛ̀ɛw	They have already paid their debt to society.
wéeláa	time
khácàw mót wéeláa lɛ̀ɛw	Their time is up already.
sǎnnjáa	contract, agreement
khácàw mót sǎnnjáa lɛ̀ɛw	Their contract is already over.
wǎŋ	hope
khácàw mót wǎŋ lɛ̀ɛw	They have no more hope.

M-2

kháсàw njáŋ míi kamláŋcaj jūū	They are still of a mind (to...)
khwáam ótthón	patience
khácàw njáŋ míi khwáam ótthón jūū	They still have patience.
khámthǎam	question
khácàw njáŋ míi khámthǎam jūū	They still have questions.
panhǎa	problem
khácàw njáŋ míi panhǎa jūū	They still have problems.
khwáam sǎmphán, kan	relations, one another
khácàw njáŋ míi khwáam sǎmphán kan jūū	They still have relations with one another.
kîatsáŋ	dislike
khácàw njáŋ kîatsáŋ kan jūū	They still dislike one another.
hākphɛ́ɛŋ kan	love one another
khácàw njáŋ hākphɛ́ɛŋ kan jūū	They still love one another.

C-1

(mót ŋə́n)	(to be broke)
A. càw mót ŋə́n lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	Are you broke?
B. əə, khɔ̂j mót ŋə́n lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, I'm broke.

C-2

(míi kamláŋcaj)	(of a mind)
A. khácàw njáŋ míi kamláŋcaj jūū bɔɔ?	Are they still of a mind (to...)?
B. əə, khácàw njáŋ míi kamláŋcaj jūū	Yes, they are.

C-3

(mót khwáam penhūaŋ)	(free of concern)
A. càw mót khwáam penhūaŋ lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	Are you already free of concern?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂j njáŋ míi khwáam penhūaŋ jūū	No, I am still {concerned worried.

CYCLE 49

M-1

aasǎj, hýan	live, dwell; house
láaw njáŋ aasǎj jūū hýan càw jūū bɔɔ?	Is he still living in your house?
pen thāhǎan	to be in the military service
láaw njáŋ pen thāhǎan jūū bɔɔ?	Is he still in the service
wāāŋŋáan	to be out of work
láaw njáŋ wāāŋŋáan jūū bɔɔ?	Is he still out of work?
kháa, wìak	to be attached to, work
láaw njáŋ kháa wìak jūū bɔɔ?	Is he still tied up with his work?
pennîi	to be indebted (to)
láaw njáŋ pennîi càw jūū bɔɔ?	Is he still indebted to you?
ɔ̂ɔk paj, pátíbát ŋáan	go out, carry out a mission or duty
láaw njáŋ ɔ̂ɔk paj pátíbát ŋáan jūū bɔɔ?	Is he still going out on the mission?

thŷyk khăŋ	to be locked up
láaw njáŋ thŷyk khăŋ jūū bɔɔ?	Is he still locked up?
lŏŋtháaŋ	to lose one's way
láaw njáŋ lŏŋtháaŋ jūū bɔɔ?	Is he still lost?

M-2

ɔ̂ɔk thāhăan	leave the military service
láaw ɔ̂ɔk thāhăan tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw	He left the service a long time ago.
míi wìak hēt	to have work to do
láaw míi wìak hēt tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw	He got a job a long time ago.
wăaŋwìak	to be free of work
láaw wăaŋwìak tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw	He has had spare time for a long time.
sàjnîi, mót	pay off one's debt, entirely
láaw sàjnîi mót tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw	He paid off his debts a long time ago.
thŷyk pɔ̄ɔ̄j	to be released, to be let free
láaw thŷyk pɔ̄ɔ̄j tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw	He was released a long time ago.

nǐi, câak	go away, escape; from
láaw nǐi câak khɔ̂j tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw	He left me a long time ago.
sáw	stop
láaw sáw ɔ̂ɔk paj patíbát ŋáan tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw	He stopped going out on the mission a long time ago.

C-1

(aasǎj jūū hýan càw)	(live in your house)
A. láaw njáŋ aasǎj jūū hýan càw jūū bɔɔ̄?	Is he still living in your house?
B. əə, láaw njáŋ aasǎj jūū hýan khɔ̂j jūū	Yes, he is still living in my house.

C-2

(ɔ̂ɔk thāhǎan)	(leave the military service)
A. láaw ɔ̂ɔk thāhǎan lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	Has he already left the service?
B. əə, láaw ɔ̂ɔk thāhǎan tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, he left the service a long time ago.

C-3

(kháa wìak)	(tied up with the work)
A. láaw njáŋ kháa wìak jūū bɔɔ?	Is he still tied up with the work?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, láaw wǎaŋ wìak tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw	No, he was free (of work) a long time ago.

CYCLE 50

M-1

lε̄ε̄n, dii	run; good, well
lōt láaw njáŋ lε̄ε̄n dii jūū bɔɔ?	Is his car still running well?
míi, sáphàap	have; condition, state
lōt láaw njáŋ míi sáphàap dii jūū bɔɔ?	Is his car still in good condition?
kák, thŷyk kák	detain; to be detained
lōt láaw njáŋ **thŷyk** kák jūū bɔ̄ɔ̄?	Is his car still being detained?
phée	break down
lōt láaw njáŋ phée jūū bɔɔ?	Is his car still broken down?
jaaŋ	rubber, tire
lōt láaw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi jaaŋ jūū bɔɔ?	Is his car still without tires?
kháa, tom	to be stuck (to), mud
lōt láaw njáŋ kháa tom jūū bɔɔ?	Is his car still stuck in the mud?
pεεŋ	fix, repair
lōt láaw njáŋ pεεŋ jūū bɔɔ?	Is his car still being fixed?

sỳy, phūū sỳy	buy, buyer
lōt láaw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phūū sỳy jūū bɔɔ?	Is he still unable to find a buyer for his car?

M-2

taaj	die
lōt láaw taaj lɛ́ɛw	His car is already broken down.
kāw, lǎaj	old; much, many, very
lōt láaw kāw lǎaj lɛ̀ɛw	His car is already very old.
pɛɛŋ, lɛ̀ɛw	repair, fix; complete, finish
lōt láaw pɛɛŋ lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw	His car has already been fixed.
lɛ̄ɛn, lɛ̄ɛn dàj	run, able to run
lōt láaw lɛ̄ɛn dàj lɛ̀ɛw	His car is already running.
khǎaj	sell
lōt láaw khǎaj lɛ̀ɛw	His car has already been sold.
lāk, khǎw	steal, they
lōt láaw thŷyk khǎw lāk lɛ̀ɛw	His car has already been stolen.
fáj, mâj	fire, catch fire
lōt láaw thŷyk fáj mâj	His car was already burned up.
dàj khýyn	gain back, get back
lōt láaw dàj khýyn lɛ̀ɛw	He's already gotten his car back.

C-1

(lɛ̄ɛ̄n dii)	(running well)
A. lōt càw njáŋ lɛ̄ɛ̄n dii jūū bɔɔ?	Is your car still running well?
B. əə, lōt khɔ̂j njáŋ lɛ̄ɛ̄n dii jūū	Yes, my car is still running well.

C-2

(thŷyk khǎw lāk	(be stolen)
A. lōt láaw thŷyk khǎw lāk lɛ̀ɛw, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	His car has already been stolen, isn't that right?
B. əə, lōt láaw thŷyk khǎw lāk lɛ̀ɛw	That's right, his car has already been stolen.

C-3

(lɛ̄ɛ̄n dii)	(running well)
A. lōt láaw njáŋ lɛ̄ɛ̄n dii jūū bɔɔ?	Is his car still running well?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, lōt láaw phée lɛ̀ɛw	No, his car is broken down.

"ຍັງບໍ່ໄປ" "ຍັງມີເງິນຢູ່" "ຍັງເຫລືອຢູ່" "ສິບໂມງຍັງຫ້ານາທີ" ທ່ານຈົ່ງພານັກຮຽນຂຍາຍການໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ"ຍັງ"ອອກໃຫ້ກວ້າງເບິ່ງດູ! ພ້ອມກັນນັ້ນກໍ່ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເຂົ້າໃຈເຖິງແຕ່ລະສະພາບການ.

NOTES

(For Cycles 48, 49, 50)

1) When mót is used with abstract Nouns like kamláŋcaj 'will, spirit', it refers to an absence or lack of something. mót kamláŋcaj 'to be discouraged', mót wǎŋ 'to have no hope' mót thòot 'to be no longer under punishment'.

2) khwáam is a nominalizer, i.e. when it is placed before VP, the VP is changed into NP:

khwáam	+	VP	=	NP
khwáam		pen hūaŋ		khwáampenhūaŋ
....		'to be concerned'		'worry, concern'

The nouns formed in this manner are all Abstract Nouns.

3) míi kamláŋcaj jūu means 'to still have one's mind on (doing something) or 'not to have given up the idea of (doing something)'. láaw njáŋ míi kamláŋcaj pen sáaw náa jūu 'He hasn't given up the idea of being a farmer yet.'

4) kan after VP indicates 'mutuality' or 'reciprocity' in an action; it functions somewhat like a reflexive pronoun (myself, himself, etc.) in English:

khácàw njáŋ kîatsáŋ kan jūu	'They still dislike each other.

5) When thŷyk occurs before certain VP, it functions somewhat like be in the Passive in English:

láaw njáŋ thŷyk khǎŋ jūu	'He is still locked up.'
lōt láaw thŷyk khǎw lāk lɛ̀ɛw	'His car has already been stolen.'

thŷyk only occurs before verbs having a bad meaning, such as khǎŋ 'to lock up', fáj mâj 'to burn up', etc. Most verbs such as khǎaj, etc. may occur with either 'active' or 'passive' meaning, thus khǎaj 'to sell' or 'to be sold', etc.

6) tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw (lit. 'since a long time already') 'a long time ago' is used to indicate that a situation has been in effect for some time.

láaw ɔ̂ɔk thāhǎan tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw — 'He left the military service a long time ago'.

7) hēt wìak means 'to do any kind of work'. míi wìak hēt means 'to have work to do, to have a job.' wǎaŋ wìak means 'to be free of work'. It has nothing to do with employment. kháa wìak means 'to be tied up in, or very much involved in your job or work.' wāāŋ ŋáan means 'to be out of a job, unemployed'.

8) nîi means 'debt'. pen nîi Person means 'to be indebted to a person'. sàj nîi means 'to pay off debts'.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw _______________ khwáam ótthón.
(He's out of patience.)

(b) mót ________________ lɛ̀ɛw
(The contract has already expired.)

(c) njáŋ lÿ̌a _______________ jūū 2 khɔ̂ɔ
(two questions still remain.)

(d) càw pen ________________ bɔɔ?
(Are you concerned, worried?)

(e) páthèet ciin dɛɛŋ njáŋ míi __________ káp páthèet phámàa jūū
(Red China still has relations with Burma.)

Answers: 1(a)mót (b) sǎnnjáa (c)khámthǎam (d)hūaŋ (e)khwáam sǎmphán

(f) càw njáŋ míi ______________ pen náaj khúu jūū bɔɔ?
(Haven't you given up the idea of being a teacher yet?)

(g) khacàw njáŋ kîatsáŋ ______________ jūū
(They still dislike each other.)

(h) càw míi _________________________ bɔɔ?
(Do you have work to do?)

(i) lōt jūū hân ______________________ thŷyk
(Cars are sold cheap there.)

(j) khɔ̂j njáŋ ly̆a wéeláa jūū _______________
(I still have ten minutes left.)

(k) hýan láaw ________________________ lɛ̀ɛw
(His house has already burned down.)

(l) láaw thŷyk khǎŋ _______________________
(How long was he locked up?)

(m) phȳan càw thŷyk pɔ̄ɔ̄j __________________
(Your friend was released a long time ago.)

(n) càw njáŋ ____________________ láaw jūū cák kîip
(How many kip do you still owe him?)

(o) láaw njáŋ ___________________ jūū hýan khɔ̂j
(He's still living at my house.)

(p) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen nîi càw _______________________
(I don't owe you a single kip!)

Answers: (f)kamláŋcaj (g)kan (h)wìak hēt (i)khǎaj (j)síp náathíi (k)thŷyk fáj mâj (l)don paandaj (m)tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw (n)pen nîi (o)aasǎj(p)cák kîip

(q) khɔ̂j __________________ mót tɛ̄ɛ̄ don lɛ̀ɛw
(I paid off my debts a long time ago.)

(r) lɔ̄t láaw pɛɛŋ __________ __________
(His car has already been fixed.)

(s) càw __________ thāāj hùup __________ __________ bɔɔ?
(Do you still know how to take pictures?)

(t) hýan láaw __________ __________ lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?
(Has his house been built yet?)

(u) pátuu njáŋ __________________ jūū
(The door is still open.)

(v) khácàw njáŋ __________________ jūū
(They still love each other.)

(w) láaw ________________________ jūū sǎj?
(Where did he get lost?)

(x) láaw thŷyk pɔ̄ɔ̄j lɛ̀ɛw phɔ̄ wāā (láaw) __________ lɛ̀ɛw
(He has been released already because he has already paid his debt to society.)

(y) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj wàw njǎŋ phɔ̄ɔ̄wāā __________________ lɛ̀ɛw
(I didn't say anything because I was already out of ideas.)

Answers: (q)sàj nîi (r)lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw (s)njáŋ... pen jūū (t)púk lɛ̀ɛw (u)khǎj (v)hākphɛ́ɛŋ kan (w)lŏŋ tháaŋ (x)mót thòot (y)mót khwáamkhīt

CYCLE 51

M-1

dɛɛŋ	red
sŷa khɔ̂j sĭi dɛɛŋ	My shirt is red.
khăaw	white
sŷa khɔ̂j sĭi khăaw	My shirt is white.
lŷaŋ	yellow
sŷa khɔ̂j sĭi lŷaŋ	My shirt is yellow.
fàa	sky
sŷa khɔ̂j sĭi fàa	My shirt is blue.
dam	black
sŷa khɔ̂j sĭi dam	My shirt is black.
khĭaw	green
sŷa khɔ̂j sĭi khĭaw	My shirt is green.

M-2

nàmtaan	sugar
sŷa càw sĭi njăŋ, sĭi nàmtaan mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	What color is your shirt, it's brown, isn't it?
tháw	grey
sŷa càw sĭi njăŋ, sĭi tháw mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	What color is your shirt, it's grey, isn't it?

khǐaw ɔ̄ɔ̄n	light green
sŷa càw sǐi njǎŋ, sǐi khǐaw ɔ̄ɔ̄n,mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	What color is your shirt, it's light green,isn't it?
lŷaŋ kɛ̄ɛ̄	dark yellow
sŷa càw sǐi njǎŋ, sǐi lŷaŋ kɛ̄ɛ̄,mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	What color is your shirt, it's dark yellow,isn't it?
dam dɛɛŋ	blackish red
sŷa càw sǐi njǎŋ, sǐi dam dɛɛŋ,mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	What color is your shirt, it's blackish red,isn't it?

M-3

sôoŋ	pants
sôoŋ láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	What color are his pants?
kárāvát	neck tie
kárāvát láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	What color is his necktie?
kə̂əp	shoes
kə̂əp láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	What color are his shoes?
sîn	Lao skirt
sîn láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	What color is her Lao skirt?
thǒŋthàw	socks
thǒŋthàw láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	What color are his socks?
kápaw	brief-case
kápaw láaw sǐi njǎŋ?	What color is his brief-case?

C-1

(kárāvát)	(necktie)
A. kárāvát càw sǐi njǎŋ?	What color is your tie?
(dɛɛŋ)	(red)
B. kárāvát khɔ̂j sǐi dɛɛŋ.	My tie is red.

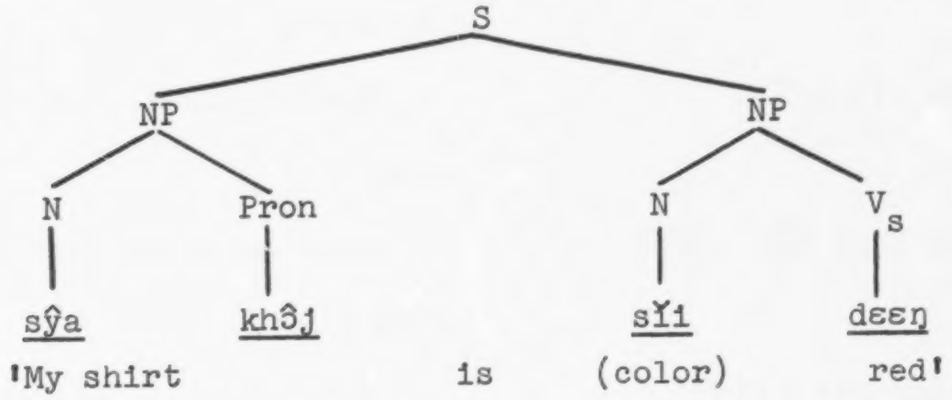
C-2

(kə̂əp)	(shoes)
A. kə̂əp càw sǐi njǎŋ, sǐi nàmtaan mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	What color are your shoes? They are brown, aren't they?
B. mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, kêep khɔ̂j sǐi nàmtaan.	Yes, my shoes are brown.

NOTES

1) sǐi 'color' normally proceeds the word for colors, i.e., sǐi dɛɛŋ '(color) red', sǐi khǐaw '(color) green', etc.

2) Sentences with sǐi in the predicate are normally verbless.



3) Verbs of color usually occur as modifiers of sĭi and are questionned with njăŋ 'What (kind)?'

Q: sŷa càw sĭi njăŋ? 'What color's your shirt?'

A: sĭi khĭaw '(It's) green.'

4) Color verbs may be modified by the addition of kɛ̄ɛ̄ 'dark (in shade) and ɔ̄ɔ̄n 'light (in shade)', thus sĭi khĭaw ɔ̄ɔ̄n means 'light green' and sĭi dɛɛŋ kɛ̄ɛ̄, 'dark red.' Mixtures are sometimes indicated by using two color verbs such as sĭi dam dɛɛŋ 'reddish black', or sĭi khăaw lyăŋ 'yellowish white'.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) hýa lám nìi ______________ (What color is this boat?)

(b) sŷa phŷyn nàn ______________ (That shirt is red.)

(c) mâak kìaŋ nūaj njāj ________, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ? (That large orange is green, isn't it?)

(d) láaw míi cɔ̂ɔk __________ bɔɔ? (Does he have a blue glass?)

(e) kāj too nàn sĭi ___________ (That chicken's brown.)

(f) sŷa fŏn láaw ______________ (Her raincoat is light green.)

(g) ______________ càw sĭi dam (Your shoes are black.)

(h) _____________ láaw sĭi njăŋ? (What color is her Lao skirt?)

(i) kápaw khɔ̂j ______________ (My briefcase is dark brown.)

(j) kárāvát càw sĭi ___________ (Your tie is yellow.)

Answers: (a)sĭi njăŋ (b)sĭi dɛɛŋ (c)sĭi khĭaw (d)sĭi fàa (e)nàmtaan (f)sĭi khĭaw ɔ̄ɔ̄n (g)kə̂əp (h)sîn (i)sĭi nàmtaan kɛ̄ɛ̄ (j)lŷaŋ

CYCLE 52

M-1

njāāŋ, wáj	walk; fast, quick
láaw njāāŋ wáj phòot	He walks too fast.
sàa, hētwìak	slow, work
láaw hētwìak sàa phòot	He works too slow.
khɔ̄ɔ̄j, wàw	gentle; speak, say
láaw wàw khɔ̄ɔ̄j phòot	He speaks too softly.
dyŋ, hɛ́ɛŋ, sỳak	pull, strong, rope
láaw dyŋ sỳak hɛ́ɛŋ phòot	He pulls too hard on the rope.
daŋ, wàw	loud, speak
láaw wàw daŋ phòot	He speaks too loud.
don, jūū, hân	long time, stay, there
láaw jūū hân don phòot	He stayed there too long.
njàak, māk	difficult, like
láaw māk njàak phòot	He likes to make things harder than they are.
lǎaj, kin	much, many; eat
láaw kin lǎaj phòot	He eats too much.

M-2

láaw njāāŋ wáj paandaj?	How fast does she walk?
ŋáam, fɔ̀ɔn	pretty, beautiful, dance
láaw fɔ̀ɔn ŋáam paandaj?	How well does she dance?
hían, kēŋ	learn, study; good, smart, clever
láaw hían kēŋ paandaj?	How is he doing in his studies?
hɔ̀ɔŋ phéeŋ, mūan	sings songs; melodious
láaw hɔ̀ɔŋ phéeŋ mūan paandaj?	How well does she sing?
dàj pháasǎa, dii	able to speak a language; well, good
láaw dàj pháasǎa láaw dii paandaj?	How well can he speak Lao?
njōk, nàmnák	lift, weight
láaw njōk nàmnák dàj lǎaj paandaj?	How much weight can he lift?

M-3

njāāŋ, wáj	walk, fast
láaw njāāŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ wáj paandaj	He doesn't walk very fast.
sǔuŋ, khŷn, mán	high, ascend, it
mán khŷn bɔ̄ɔ̄ sǔuŋ paandaj	It doesn't go up very high.
láaw hían bɔ̄ɔ̄ wáj paandaj	He doesn't learn very fast.

hɛ́ɛn, lōt	strong, powerful; car
lōt láaw lɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔ̄ɔ̄ hɛ́ɛŋ paandaj	His car doesn't have much power.
khǐan, ŋáam	write; pretty, beautiful
láaw khǐan bɔ̄ɔ̄ ŋáam paandaj	His handwriting is not very pretty.
hían, waj	learn, fast
láaw hian bɔ̄ɔ̄ wáj paandaj;	He doesn't learn very fast.

M-4

kháplōt, wáj	drive, fast
láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ kháplōt wáj paandaj	He didn't drive very fast.
ɔ̂ɔk kamláŋ, kaaj, lỳaj lỳaj	exercise, physical, often
láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ ɔ̂ɔk kamláŋ kaaj lỳaj lỳaj paandaj	He doesn't do much physical exercise.
aw hâj, lǎaj	give, much
láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ aw hâj lǎaj paandaj	He didn't give very much.
aw paj, mót	take; all, completely
láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ aw pỳm paj mót	He didn't take all the books.
kin, mót	eat, all entirely
láaw si bɔ̄ɔ̄ kin mót	He's not going eat all of it.

M-5

njāāŋ wáj wáj dɛ̄ɛ̄	Walk faster, please.
wàw khɔ̄ɔ̄j khɔ̄ɔ̄j dɛ̄ɛ̄	Speak softly, please.
kháplɔ̄t sàa sàa dɛ̄ɛ̄	Drive slowly, please.
āān daŋ daŋ dɛ̄ɛ̄	Read loudly, please.
kin lǎaj lǎaj dɛ̄ɛ̄	Eat a lot, please.

C-1

(wàw wáj)	
A. càw wàw wáj phòot. wàw sàa sàa dɛ̄ɛ̄.	You speak too fast. Speak slowly, please.
(wàw sàa sàa)	
B. khɔ̌ɔthòot. khɔ̂j si wàw sàa sàa.	I'm sorry. I'll speak slowly.

C-2

(fɔ̀ɔn ŋáam)	
A. láaw fɔ̀ɔn ŋáam paandaj?	How well does she dance?
(fɔ̀ɔn bɔ̄ɔ̄ ŋáam)	
B. láaw fɔ̀ɔn bɔ̄ɔ̄ ŋáam paandaj	She doesn't dance very well.

C-3

(kháplɔ̄t wáj)	
A. láaw si kháplɔ̄t wáj bɔɔ?	Is he going to drive fast?
(kháplɔ̄t wáj)	
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, láaw si bɔ̄ɔ̄ kháplɔ̄t wáj	No. He's not going to drive fast.

C-4

(khĭan ŋáam)

A. láaw khĭan ŋáam bɔɔ?	Is his handwriting pretty?

(khĭan bɔ̄ɔ̄ ŋáam)

láaw khĭan bɔ̄ɔ̄ ŋáam paandaj	His handwriting is not very pretty.

ຈົງສັງເກດເບິ່ງຈຸດປະສົງຂອງແຕ່ລະພາກຂອງບົດຮຽນນີ້ ແລ້ວທົບທວນຄວາມເຂົ້າໃຈຂອງນັກຮຽນຄັກໆເບິ່ງດູ! ຈົງຂຍາຍການຝຶກຫັດໃນພາກ C ອອກອີກ ແລະແຕ່ງເຣື່ອງປະກອບຂຶ້ນ! ອະທິບາຍຣູບພາບຕ່າງໆເບິ່ງດູ!

NOTES

1) phòot 'to be in excess' normally occurs after stative verbs: láaw njāaŋ wáj phòot 'He walks too fast'. The negative form of phòot is bɔ̄ɔ̄ ... paandaj 'Not very'. The position of bɔ̄ɔ̄ in the sentence is important: Compare láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ njāaŋ wáj paandaj 'He doesn't walk very fast' or 'He isn't walking very fast' (because he doesn't want to) with láaw njāaŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ (dàj) wáj paandaj 'He doesn't walk very fast' (because he is unable to walk faster).

2) The form paandaj is used after the stative verb in questions to find out the manner in which an activity is being carried out: láaw hɔ̀ɔŋ phéeŋ mūan paandaj 'How well does she sing?'

APPLICATION

1) Write out a reasonable answer to the following questions:

(a) láaw wàw daŋ paandaj? láaw wàw __________

(b) mía càw njāāŋ wáj paandaj? láaw njāāŋ __________

(c) láaw jūū hân don paandaj? __________

Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(d) láaw át pátuu __________

(He closed the door too quickly.)

(e) láaw __________ hían __________ dii paandaj

(He's not learning very fast (because he doesn't want to).

(f) láaw hɔ̀ɔŋ phéeŋ __________ mūaj paandaj

(She doesn't sing very melodiously (because she has a very poor voice.)

(g) càw āān wáj __________

(You read very fast.)

(h) láaw wàw pháasǎa láaw __________

(He speaks Lao too slowly.)

Answers: (a)daŋ phòot (or) bɔ̄ɔ̄ daŋ paandaj (b)wáj phòot (or) bɔ̄ɔ̄ wáj paandaj (c)hók aathít (or) don phòot (or) bɔ̄ɔ̄ don paandaj (d)wáj phòot (e)bɔ̄ɔ̄ (f)bɔ̄ɔ̄ (g)lǎaj (h) sàa phòot

CYCLE 53

M-1

āān wáj	read fast
láaw āān wáj bɔɔ?	Does he read fast?
wàw cὲεŋ	speak clearly
láaw wàw cὲεŋ bɔɔ?	Did he speak clearly?
athībaaj lā-îat	explain thoroughly
láaw athībaaj lā-îat bɔɔ?	Did he explain it thoroughly?
hían dii	be a good student
láaw hían dii bɔɔ?	Is he a good student?
hían kēŋ	to be a good learner
láaw hían kēŋ bɔɔ?	Is he a good student?
njāāŋ njàak	have trouble walking
láaw njāāŋ njàak bɔɔ?	Does he have trouble walking?

M-2

kēŋ	smart
kēŋ sɔ̆mkhúan	Pretty smart.
cὲεŋ	clear
cὲεŋ sɔ̆mkhúan	Pretty clear.
hàaj héεŋ	serious
hàaj héεŋ sɔ̆mkhúan	Pretty serious.

máw	to be drunk
máw sǒmkhúan	Pretty drunk.
mūan	enjoyable
mūan sǒmkhúan	Pretty enjoyable.

C-1

A. láaw āān wáj bɔɔ?	Does he read fast?
B. wáj sǒmkhúan	Pretty fast.

C-2

A. láaw āān wáj paandaj?	How fast does he read?
B. wáj sǒmkhúan	Pretty fast.

C-3

A. láaw hían kēŋ sǒmkhúan bɔɔ?	Is he a pretty good student?
B. kēŋ sǒmkhúan jūū	Pretty good (smart).

NOTES

1) sǒmkhúan 'suitably, properly' is used after stative verbs to indicate a degree which is neither too much in one direction nor the other.

láaw āān wáj sǒmkhúan	'He reads fairly fast.'

2) When njàak 'to be difficult' occurs after an action verb, it indicates that the action is taken with difficulty:

athībaaj njáak	'It's difficult to explain.'

APPLICATION

1) Answer the following questions with an indication that the action referred to is done fairly well:

(a) láaw wàw pháasǎa láaw dii bɔɔ? __________

(b) láaw lóŋ khândaj wáj paandaj?__________

(c) láaw lɔ́ɔj nàm kēŋ paandaj? __________

(d) kàncaj sīī náathíi njàak paandaj?__________

Fill in the blanks using the English as a guide.

(e) láaw lāw lỳaŋ nàn __________ dii
(He told the story in detail.)

(f) láaw kin lâw bia lǎaj kὲεw. láaw __________
(He drank several bottles of beer. He's pretty drunk.)

(g) láaw kháp lōt __________
(He drives pretty fast.)

(h) paj bēŋ síinée__________
(Going to the movies is pretty good fun .)

(i) át pɔ̄ɔ̄ŋ-jìam nàn phùn __________ bɔɔ?
(Is it difficult to close that window over there?)

(j) láaw áthībaaj __________
(His explanations are not very thorough.)

Answers: (a)dii sǒmkhúan (b)wáj sǒmkhúan (c)kēŋ sǒmkhúan (d)njàak sǒmkhúan (e)lā-îat (f)máw sǒmkhúan (g)wáj sǒmkhúan (h)mūan sǒmkhúan (i)njàak (j)bɔ̄ɔ̄ lā-îat paandaj

(k) tít-tɔ̄ɔ̄ káp phūū nàn ____________________

(It's not very difficult to contact that person.)

(l) pīan jaaŋ njàak ____________________

(Changing a tire is fairly difficult.)

(m) láaw phím nǎŋsy̌y ____________________

(She types fairly well.)

(n) aakaan khɔ̌ŋ láaw ________________ sɔ̌mkhúan

(He is rather seriously ill.)

Answers: (k)bɔ̄ɔ̄ njáak paandaj (l)sɔ̌mkhúan (m)kēŋ sɔ̌mkhúan
(n)hàaj héɛŋ

CYCLE 54

M-1

kin	eat
jāā kin lǎaj!	Don't eat too much!
kháplōt wáj	drive fast
jāā kháplōt wáj lǎaj!	Don't drive too fast!
fōt	be noisy
jāā fōt lǎaj!	Don't be too noisy!
lùa	misbehave
jāā lùa lǎaj!	Behave yourself!
khîikhàan	be lazy
jāā khîikhàan lǎaj!	Don't be too lazy!
cōm	complain, grumble
jāā cōm lǎaj!	Don't complain too much!

M-2

tɛʔtɔ̀ɔŋ	touch (with hands)
kárūnáa jāā tɛʔtɔ̀ɔŋ	Please don't touch.
tan tháaŋ	block the way
kárūnáa jāā tan tháaŋ.	Please don't block the way.

hēt sǐaŋ daŋ	make noise
kárūnáa jāā hēt sǐaŋ daŋ	Please don't make noise.
lōpkuan	disturb
kárūnáa jāā lōpkuan.	Please don't disturb (anyone).
jîap, njâa	step on, grass
kárūnáa jāā jîap njâa	Please don't step on the grass.
sûup jaa	smoke
kárūnáa jāā sûup jaa	Please don't smoke.

M-3

khâw	enter
hâam khâw	Do not enter.
sûup jaa	smoke
hâam sûup jaa	Do not smoke.
pə̂ət	open
hâam pə̂ət	Do not open.
sūaŋ	pass, race
hâam sūaŋ	Do not pass.
lūaŋlàm	trespass
hâam lūaŋ làm	Do not trespass.
thîm khîi njŷa	dump trash
hâam thîm khîi njŷa	No dumping.

dét dɔ̂ɔkmàj	pick flowers
hâam dét dɔ̂ɔkmàj	Do not pick flowers.
C-1	
A. khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ jâak hâj láaw kin lǎaj	I don't want him to eat too much.
càw bɔ̂ɔk láaw hâj khɔ̂j dɛ̄ɛ̄	Would you please tell him for me.
B. jāā kin lǎaj	Don't eat too much.
C-2	
A. kháccàw bɔ̂ɔk njǎŋ háw?	What did they tell us?
(tɛʔtɔ̀ɔŋ)	(touch)
B. kháccàw bɔ̂ɔk háw wāā kárūnáa jāā tɛʔtɔ̀ɔŋ	They told us. Please don't touch.
C-3	
(pàaj)	(sign)
A. pàaj nàn bɔ̂ɔk njǎŋ?	What does that sign say?
(sûup jaa)	(smoke)
B. hâam sûup jaa	No smoking.

ການຝຶກຫັດເພີ້ມເຕີມສຳລັບບົດນີ້ກໍມີແຕ່ວ່າ ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນບອກກັນບໍ່ໃຫ້ເຮັດສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງ ຫລືໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າ ປະຕິບັດຕາມຄຳບອກຂອງນາຍຄຣູ. ການຝຶກຫັດຄວນຈະໃຫ້ເປັນໄປດ້ວຍຄວາມໄວທັມມະດາ.

NOTES

1) The request form in Lao is the Verb Phrase without NP (subject): paj kin khâw 'Go eat!' The request may be softened by putting kárūnaa (Lit. 'kindness') 'please' before NP, kárūnáa wàw sàa sàa 'Please speak slower' or by putting dɛɛ after VP: njāāŋ wáj wáj dɛɛ 'Walk faster, please.'

2) The negative request form is: jāā 'don't' + VP: jāā kin lǎaj 'Don't eat too much.' This request form may also be softened by putting kárūnáa before it: kárūnáa jāā tan tháaŋ 'Please don't block the way.'

3) In written Lao hâam 'It is forbidden to' is normally used. One sometimes sees signs like this: hâam sûup jāā 'No Smoking'. hâam is rarely used in spoken Lao in this construction.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) ______________ jāā sûup jaa (Please don't smoke.)

(b) (A sign) ____________ lūaŋlàm (No Trespassing.)

(c) jāā ______________ lǎaj (Don't be too lazy.)

(d) āān daŋ daŋ ____________ (Read loudly, please.)

(e) ______________ wáj wáj (Walk fast.)

(f) ______________ tɔ̂ɔp khámthǎam khɔ̂ɔ nàn (Don't answer that question.)

Answers: (a)kárūnáa (b)hâam (c)khîikhàan (d)dɛɛ (e)njāāŋ (f)jāā

(g) (Sign) ____________ thāāj hùup jūū nìi (No picture taking here.)

(h) jāā khúakin ____________ (Don't cook too much.)

(i) ____________ thée lóŋ jūū hân (Don't dump it out there.)

(j) wáaŋ wàj phùn ______________ (Please put it over there.)

(k) (Sign): hâam ______________ (Don't enter.)

(l) ____________ kin aahǎan phét lǎaj (Don't eat too much hot spicy food.)

Answers: (g)hâam (h)lǎaj (i)jāā (j)dɛ̄ɛ̄ (k)khâw (l)jāā

CYCLE 55

M-1

sǎj	where
càw paj sǎj máa?	Where have you been (to)?
njǎŋ	what
càw paj hēt njǎŋ máa?	(You just come back) what did you do?

M-2

wāt	pagoda, temple
khɔ̂j paj wāt máa	I've been to the temple.
kinkhâw	to eat (meal)
khɔ̂j paj kin khâw máa	I've been to eat.
hǎa mɔ̌ɔ	see the doctor
khɔ̂j paj hǎa mɔ̌ɔ máa	I've been to see the doctor.
sák jaa	to get a shot
khɔ̂j paj sák jaa máa	I've come back from getting a shot.
sǎaŋ kép khȳaŋ	warehouse
khɔ̂j paj sǎaŋ kép khȳaŋ máa	I've been to the warehouse.

C-1

A. càw paj sǎj máa?	Where have you been?
(hóoŋhían)	
B. khɔ̂j paj hóoŋhían máa	I've been to school.

C-2

A. càw paj hēt njǎŋ máa?	(You just come back) What did you do?
(kinkhâw)	
B. khɔ̂j paj kinkhâw máa	I've been to eat.

NOTES

1) The construction paj ... máa is used to indicate that someone is returning from having been to some place or having done something:

khɔ̂j paj wāt máa	'I've just been to the temple'.
khɔ̂j paj kin khâw máa	'I've been out to eat.'

The type of question may reflect the difference referred to above:

càw paj sǎj máa?	'Where have you been?'
càw paj hēt njǎŋ máa?	'What have you been doing?' (Lit. What do you come from doing?)

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences:

(a) khɔ̂j _____ kin khâw________ (I've been to eat.)

(b) càw paj ______________ máa? (What have you been doing?)

(c) khɔ̂j paj ______________ máa (I've been to get a shot.)

2. Answer the following questions according to the actual situation:

(d) càw paj hēt njǎŋ máa?

(e) càw paj sǎj máa?

(f) càw bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj hēt njǎŋ máa bɔɔ?

(g) càw bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj sǎj máa bɔɔ?

3. Translate the following sentences into English:

(h) láaw paj khǎj kácɛɛ pátuu nàn máa

(i) phɨ̄an khɔ̂j paj tiisə́k jūū páthèet wìat náam máa

(j) láaw paj khâw thɛ̆ɛw sūamóoŋ khɔ̄ŋ

Answers: 1(a)paj ... máa 1(b)hēt njǎŋ 1(c)sák jaa 2Your answers will depend on what you have been doing very recently. 3(a)He just come back from unlocking that door. 3(b)My friend has just come back from fighting in Vietnam. 3(c)He's been standing in a line for half an hour.

CYCLE 56

M-1

phùakcàw máa tɛɛ sǎj?	Where did you all come from?
pỳm, hǔa	book (classifier)
pỳm hǔa nìi máa tɛɛ sǎj?	Where did this book come from?
lōt, khán	car (classifier)
lōt khán nìi máa tɛɛ sǎj?	Where did this car come from?
hýabin, lám	airplane (classifier)
hýabin lám nìi máa tɛɛ sǎj?	Where did this airplane come from?
pyyn, kábɔ̂ɔk	gun (classifier)
pyyn kábɔ̂ɔk nìi máa tɛɛ sǎj?	Where did this gun come from?
cìa, phɛɛn	paper, sheet (classifier)
cìa phɛɛn nìi máa tɛɛ sǎj?	Where did this paper come from?
hýa, lám	boat (classifier)
hýa lám nìi máa tɛɛ sǎj?	Where did this boat come from?

M-2

tálâat	market
phùak khɔ̂j máa tɛɛ tálâat	We came from the market.
aw máa, hóoŋhían	bring, school
láaw aw pỳm hǔa nìi máa tɛɛ hóoŋhían	He brought this book from school.
pâaksán	Paksane
lɔ̄t khán nìi máa tɛɛ pâaksán	This car came from Paksane.
lǔaŋ phābaaŋ	Luang Phrabang
hýa lám nìi máa tɛɛ lǔaŋ phābaaŋ	This boat came from Luang Prabang.
aw... máa, hóoŋkaan	bring, office building
khɔ̂j aw cìa phɛɛn nìi máa tɛɛ hóoŋkaan	I brought this piece of paper from the office.
tamlûat	policeman
tamlûat aw pyyn kábɔ̂ɔk nìi máa	The policeman brought this gun.

C-1

A. càw máa tɛɛ sǎj?	Where are you coming from?
(hýan khɔ̂j)	(my house)
B. khɔ̂j máa tɛɛ hýan khɔ̂j	I come from my house.

C-2

(hýabin lám nìi)	(this airplane)
A. hýabin lám nìi máa tɛ̂ɛ sǎj?	Where did this airplane come from?
(baaŋkɔ̂ɔk)	(Bangkok)
B. máa tɛ̂ɛ baaŋkɔ̂ɔk	It came from Bangkok.

C-3

(pỳm hǔa nìi)	(this book)
A. pỳm hǔa nìi máa tɛ̂ɛ sǎj?	Where did this book come from?
(hóoŋhían)	(school)
B. khɔ̂j aw máa tɛ̂ɛ hóoŋhían	I brought it from school.

ຈົງສົມມຸດສະຖານະການອື່ນ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເປັນຕົວສະແດງໂດຍການສົນທະນາຫລືຖາມເອົາລາຍລະອຽດຕ່າງໆຈາກກັນແລະກັນ. ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າຄົນສອງຄົນລົມກັນຢູ່ເດີ່ນຍົນ, ຄິວຣົດໂດຍສານ ຫລືຢູ່ຕາມສະຖານທີ່ອື່ນໆອີກ. ກ່ອນຈະໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຝຶກຫັດໂດຍຂະເຈົ້າເອງ ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ແນ່ໃຈວ່າທ່ານໄດ້ພາຂະເຈົ້າຝຶກຫັດບົດຮຽນຈົນເຫັນວ່າດີສົມຄວນແລ້ວ; ບໍ່ດັ່ງນັ້ນ ອາດຈະເປັນການເສັຽເວລາເປົ່າໆ.

NOTES

tɛɛ + Location is used to refer to the point of origin of something (i.e. the starting point of a trip, the place where something was made, etc.). It is similar in usage to câak. Neither câak nor tɛɛ refer to the birthplace of a person.

Q:	hýabin lám nìi máa tɛɛ sǎj	'Where did the plane come from?'
A:	máa tɛɛ baaŋkɔ̂ɔk	'It came from Bangkok.'

APPLICATION

1. How would you find out where certain things originated, such as Japanese cars, German beer, etc.?
2. How would you find out where a certain vehicle had just come from, such as an airplane, bus, etc.?

Answers: to both 1 and 2 are: ... máa tɛɛ sǎj

CYCLE 57

M-1

aw paj, kāj, khǎaj	take, chicken, sell
láaw si aw kāj paj khǎaj	He is taking the chickens to sell.
sỳy paj, āān	buy and take, read
láaw si sỳy pỳm paj āān	He is buying the book to read.
thɛ̆ɛ, hǔa, bûat	shave, head, enter the priesthood
láaw si thɛ̆ɛ hǔa bûat	He is having his head shaved to enter the priesthood.
tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋtoo, bun	get dressed, festival
láaw si tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋtoo paj bun	He is dressing up to go to the festival.
càaŋ, bə̄ŋ, lùuk	hire; look at, look after; offspring
láaw si càaŋ khón máa bə̄ŋ lùuk	He is hiring someone to come and look after his children.
hɔ̀ɔŋkhɔ̆ɔ, sɔ̄ɔ̄j	request; help, assist
láaw si hɔ̀ɔŋkhɔ̆ɔ hâj khácàw máa sɔ̄ɔ̄j	He is requesting them to come and help.
pót...ʔɔk, kə̂əp	remove, take off; shoe
láaw si pót kə̂əp ʔɔk wàj	He is removing his shoes and putting them away.
làaŋ, mýy	wash, hand
láaw si làaŋ mýy kin khâw	He is washing his hands in order to eat.

M-2

sỳy, nàmsǐi	buy, paint
láaw si sỳy námsǐi máa hēt njǎŋ?	What is he buying the paint for?
aw...máa	bring
láaw si aw khɔ̂j máa hēt njǎŋ?	What is he bringing me here for?
thɛ̌ɛ hǔa	shave one's head
láaw si thɛ̌ɛ hǔa hēt njǎŋ?	What is he having his head shaved for?
daŋfáj	build a fire
láaw si daŋfáj hēt njǎŋ?	What is he starting a fire for?
khŷn paj	go up
láaw si khŷn paj hēt njǎŋ?	What is he going up there for?
lóŋ máa	come down
láaw si lóŋ máa hēt njǎŋ?	What is he coming down here for?
cɔ̂ɔt lɔ̄t	park a car
láaw si cɔ̂ɔt lɔ̄t hēt njǎŋ?	What is he parking the car for?
nám { paj máa	follow
láaw si nám khácàw paj hēt njǎŋ?	What is he following them for?

C-1

(tɛɛŋtoo)	(get dressed)
A. láaw si tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋtoo hēt njǎŋ?	Why is he getting dressed?
(tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋtoo paj bun)	(get dressed to go to the festival)
B. láaw si tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋtoo paj bun	He is getting dressed to go to the festival.

C-2

A. càw si hēt njǎŋ?	What are you going to do?
(càaŋ khón)	(hire someone)
B. khɔ̂j si càaŋ khón	I'm going to hire someone.
(máa)	(come)
A. càw si càaŋ khón máa hētnjǎŋ?	What are you going hire someone for?
(bə̄ŋ)	(to look after the children)
B. khɔ̂j si càaŋ khón máa bə̄ŋ lùuk	I'm hiring someone to come to look after my children.

C-3

A. càw hēt njǎŋ ?	What are you doing?
(làaŋ mýy)	(washing my hands)
B. khɔ̂j làaŋ mýy	I'm washing my hands.
(āān nǎŋsy̌y)	(to read)
A. càw si làaŋ mýy paj āān nǎŋsy̌y bɔɔ?	Are you washing your hands in order to read?

(kinkháw)	(to eat)
B. bɔ̄ɔ, khɔ̂j si làaŋ mýy paj kinkhâw.	No, I'm washing my hands in order to eat.

ໃນບົດນີ້ທ່ານຄົງເຫັນແລ້ວວ່າ ເຮົາໃຊ້ຄຳກິຣິຍາຫລາຍຄຳຕິດຕໍ່ກັນ ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ: "ໄປລ້າງມືກິນເຂົ້າ".
ຈົງຖາມຄຳຖາມທີ່ນັກຮຽນຈະຕ້ອງຕອບດ້ວຍປໂຍກທີ່ມີກິຣິຍາຫລາຍຄຳຕິດກັນເບິ່ງດູ!

NOTES

1) In English Verb Phrases of Purpose may be joined to other VP by to, as in:

NP	+	VP	+	to	-	VP (Purpose)
He		brought chicken		to		sell.

Compare this with Lao:

NP	+	VP	+	VP (Purpose)
láaw		aw kāj máa		khǎaj
		brought chicken	(to)	sell.'

2) bûat means 'to enter the Buddhist priesthood'. All young Lao men of the Buddhist religion are supposed to spend some period of time during their lives living as monks in a monastary. One's head is shaved and all worldly possessions are given away before entry.

3) a bun is a temple fair. Each temple has at least one bun a year as an occasion for reading certain Buddhist scriptures and also as a means of raising money to take care of temple needs. Many kinds of amusements (dances, songs, games, etc.) and many kinds of food are available.

APPLICATION

Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw si jyym pỳm khɔ̂j _______________

(He will borrow my book to read.)

(b) jūū hýan láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi nàm. láaw si _______________ làaŋ

(There's no water in his house. He'll take his car out to wash it.)

(c) láaw si _______________ sōŋ paj hâj phȳan láaw.

(He'll take pictures to send to his friend.)

(d) láaw si pót kə̂əp khūū māj _______________

(He'll take off his new shoes to put them away.)

(e) láaw si _______________ pɛɛ nǎŋsy̌y hâj láaw.

(He'll bring you to translate the book for him.)

(f) láaw si _______________ kûat bāŋ wìak khɔ̌ɔŋ phùakháw.

(He'll come down to check our work.)

(g) láaw si _______________ khón doojsǎan.

(He'll stop his bus to pick up passengers.)

(h) láaw jâak pen khúubaa. láaw si _______________

(He would like to be a monk priest. He'll shave his head in order to enter the priesthood.)

(i) láaw bɔ̂ɔk hâj khɔ̂j _______________ khúakin.

(He told me to build a fire to cook with.)

(j) láaw si khŷn _______________ jūū sàn thíi sɔ̌ɔŋ.

(He'll go up to sleep on the second floor.)

Answers: (a)paj āān (b)aw lōt láaw paj (c)thāāj hùup (d)ɔ̀ɔk wàj (e)aw càw máa (f)lóŋ máa (g)cɔ̀ɔt lōt aw (h)thɛ̌ɛ hǔa bûat (i)daŋfáj (j)paj nɔ́ɔn

CYCLE 58

M-1

kàw móoŋ, hâa móoŋ khə̄ŋ	9:00, 5:30
tɛɛ kàw móoŋ hǎa hâa móoŋ khə̄ŋ	From nine to five-thirty.
wán can, wán súk	Monday, Friday
tɛɛ wán can hǎa wán súk	From Monday through Friday.
sàw, khām	morning, night
tɛɛ sàw hǎa khām	From morning to dark.
mỳy nìi, mỳy ȳyn	today, tomorrow
tɛɛ mỳy nìi hǎa mỳy ȳyn	From today to tomorrow.
mýaŋ, wíaŋcan, lŭaŋphābaaŋ	city, Vientiane, Luang Phrabang
tɛɛ mýaŋ wíaŋcan hǎa mýaŋ lŭaŋphābaaŋ	From the city of Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.
hýan	house
tɛɛ hýan khɔ̂j hǎa hýan càw	From my house to yours.

M-2

sǎj	where (question)
tɛɛ sǎj hǎa sǎj?	From where to where?
mỳy, daj, mỳy daj	day, which (question), what day
tɛɛ mỳy daj hǎa mỳy daj?	From what day to what day?

wéeláa, wéeláa daj	time, when (question)
tɛɛ wéeláa daj hǎa wéeláa daj?	From when to when?
móoŋ, cák móoŋ	clock, watch, o'clock; what time?
tɛɛ cák móoŋ hǎa cák móoŋ?	From what time to what time?
câak, thǒŋ	from; to reach, get to
câak sǎj thǒŋ sǎj?	From where to where?

M-3

kháplōt	drive
láaw si kháplōt {câak / tɛɛ} wíaŋcan paj lǔaŋ phābaan	He is going to drive from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.
khɨɨ, hýabin	ride, airplane
láaw si khɨɨ hýabin {câak / tɛɛ} wíaŋcan paj lǔaŋ phābaaŋ	He is going to fly from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.
lōtdoojsǎan	inter-city bus
láaw si khɨɨ lōtdoojsǎan {câak / tɛɛ} wíaŋcan paj lǔaŋ phābaaŋ	He is going to take an inter-city bus from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.

dəəntháaŋ	make a trip
láaw si dəəntháaŋ $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{câak}\\\text{tɛɛ}\end{array}\right.$ wíaŋcan paj lŭaŋ phābaaŋ	He is going to make a trip from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.

M-4

hòot, sâaŋ, thánɔ̆n	reach, get to; build, street
phə̄n cáʔ sâaŋ thánɔ̆n $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{câak}\\\text{tɛɛ}\end{array}\right.$ bàan nìi paj $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{thɔ̆ŋ}\\\text{hăa}\\\text{hòot}\end{array}\right.$ bàan nàn	They will build a road from this village to that village.
sɔ̂ɔmsɛ́ɛm	mend, repair, restore
phə̄n si sɔ̂ɔmsɛ́ɛm thánɔ̆n $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{câak}\\\text{tɛɛ}\end{array}\right.$ bàan nìi paj $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{thɔ̆ŋ}\\\text{hăa}\\\text{hòot}\end{array}\right.$ bàan nàn	They will repair the road from this village to that one.
phúun	pile up, heap up
phə̄n cáʔ phúun thánɔ̆n $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{câak}\\\text{tɛɛ}\end{array}\right.$ bàan nìi paj $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{hòot}\\\text{hăa}\\\text{thɔ̆ŋ}\end{array}\right.$ bàan nàn	They are going to raise the level of the road from this village to that one.

M-5

khɔ̂j si ḳháp lōt cón $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{hòot}\\\text{thɔ̆ŋ}\end{array}\right.$ lŭaŋ phābaaŋ	I'll drive until I get to Luang Phrabang.

aanjūʔ, jūū nám	age, live with
láaw jūū nám phɔ̄ɔmɛ̄ɛ láaw con $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{thə̆ŋ}\\\text{hɔ̀ɔt}\end{matrix}\right.$ aanjūʔ láaw dàj sáaw-ét pii	He lived with his parents until he reached the age of 21.
thâa, mýa (bàan)	wait for; go home, return home
khɔ̂j si thâa láaw con $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{hɔ̀ɔt}\\\text{thə̆ŋ}\end{matrix}\right.$ wéeláa mýa bàan	I'll wait for him until it's time to go home.
phānjáanjáam, sútthàaj	try, attempt; last, final
khɔ̂j si phānjáanjáam paj con $\left\{\begin{matrix}\text{thə̆ŋ}\\\text{hɔ̀ɔt}\end{matrix}\right.$ mỳy sútthàaj	I'll keep trying until the last day.

C-1

A. láaw kháp lōt tɛ̄ɛ sǎj hǎa sǎj?	He drove from where to where?
B. láaw kháp lōt tɛ̄ɛ hýan láaw hǎa hóoŋkaan láaw	He drove from his house to his office.

C-2

A. càw si jūū nìi tɛ̄ɛ mỳy daj hǎa mỳy daj?	You will be here from what day to what day?
B. khɔ̂j si jūū nìi tɛ̄ɛ mỳy wáncan hǎa mỳy wán aathīt	I will be here from Monday to Sunday.

C-3

A. càw si kháplōt câak wíaŋcan paj thə̌ŋ sǎj?	You are going to drive from Vientiane to where?
B. khɔ̂j si kháplōt câak wíaŋcan paj thə̌ŋ lǔaŋ phābaaŋ	I'm going to drive from Vientiane to Luang Phrabang.
A. lɛ̀ɛw càw si hēt njǎŋ?	Then what will you do?
B. khɔ̂j si khīī hýabin câak lǔaŋ phābaaŋ paj mýaŋ sǐŋ	I'll fly from Luang Phrabang to Muong Sing.

C-4

A. càw si thâa láaw con thə̌ŋ cák móoŋ?	Until what time are you going to wait for him?
B. khɔ̂j si thâa con thə̌ŋ síp sɔ̌ɔŋ móoŋ	I'll wait for him until twelve o'clock.

ຫລັງຈາກການຝຶກຫັດຈົນລ່ຽນດີແລ້ວ ທ່ານລອງຖາມນັກຮຽນເບິ່ງດູ ຂະເຈົ້າຈະຮຽນພາສາລາວໄປຮອດເດືອນໃດ? ຫລືວ່າຂະເຈົ້າຈະຮຽນພາສາລາວແຕ່ເດືອນໃດໄປຫາເດືອນໃດ? ແລະມື້ນຶ່ງຂະເຈົ້າຮຽນແຕ່ຈັກໂມງຫາຈັກໂມງ? ປະດິດເລື່ອງປະກອບຂຶ້ນຕື່ມອີກເບິ່ງດູ! ຖ້າຫາກທ່ານແຕ່ງເລື່ອງທີ່ເປັນໜ້າສົນໃຈຂຶ້ນ ມັນຈະຊ່ອຍໃນການຮຽນຂອງນັກຮຽນໄດ້ຫລາຍທີ່ສຸດ. ເລື່ອງທີ່ທ່ານແຕ່ງຂຶ້ນກໍຄວນພຍາຍາມໃຫ້ມັນເໝາະສົມກັບວຽກການອັນແທ້ຈິງຂອງນັກຮຽນ. ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ ສຳລັບພວກທີ່ເປັນນັກການທູດ ທ່ານກໍຄວນແຕ່ງເລື່ອງທີ່ກ່ຽວກັບວຽກບ້ານການເມືອງ; ຫລືຖ້າຫາກຂະເຈົ້າເປັນພັທນາກອນກໍແຕ່ງໄປໃນດ້ານການປູກການຝັງແລະລ້ຽງສັດ ແລະດ້ານການສ້າງສາທາງ, ດັ່ງນີ້ຕໍ່ໄປ.

NOTES

In Lao there are several ways to refer to an extent of space or period of time that is bounded on both ends.

1) tɛɛ ... hǎa is used if 'static' space or duration of time time is referred to:

tɛɛ mýaŋ wíaŋcan hǎa mýaŋ lǔaŋ phābaŋ	'From Vientiane to Luang Prabang.'
tɛɛ kàw móoŋ hǎa hâa móoŋ khə̄ŋ	'from 9:00 a.m. to 5:30 p.m.'

2) If emphasis is on motion between two points in space, câak / tɛɛ ... paj (hǎa) is used.

láaw si kháplōt $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{câak}\\ \text{tɛɛ}\end{array}\right.$ wíaŋcan paj (hǎa) lǔaŋ phābaaŋ

'He will drive from Vientiane to Luang Prabang.'

Frequently the means of transportation is indicated in constructions of this type (khīī hýa, etc.).

3) If emphasis is on reaching a certain limit or goal. thə̌ŋ 'to reach', hǎa 'to or towards', or hɔ̀ɔt 'to arrive at' may be used:

phə̄n cáʔ sâaŋ thánǒn $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{câak}\\ \text{tɛɛ}\end{array}\right.$ bàan nìi paj $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{thə̌ŋ}\\ \text{hǎa}\\ \text{hɔ̀ɔt}\end{array}\right.$ bàan nàn

'They will build a road from this village to that village'

The reference is usually to a known goal or limit.

4) con ... $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{hɔ̀ɔt}\\ \text{thə̌ŋ}\end{array}\right.$ is used to indicate that some activity will proceed only until a certain limit is reached. It may not be known when that limit will be reached.

khɔ̂j si thâa láaw con $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{hɔ̀ɔt}\\ \text{thə̌ŋ}\end{array}\right.$ wéeláa mýa bàan

'I will wait for her until it's time to go home. (but no longer)'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) khácàw hían ______ kàw móoŋ sàw ______ bāāj sīī móoŋ
(They study from 9:00 to 4:00 p.m.)

(b) jūū mýaŋ améelīkaa khón sūan màak hēt kaan tɛ̄ɛ̄ ________
hǎa __________?
(In America most people work from what day to what day?)

(c) _______ tɛ̄ɛ̄ wíaŋcan hǎa lǔaŋ phābaaŋ kin wéeláa ________
(It takes one hour to fly from Vientiane to Luang Prabang.)

(d) càw dàj hían pháasǎa láaw ________ bóthían daj ________
bóthían daj?
(You studied Lao from what lesson to what lesson?)

(e) càw si kháplōt ________ wíaŋcan ________ pâaksée bɔɔ,
lỹy wāā càw si khīī hýa paj?
(Are you going to drive a car or go by boat from Vientiene to Pakse?)

(f) phùak khón ciin cáˀ sâaŋ thánǒn tɛ̄ɛ̄ mýaŋ khácàw paj ______
mýaŋ daj?
(The Chinese are going to build a road from their city to what city?)

Answers: 1(a)tɛ̄ɛ̄... hǎa (b)mỳy daj... mỳy daj (c)khīī
hýabin... nȳŋ sūamóoŋ (d)tɛ̄ɛ̄... hǎa
(e){câak ... paj (f){hɔ̀ɔt
{tɛ̄ɛ̄ {thə̌ŋ

(g) __________ wíaŋcan __________ mýaŋ phóon hóoŋ míi hók síp kiilóomēt
(It is 60 kilometers from Vientiane to Phonhong.)

(h) khón améelīkan baaŋkhón jūū nám phɔ̄ɔ̄mɛ̄ɛ̄ khácàw ________ aanjūʔ dàj sáaw-ét pii
(Some Americans live with their parents up to age 21.)

(i) khácàw si nāŋ lîn jūū nìi __________ wéeláa mýa bàan
(They will sit here playing until it's time to go home. (and no longer).'

(j) khácàw si ___________ phāk jūū mýaŋ nìi __________ sɔ̌ɔŋ aathīt
(They won't stay in this town as long as 2 weeks.)

Answers: (g) {tɛɛ / câak} ... paj hǎa (h) con {hɔ̀ɔt / thə́ŋ} (i) con {hɔ̀ɔt / thə̌ŋ}
(j) bɔ̄ɔ... thə̌ŋ

CYCLE 59

M-1

cép thɔ̀ɔŋ	stomach ache
láaw cép thɔ̀ɔŋ	He has a stomach ache.
pûat hǔa	a headache
láaw pûat hǔa	He has a headache.
pen khâj	to have fever
láaw pen khâj	He has a fever.
pen wát	to have a cold
láaw pen wát	He has a cold.
thɔ̂ɔk thɔ̀ɔŋ	to have diarrhea
láaw thɔ̂ɔk thɔ̀ɔŋ	He has diarrhea.
pen aj	to have a cough
láaw pen aj	He has a cough.
wín hǔa	to be dizzy
láaw wín hǔa	He is dizzy.

M-2

pen njǎŋ	what's wrong
láaw pen njǎŋ?	What's wrong with him?
bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj	sick
láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj bɔɔ?	Is he sick?

kháj khŷn	getting better
láaw kháj (khŷn) dɛ̄ɛ̄ lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	Is he getting better?
aakaan	condition
aakaan khɔ̌ɔŋ láaw pen nɛ́ɛwdaj?	How is his condition?
bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj lǎaj	very sick
láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj lǎaj bɔɔ?	Is he very sick?
hǎaj, sáw	recover
láaw $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{hǎaj}\\\text{sáw}\end{array}\right.$ lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	Has he recovered?

M-3

bɔ̄ɔ̄ hàaj hɛ́ɛŋ paandaj!	Not very serious.
hàaj hɛ́ɛŋ lǎaj!	Very serious (critical).
dii khŷn dɛ̄ɛ̄ lɛ̀ɛw	A little better!
dii khŷn lǎaj lɛ̀ɛw!	Much better!
sūt sóom lóŋ kwāākāw	Worse than before!
phɔ́ɔpaan kāw	Still the same.

C-1

A. càw pen njǎŋ?	What's wrong with you?
B. khɔ̂j cép thɔ̀ɔŋ	I have a stomach ache.

C-2

A. láaw bɔ̄ɔ sábaaj bɔɔ?	Is he sick?
B. mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, láaw bɔ̄ɔ sábaaj, láaw pen aj	Yes, he is sick; he has a cough.

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນສົມມຸດເອົາເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ຂະເຈົ້າໄປຢ້ຽມຢາມເພື່ອນຄົນນຶ່ງທີ່ກຳລັງນອນຮັກສາຕົວຢູ່ໂຮງໝໍ.
ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຄົນນຶ່ງສົມມຸດເປັນຄົນເຈັບຊຶ່ງຈະເປັນຜູ້ຕອບຄຳຖາມກ່ຽວກັບອາການຂອງລາວ.

NOTES

1) cép means 'to hurt'. It is used to refer to the feeling one has right after an injury; hence it is usually temporary. pûat means 'to ache'. It normally refers to a more lasting sensation than cép. cép húa would refer to a bump on the head, whereas, pûat hǔa would refer to the 'headache' that might come from the bump. In some cases the above distinction doesn't exist and cép is one kind of painful sensation and pûat is another.

2) pen + name of disease may also be used to indicate what particular ailment one has, such as láaw pen wát 'He has a cold.' tít wát means 'to catch cold.'

3) wín 'to be dizzy' may be followed by hǔa 'head'. wín hǔa means 'to be dizzy (in the head)'. thɔ̂ɔk means 'to pour out (as with liquids, etc.)'; when thɔ̂ɔk occurs with thɔ̀ɔŋ it means 'dysentery, diarrhea'.

4) Either of the following may be used interchangeably to inquire about the health of a person:

láaw pen njăŋ?	'What's wrong with him?'
láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj bɔɔ?	'Is he sick?'
aakaan khɔ̆ɔŋ láaw pen nɛ́ɛwdaj?	'How is his condition?'

To inquire whether a person's sickness is subsiding:

láaw kháj (khŷn) dɛ̄ɛ̄ lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	'Is he getting better?'
láaw hăaj (sáw) lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	'Has she recovered?'

5) khŷn 'up, go up' and lóŋ 'down, go down' are both used after stative verbs to indicate a situation that is in process of change; khŷn indicates an 'upward' change (dii khŷn 'getting better); whereas, lóŋ indicates a 'downward' change(sūt sóom lóŋ 'becoming worse, worsening'.) kwāā kāw (lit. 'than old') 'than before' may occur after lóŋ or khŷn. phɔ́ɔpaan kāw (lit. equal in extent to old) 'still the same' is used to refer to conditions that have not undergone change.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences according to the English:

(a) láaw __________ thɔ̀ɔŋ (He has a stomach ache.)

(b) khɔ̂j __________ sábaaj _____ (I'm very sick.)

(c) ____________________________ (The situation hasn't changec

(d) càw ________________________ (What's the matter with you?

(e) láaw __________ aj __________ (Does he have a cough?)

(f) ____________________ khâjwát (He has flu.)

Answers: 1(a)cép (b)bɔ̄ɔ̄... lăaj (c)phɔ́ɔpaan kāw (d)pen njăŋ (e)pen ... bɔɔ (f)láaw pen

(g) láaw hăaj lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ? ____________________

(Has he recovered yet? Not yet.)

(h) khɔ̂j pûat hŭa lăaj ____________________

(My head hurts worse than before.)

(i) láaw ______________________________thɔ̀ɔŋ

(He doesn't have a stomach ache.)

(j) láaw máa hēt kaan bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj phɔ̄wāā láaw cép __________

(He couldn't come to work because he had a bad stomach ache.)

(k) wéeláa háw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj háw khúan cāʔ ______________

(When we aren't well, we should go to the doctor's.)

(l) thāan mɔ̆ɔ bɔ̂ɔk wāā láaw _________, láaw âat cāʔ tɔ̀ɔŋ paj nɔ́ɔn jūū hóoŋmɔ̆ɔ

(The doctor said he was very sick. He may have to go to the hospital.)

(m) háw bɔ̄ɔ̄ khúan paj jūū kàj khón thīī _________ phɔ̄wāā háw âat cāʔ _________.

(We shouldn't go stay with people who have colds because we might catch cold.)

(n) mỳy wáan nìi láaw pûat hŭa tɛ̄ɛ̄ wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ phākphɔ̄ɔ̄n, mỳy nìi aakaan khɔ̆ɔŋ láaw ______________.

(Yesterday he had a headache but he didn't rest. Today his condition has become much more serious.)

Answers: (g)njáŋ (bɔ̄ɔ̄ hăaj) (h)kwāā kāw (i)bɔ̄ɔ̄ cép (j)thɔ̀ɔŋ lăaj (k)paj hăa mɔ̆ɔ (l)bɔ̄ɔ̄ sabaaj lăaj (m)pen wát... tít wát (n)hàaj hɛ́ɛŋ khŷn

CYCLE 60

M-1

máa kaan	come to work
pen njǎŋ láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa kaan?	Why doesn't he come to work?
thǎam	question, ask
pen njǎŋ láaw cȳŋ thǎam?	Why did he ask?
tɔ̂ɔp	answer
pen njǎŋ láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ tɔ̂ɔp?	Why doesn't he answer?
phākphɔ̄ɔ̄n	take a rest
pen njǎŋ láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ phākphɔ̄ɔ̄n?	Why doesn't he take a rest?
kin	eat
pen njǎŋ láaw cȳŋ kin?	Why did he eat (it)?
dàj paj	get to go
pen njǎŋ láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj paj?	Why didn't he get to go?

M-2

bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj	sick
phɔ̄wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj	Because he is sick.
khâwcaj	understand
phɔ̄wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ khâwcaj	Because he doesn't understand.

hùu	know
phɔ̄wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùu	Because he didn't know.
míi wéeláa	have time
phɔ̄wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi wéeláa	Because he doesn't have time.
hı̌w	to be hungry
phɔ̄wāā láaw hı̌w	Because he is hungry.
máa sàa	came late
phɔ̄wāā láaw máa sàa	Because he came late.

M-3

sỳy, māj, míi	buy, new, have
láaw sỳy lōt māj phɔ̄wāā láaw míi ŋə́n lǎaj	He bought a new car because he has a lot of money.
khǎaj, kāw	sell, old
láaw sỳy lōt māj phɔ̄wāā láaw dàj khǎaj lōt kāw láaw	He bought a new car because he has sold his old car.
aw, mía	pick, get, take; wife
láaw sỳy lōt māj phɔ̄wāā láaw si aw mía	He bought a new car because he is getting married.
tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋ ŋáan	get married
láaw sỳy lōt māj phɔ̄wāā láaw si tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋ ŋáan	He bought a new car because he is getting married

dəənthа́aŋ	travel
láaw sỳy lōt māj phɔ̄wāā láaw si dəənthа́aŋ	He bought a new car because he is going to make a trip.

C-1

A. pen njǎŋ láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa kaan?	Why didn't he come to work?
B. phɔ̄wāā láaw bɔɔ sábaaj	Because he is sick.

C-2

A. pen njǎŋ láaw cȳŋ sỳy lōt māj?	Why did he buy a new car?
B. láaw sỳy lōt māj phɔ̄wāā láaw si aw mía	He bought a new car because he is getting married.

C-3

A. láaw hēt njǎŋ?	What did he do?
B. láaw phākphɔ̄ɔ̄n	He took a vacation.
A. pen njǎŋ láaw cȳŋ phākphɔ̄ɔ̄n?	Why did he take a vacation?
B. láaw phākphɔ̄ɔ̄n phɔ̄wāā láaw míi wéeláa	He took a vacation because he had the time.

ຕົວປັນຫາສົມມຸດຂຶ້ນ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນສໍ້ຖາມແລະໂຕ້ວາທີກັນເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ເປັນຫຍັງ? ຫລື ດ້ວຍເຫດໃດ? ເຫດການແນວໃດຈຶ່ງເກີດຂຶ້ນ ຫລືເປັນໄປໃນທຳນອງຕ່າງໆ.

NOTES

1) The word order in the pen njǎŋ type of question is:

pen njǎŋ	+	NP	+	cȳŋ	+	VP
pen njǎŋ	+	láaw		cȳŋ		bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa
(Why		he		then		not come)

'Why didn't he come?'

2) pen njǎŋ is always in sentence initial position. hēt njǎŋ 'Why, for what purpose' always comes after the MV in the sentence. láaw si paj hēt njǎŋ jūu hàan tát phǒm?

3) The usual response to pen njǎŋ + Sentence is phɔ̄waā + Sentence:

Q:	pen njǎŋ láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa?	'Why didn't he come?'
A:	phɔ̄waā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj	'Because he was ill.'

cȳŋ never occurs in responses with phɔ̄waā.

In highly stylized spoken or written language the question may be answered as follows:

Q:	pen njǎŋ láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa?	'Why didn't he come?'
A:	láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa	'He was ill; he, therefore, didn't come.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) mỳy nìi _________ láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa hóonhían
(Why didn't he come to school today?)

Answers: 1(a)pen njǎŋ

(b) láaw bɔ̄ɔ tɔ̂ɔp khám thǎam khácàw __________ láaw bɔ̄ɔ hùu khám tɔ̂ɔp

(He didn't answer their question because he didn't know the answer.)

(c) láaw bɔ̄ɔ jâak míi mía láaw __________ bɔ̄ɔ tɛ̄ɛŋŋáan

(He doesn't want a wife, so he hasn't got married.)

(d) láaw bɔ̄ɔ thâa khácàw phɔ̄wāa láaw __________, mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?

(He didn't wait for them, because he didn't have much time, is that so?)

(e) thâawāa láaw míi ŋə́n lǎaj __________ si sỳy lōt māj

(If he had a lot of money, he'd buy a new car.)

(f) __________ láaw __________ thǎam hǎa khácàw?

(Why did he ask for them?)

(g) lōt khán nàn lɛ̄ɛn bɔ̄ɔ dii paandaj láaw cȳŋ __________

(That car doesn't run very well, so he's selling it cheap.)

(h) khácàw hēt wìak __________ khácàw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ phākphɔ̄ɔn.

(Their work is not yet finished, so they are not resting.)

(i) láaw kinkhâw lɛ̀ɛw ______________ bɔ̄ɔ hǐw

(He's already eaten, so he isn't hungry.)

(j) __________ càw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ bɔ̂ɔk láaw, càw bɔ̄ɔ jâak hâj láaw hùu bɔɔ?

(Why didn't you tell him? Didn't you want him to know?)

Answers: (b)phɔ̄wāa (c)cȳŋ (d)bɔ̄ɔ míi wéeláa lǎaj (e)láaw cȳŋ (f)pen njǎŋ... cȳŋ (g)khǎaj thŷyk (h)njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ lɛ̀ɛw (i)láaw cȳŋ (j)pen njǎŋ

CYCLE 61

M-1

iiduuton	pity
khɔ̂j iiduuton láaw	I pity him.
hāk	love
khɔ̂j hāk láaw	I love her.
jàan	to be afraid
khɔ̂j jàan láaw	I am afraid of him.
hěn caj	to empathize
khɔ̂j hěn caj láaw	I empathize with him.
aaj	to feel bashful
khɔ̂j aaj láaw	I feel bashful (in front of) him.
sáŋ	dislike, hate
khɔ̂j sáŋ láaw	I hate him.
keeŋcaj	to have consideration for
khɔ̂j keeŋcaj láaw	I have consideration for him.

M-2

phūūsǎaw	young unmarried girl
càw míi khúam hùusýk nɛ́ɛw daj tɔ̄ɔ phūūsǎaw phūū nìi?	What kind of feelings do you have towards this young unmarried girl?

náaj thāhǎan	military officer
càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw daj tɔ̄ɔ̄ náaj thāhǎan phūū nìi?	What kind of feelings do you have towards this military officer?
khónsàj	servant
càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw daj tɔ̄ɔ̄ khónsàj phūū nìi?	What kind of feelings do you have towards this servant?
nāk thòot	prisoner
càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw daj tɔ̄ɔ̄ nākthòot phūū nìi?	What kind of feelings do you have towards this prisoner?
khón khɔ̌ɔtháan	beggar
càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw daj tɔ̄ɔ̄ khón khɔ̌ɔtháan phūū nìi?	What kind of feelings do you have towards this beggar?
phɔ̄ɔ̄khàa	merchant
càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw daj tɔ̄ɔ̄ phɔ̄ɔ̄khàa phūū nìi?	What kind of feelings do you have towards this merchant?
thāān mɔ̌ɔ	doctor
càw míi khúam hùusýk néεw daj tɔ̄ɔ̄ thāān mɔ̌ɔ phūū nìi?	What kind of feelings do you have towards this doctor?

C-1

A. càw bɔ̄ɔ̄ hěn caj láaw bɔɔ?	Don't you empathize with him?
B. khɔ̂j hěn caj láaw	I empathize with him.

C-2

A. càw míi khúam hùusýk néɛwdaj tɔɔ phɔ̄ɔkhàa phūu nìi?	What kind of feelings do you have towards this merchant?
B. khɔ̂j míi khúam hùusýk hěncaj láaw	I have a feeling of empathy with him.

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເລົ່າເຣື່ອງຂອງບຸກຄົນຕ່າງໆທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ຈັກດີ ແລະໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າບອກເຖິງຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກຂອງຂະເຈົ້າ ຂອງຕົນຕໍ່ບຸກຄົນເຫລົ່ານັ້ນ ພ້ອມດ້ວຍເຫດຜົນວ່າເປັນຫຍັງຈຶ່ງເປັນດັ່ງນັ້ນ.

NOTES

1) Verbs of Emotion may be:

(a) Transitive Verb:

khɔ̂j hāk láaw	'I love her.'
càw sáŋ khɔ̂j bɔɔ?	'Do you hate me?'

(b) Stative Verbs:

láaw aaj càw	(She is shy of you.) 'Your presence causes her to be shy.'

(c) Or compounds with -caj 'heart, soul, spirit':

khɔ̂j hěncaj láaw	'I empathize with him'. (I associate myself with his feelings.)
khɔ̂j keeŋcaj láaw	'I have consideration for his feelings.'

keeŋcaj may be used in the negative jāa keeŋcaj with the meaning 'Don't be afraid of imposing on me (by making a request, etc.)'

2) khúam is a noun formative (like -ness in English). Noun Compounds with khúam as the head of the compound are Abstract Nouns, khúam hùusýk 'feeling', khúamhāk 'love', khúamhĕncaj 'empathy', khúamaaj 'bashfulness', khúam penhūāŋ 'concern', etc.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences:

(a) phùak khɔ̂j __________ láaw phɔ̄wāā láaw pen khón khîi khàan
(We don't pity him because he is a lazy person.)

(b) khácàw si tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋŋaan kan dyan nâa phɔ̄wāā khácàw __________ máa sɔ̆ɔŋ pii lɛ̀ɛw
(They'll get married next month since they have been in love for 2 years.)

(c) láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi __________ njăŋ __________ khácàw
(He doesn't have any feelings toward them.)

(d) phȳan láaw __________ láaw tɛ̄ɛ̄ khácàw sɔ̄ɔ̄j njăŋ láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj
(His friends empathize with him but they can't help him any.)

(e) láaw aw lɔ̄t khɔ̂j paj sàj dooj bɔ̄ɔ̄ ______________
(He took my car and used it without considering me.)

Answers: 1(a)bɔ̄ɔ̄ iiduuton (b)hāk kan (c)khúam hùusýk... tɔ̄ɔ̄ (d)hĕn caj (e)keeŋcaj khɔ̂j

(f) ______________ bɔ̄ɔ̄ nāpthy̌y náaj khɔ̌ɔŋ khácàw
(Some servants don't respect their bosses.)

(g) náaj thīī dii cáˀ tɔ̀ɔŋ ______________ khón khɔ̌ɔŋ láaw
(A boss that is good must love and empathize with his people.)

(h) láaw bɔ̂ɔk wāā láaw __________ phɔ̄ɔ khàa thīī bɔ̄ɔ̄ sátsȳy
(He said he dislikes merchants that are not honest.)

(i) láaw _______wāā khɔ̂j cáˀ hēt hâj láaw __________
(He's afraid I will make him shy.)

(j) phə̄n bɔ̂ɔk bɔ̄ɔ̄ hâj láaw aaj __________ phə̄n pen thāān mɔ̌ɔ
(He told her not to be shy because he is a doctor.))

2. Express how you feel about the following:

(a) The President (b) The Lao people (c) dogs
(d) your wife or sister (e) your children
(f) dishonest people (g) your religion
(h) meeting strangers

Answers: 1(f)khónsàj baaŋ khón (g)hāk lɛ̄ hɛ̌n caj (h)sáŋ (i)jåan... aaj (j)phə̄wāā 2Your answers will depend on how you feel about each of these.

CYCLE 62

M-1

khīt	think
khɔ̂j khīt wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa	I didn't think he was coming.
hùu	know
khɔ̂j hùu wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa	I knew she wasn't coming.
khâwcaj	understand
khɔ̂j khâwcaj wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa	I understood he didn't come.
dàj njín	hear
khɔ̂j dàj njín wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa	I heard he didn't come.
wàw	say, speak
khɔ̂j wàw wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa	I said he didn't come.
bɔ̂ɔk	tell
khɔ̂j bɔ̂ɔk wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa	I told you he didn't come.

M-2

sȳa	believe
càw sȳa wāā jāāŋ daj?	What do you believe?
tɔ̂ɔp	answer
càw tɔ̂ɔp wāā jāāŋ daj ?	How did you answer?

thǎam	to question
càw thǎam wāā jāāŋ daj?	What did you ask?
hùusýk	feel
càw hùusýk wāā jāāŋ daj?	How do you feel about that?
sɔ̌ŋsǎj	suspect
càw sɔ̌ŋsǎj wāā jāāŋ daj?	What did you suspect?
thúaj	predict, guess
càw thúaj wāā jāāŋ daj?	What did you predict?

M-3

lỳaŋ, mýaŋ	about, story, matter; city, country
khɔ̂j hùu lỳaŋ mýaŋ láaw	I know about Laos.
kaan mýaŋ	politics
khɔ̂j hùu lỳaŋ kaan mýaŋ	I know about politics.
sɔ̌ŋkháam	war
khɔ̂j hùu lỳaŋ sɔ̌ŋkháam	I know about war.
pûuk, khâw	grow, raise; rice
khɔ̂j hùu lỳaŋ kaan pûuk khâw	I know about growing rice.
lìaŋ, sát	feed, nourish, raise; animal
khɔ̂j hùu lỳaŋ kaan lìaŋ sát	I know about raising animals.

C-1

A. càw khīt wāā láaw si máa bɔɔ?	Do you think he will come?
B. khɔ̂j khīt wāā láaw si máa	I think he will come.

C-2

A. càw khâwcaj wāā jāāŋdaj	How did you understand it?
B. khɔ̂j khâwcaj wāā láaw si bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa	I understood he was not coming.

C-3

A. càw hùu njǎŋ?	What do you know?
B. khɔ̂j hùu lỳaŋ mýaŋ láaw	I know about Laos.

ບົດນີ້ມີຈຸດປະສົງຢາກໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຮູ້ຈັກໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ "ວ່າ" ເຮົາໃຊ້ຄຳນີ້ເວລາໃດ? ນັກຮຽນເຂົ້າໃຈດີແລ້ວບໍ່?

NOTES

1) Verbs of saying, thinking, etc. frequently have sentences as complements; when they do, waa occurs obligatorily as a connective:

khɔ̂j khīt wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa	'I didn't think he was coming.'
láaw hùu wāā càw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj lǎaj	'He knew you were very ill.'

2) jāāŋ daj 'what, how, in what way' is the usual question form with sentences like those above:

Q:	càw tôɔp wāā jāāŋ daj?	'What did you answer?'
A:	khôj tôɔp wāā aw paj páˀ wàj phùn	'I said, take it over there and leave it.'

3) Although lỳaŋ 'story, matter' is a noun, it functions somewhat like a preposition in English when it occurs after hùu 'to know (a fact)', thus hùu lỳaŋ mýaŋ láaw (lit. know matter Laos) 'to know about Laos'.

4) kaan is a Noun formative. Noun compounds with kaan are 'action nominals', i.e. they refer to actions and correspond roughly to the -ing form of the verb as in Singing songs is fun. kaan pûuk khâw 'Growing rice', kaan lìaŋ sát 'Raising animals', etc.

5) khīt 'to think' is sometimes pronounced khȳt.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) khôj khīt wāā càw míi khúam sɔ̌ncaj __________ mýaŋ láaw

(I thought you had some interest in Laos.)

(b) láaw ______________ cáˀ hēt njǎŋ dii

(He doesn't know what he should do (what would be good to do)).

(c) khɔj ______________ pii nìi aahǎan cáˀ phɛ́ɛŋ khŷn îik

(I heard that food will become a little more expensive this year.)

Answers: 1(a)lỳaŋ (b)bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùu wāā (c)dàj njín wāā

(d) phùak nāk-hían thǎam khɔ̂j __________ jūū náj mýaŋ láaw
(The students asked me about raising animals in Laos.)

(e) khɔ̂j hùusýk wāā láaw __________ náj lỳaŋ nìi paandaj
(I don't feel he is very interested in this matter.)

(f) khácàw __________ láaw pen thāhǎan wîatnáam nɨ̌a.
(They suspect he is a North Vietnamese soldier.)

(g) láaw hùu lýaŋ kaan mýaŋ tɛ̄ɛ wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ hùu __________
(He knows politics but he doesn't know war.)

(h) __________ láaw âat cá? bɔ̄ɔ hùu lỳaŋ kaan lìaŋ sát dii paandaj
(The villagers suspect that he may not know much about raising animals.)

(i) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ ______________ thǎam láaw phɔ̄wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ hùu lỳaŋ nìi
(I don't want to ask him because he doesn't know anything about this.)

(j) (j) láaw ________ bɔ̄ɔ dàj ________ láaw bɔ̄ɔ míi wéeláa
(He was unable to answer that he didn't have time.)

Answers: (d)lỳaŋ kaan lìaŋ sát (e)bɔ̄ɔ sǒncaj (f)sǒŋsǎj wāā (g)lỳaŋ sǒŋkháam (h)sáaw bàan sǒŋsǎj wāā (i)jâak (j)tɔ̂ɔp... wāā

CYCLE 63

M-1

njàak	to be difficult, hard
khɔ̂j khīt wāā njàak lǎaj	I think it's very difficult.
sádûak	to be convenient
khɔ̂j khīt wāā sádûak lǎaj	I think it's very convenient.
njûŋ, njûŋ njàak	to be confused; to be complicated and difficult
khɔ̂j khīt wāā njûŋ njàak lǎaj	I think it's very complicated.
kandaan	to be dangerous (as of environment)
khɔ̂j khīt wāā kandaan lǎaj	I think it's very dangerous.
pɔ̂ɔt, pháj	to be free from, danger
khɔ̂j khīt wāā pɔ̂ɔt pháj lǎaj	I think it's very safe.
sɔ̀ok, dii	luck; good, well
khɔ̂j khīt wāā sɔ̀ok dii lǎaj	I think it's very good luck.

M-2

njàak bɔɔ?	Is it difficult?
sádûak bɔɔ?	Is it convenient?
sáʔâat bɔɔ?	Is it clean?
pỳan bɔɔ?	Is it dirty?
phɛ́ɛŋ bɔɔ?	Is it expensive?
thŷyk bɔɔ?	Is it cheap?

M-3

sɔ̄ɔj	help, assist
mán njàak lǎaj láaw cȳŋ hâj khácàw máa sɔ̄ɔj	It's so difficult he let them come help.
phāk	stay (temporary)
mán sádûak lǎaj láaw cȳŋ jâak máa phāk jūū nìi	It's so convenient he wants to come stay here.
khɔ̌ɔ, njàaj, bɔ̄ɔn, ȳyn	ask, move, place, other
mán njûŋ njàak lǎaj láaw cȳŋ khɔ̌ɔ njàaj paj bɔ̄ɔn ȳyn	The situation is so mixed up he wants to move to another place.
sīaŋ	to take a risk
mán kandaan lǎaj láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ sīaŋ	The situation is so dangerous he doesn't risk it.
tɔ̀ɔŋkaan, thāhǎan	need, soldier
mán pɔ̂ɔtpháj lǎaj láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ tɔ̀ɔŋkaan thāhǎan	The situation is so safe he doesn't need any soldiers.
sỳy, îik, sɛ̀ɛp	buy; more, again; delicious
mán sɛ̀ɛp lǎaj láaw cȳŋ sỳy îik.	It was so delicious he bought more.

M-4

wìak	task, work
wìak nìi njàak bɔɔ?	Is this job difficult?

hóoŋhɛ́ɛm, dàjhāp	hotel, receive
phāk jūū hóoŋhɛ́ɛm nìi dàjhāp khwáam sádûak bɔɔ?	Does this hotel have all the conveniences?
panhǎa	problem, trouble
panhǎa nìi njûŋ njàak bɔɔ?	Is this problem complex?
síiwīt, thə́ŋ, phúu	life, on, mountain
síiwīt jūū thə́ŋ phúu kandaan bɔɔ?	Is life in the mountains dangerous?
khêet, pótpɔ̄ɔj	area, liberate
khêet pótpɔ̄ɔj nìi pɔ̂ɔt pháj bɔɔ?	Is this liberated area safe?
aahǎan	food
aahǎan nìi sɛ̀ɛp bɔɔ?	Is this food delicious?

M-5

wìak nìi njàak lǎaj láaw cȳŋ hâj khácàw máa sɔ̄ɔj	This work is so complicated and difficult he had them come help.
hóoŋhɛ́ɛm nìi hâj khwáam sádûak lǎaj láaw cȳŋ jâak máa phāk jūū nìi	This hotel affords so many conveniences he likes to stay here.
wìak nìi njûŋ jàak lǎaj láaw cȳŋ khɔ̌ɔ njàaj paj bɔ̄ɔn ȳyn	The work here is so complicated he asked to move to another place.
síiwīt jūū thə́ŋ phúu kandaan lǎaj láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ jâak sīaŋ	Life in the mountains is so dangerous he doesn't want to risk it.

khêet pótpɔ̄ɔ̄j nìi pɔ̂ɔtpháj lǎaj láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ tɔ̀ɔŋkaan thāhǎan	This liberated area is so safe he doesn't need any soldiers.
khánǒm nìi sɛ̀ɛp lǎaj láaw cȳŋ cáʔ sỳy îik	This cake is so delicious he'll buy some more.

C-1

A. sádûak bɔɔ?	Is it convenient?
B. khɔ̂j khīt wāā sádûak lǎaj.	I think it's very convenient.

C-2

A. aahǎan nìi sɛ̀ɛp bɔɔ?	Is this food delicious?
B. aahǎan nìi sɛ̀ɛp lǎaj láaw cȳŋ cá sỳy îik	This food is so delicious he'll buy some more.

C-3

A. wìak nìi njàak lǎaj láaw cȳŋ hâj khácàw máa sɔ̄ɔ̄j, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	This work is so difficult that he had them come and help, didn't he?
B. mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw, wìak nìi njàak lǎaj láaw cȳŋ hǎj khácàw máa sɔ̄ɔ̄j	That's right, this work is so difficult that he had them come and help.

C-4

A. pen njăŋ láaw cȳŋ hâj khácàw máa sɔ̄ɔ̄j?	Why did he have them come to help?
B. láaw hâj khácàw máa sɔ̄ɔ̄j phɔ̄waā wìak nìi njàak lǎaj	He had them come to help because this work is very difficult.

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຫັດໃຊ້ຄຳວິເສດ (ງ່າຍ ຍາກ ແຊບ...) ດ້ວຍການຊີ້ແຈງເຖິງສິ່ງຕ່າງໆ ຫລືກິຣິຍາອາການຕ່າງໆ ພ້ອມທັງຄວາມຮູ້ສຶກຂອງຂະເຈົ້າຕໍ່ສິ່ງຂອງຫລືກິຣິຍາອາການຕ່າງໆເຫລົ່ານັ້ນ. ແລະເປັນຫຍັງ?

NOTES

1) The Subject is not expressed in Lao when the reference is to a general situation, except in certain situations:

Q:	kandaan bɔɔ?	'Is (it) dangerous?'
A:	bɔ̄ɔ̄ kandaan lǎaj	'(It) isn't very dangerous.'

In more complex sentences mán 'it' must be used:

mán njàak lǎaj láaw cȳŋ hâj khácàw máa sɔ̄ɔ̄j	'It's so difficult he let them come help.'

2) The So + Adjective + that + Sentence construction in English is expressed in Lao by:

V_s	+	lǎaj	+	NP (subject)	+	cȳŋ...
njàak		lǎaj		lǎaw		cȳŋ
(It is difficult		very		he		then...)

'It's so difficult that he... '

The such + Adjective + NP + that + S construction is expressed in Lao:

NP + V_s + lǎaj + NP (Subject) + cȳŋ...

wìak	nâasǒncaj	lǎaj	láaw	cȳŋ
(work	interesting	very	he	then...)

'such interesting work that he...)'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) láaw khīt wāā wìak nìi njàak lǎaj láaw cȳŋ jâak hâj càw sɔ̄ɔ̄j láaw

(b) khɔ̂j khɔ̂ɔpcaj lǎaj lǎaj thīī càw hâj khwáam sádûak

(c) láaw míi wìak njûŋ lǎaj láaw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùu wāā cáʔ hēt njǎŋ kɔ̄ɔ̄n

(d) khácàw bɔ̄ɔ̄ jâak nāŋ kàj láaw phɔ̄wāā khȳaŋ nūŋ láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sáˀâat

(e) láaw khīt wāā láaw sòok dii lǎaj phɔ̄wāā thāhǎan wîatkoŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ hěn láaw

---

Answers: 1(a)He thinks the work here is so hard that he would like to have you help him. (b)I am very appreciative that you have made it convenient. (c)He had such complicated work to do that he didn't know what to do first. (d)They don't want to sit near him because his clothes are dirty. (e)He thought he was very lucky because the Viet Cong didn't see him.

(f) kaan hēt wìak jūū hóoŋkaan khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ sádûak dii paandaj

(g) thāhǎan bɔ̄ɔ̄ hâj phùakháw paj phɔ̄wāā tháaŋ sên nìi bɔ̄ɔ̄ pɔ̂ɔtphój

(h) kaan dəənthaáŋ jūū náj khêet nìi kandaan lǎaj

(i) aahǎan phɛ́ɛŋ phɔ̄wāā bàan mýaŋ njûŋ njàak

(j) wéeláa kaan paj máa sádûak thūk sīŋ thūk jāāŋ kɔɔ thŷyk

Answers: (f)The work at my office is not very convenient. (g)The soldiers wouldn't let us go because this path is not safe. (h)Travelling in this area is very dangerous. (i)Food is expensive because the country is in a very precarious (difficult and dangerous) situation. (j)When going and coming are convenient everything is cheap.

CYCLE 64

M-1

sȳa	believe, trust
càw sȳa wāā láaw si sānāˀ sàn bɔɔ?	You believe that he will win, is that so?
sárúp (aw)	summarize, conclude
càw sárúp aw wāā láaw si sānāˀ sàn bɔɔ?	You conclude that he will win, is that so?
wǎŋ	hope
càw wǎŋ wāā láaw si sānā? sàn bɔɔ?	You hope that he will win, is that so?
káˀ	estimate, calculate, guess
càw káˀ wāā láaw si sānāˀ sàn bɔɔ?	You calculate that he will win, is that so?
fǎn	to dream
càw fǎn wāā láaw sānāˀ sàn bɔɔ?	You dreamed that he won, is that so?
thámnáaj	foretell
càw thámnáaj wāā láaw si sānāˀ sàn bɔɔ?	You foretell that he will win, is that so?
nɛ̄ɛcaj	to be sure, certain, confident
càw nɛ̄ɛcaj wāā láaw si sānāˀ sàn bɔɔ?	You are sure that he will win, is that so?

M-2

sānāʔ	win
wāā sàn lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j sȳa wāā láaw si sānāʔ.	That's how I see it. I believe that he will win.
sěŋ, sěŋdàj	take an exam, pass an exam
wāā sàn lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j sȳa wāā láaw si sěŋdàj	That's the way I see it. I believe that he will pass the exam.
dàj khŷn sàn, sàn	to be promoted, rank, grade, story, level
wāā sàn lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j sȳa wāā láaw si dàj khŷn sàn	That's how I see it. I believe that he will be promoted.
dàjhāp, sǎmrēt	receive, complete, to be successful
wāā sàn lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j sȳa wāā láaw si dàjhāp khwáam sǎmrēt	That's how I see it. I believe that he will be successful.
phāajphɛ̀ɛ	to be defeated
wāā sàn lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j sȳa wāā láaw si dàjhāp khwáam phāajphɛ̀ɛ	That's the way I see it. I believe that he will be defeated.
sěŋtók	to fail an exam
wāā sàn lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j sȳa wāā láaw si sěŋtók.	That's how I see it. I believe that he will not pass the examination.

M-3

khĭan	write
khĭan cāŋ sìi bɔɔ?	You write it like this, huh?
tát	cut
tát cāŋ sìi bɔɔ?	You cut it like this, huh?
hɔ̄ɔ	wrap, pack
hɔ̄ɔ cāŋ sìi bɔɔ?	You pack it like this, huh?
páˀ wàɟ	leave, abandon
páˀ wàɟ cāŋ sìi bɔɔ?	You leave it like this, huh?
aw ɟɔɔŋ kan khŷn	to stack something up
aw ɟɔɔŋ kan khŷn cāŋ sìi bɔɔ?	You stack them up like this, huh?
kɔ́ˀ, kan	to hook, each other
aw kɔ́ˀ kan cāŋ sìi bɔɔ?	You hook them together like this, huh?

M-4

khīt	think
khôɟ khīt wāā (cāŋ) sàn lɛ̀ɛw	I think so.
sȳa	to believe
láaw sȳa wāā (cāŋ) sàn lɛ̀ɛw	He believes it's that way.

sánɔ̌ə	to propose
khácàw sánɔ̌ə wāā (cāŋ) sàn lɛ̀ɛw	That's what they proposed.
paakót	appear
paakót wāā (cāŋ) sàn lɛ̀ɛw	It appears to be so.
hěn	see
khɔ̂ȷ hěn wāā (cāŋ) sàn lɛ̀ɛw	That's how I see it.
sǎŋkêet hěn	observe, notice
khɔ̂ȷ sǎŋkêet hěn wāā (cāŋ) sàn lɛ̀ɛw	That's what I have noticed.

C-1

A. càw sȳa wāā láaw si sěŋ dàȷ bɔɔ?	Do you believe he will pass the exam?
B. əə, khɔ̂ȷ sȳa wāā láaw si sěŋ dàȷ	Yes, I believe he will pass the exam.

C-2

A. càw thámnáaȷ wāā láaw si dàȷ khŷn sàn, sàn bɔɔ?	You predict that he will get promoted, is that so?
B. wāā sàn lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂ȷ thámnáaȷ wāā láaw si dàȷ khŷn sàn ȷāāŋ nɛ̄ɛ̄ nɔ́ɔn	Yes, I predict that he will certainly be promoted.

C-3

A. càw sárúp aw wāā ɟāāŋ daɟ?	What have you concluded?
B. khɔ̂ɟ sárúp aw wāā láaw si sɛ̌ŋ dàɟ	I concluded that he will pass the exam.

C-4

A. càw sȳa wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa sàn bɔɔ?	You believed that he wasn't coming, huh?
B. əə, khɔ̂ɟ sȳa wāā (cāŋ) sàn lɛ̀ɛw	Yes. That's what I believed.

C-5

A. càw si khĭan cāŋ sìi bɔɔ?	You are going to write it like this, huh?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂ɟ si khĭan cāŋ sàn	No. I'm going to write it like that.

ສະແດງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ຄວາມແຕກຕ່າງລະຫວ່າງ"ຈັ່ງຊັ້ນ"ແລະ"ຈັ່ງຊີ້"ມີຢ່າງໃດ. ແລະຄຳວ່າ "ຊັ້ນບໍ?"ແລະ"ວ່າຊັ້ນແລ້ວ"ເດ? ເຮົາໃຊ້ຄຳເຫລົ່ານັ້ນໃນເວລາໃດ ແລະໃນກໍຣະນີໃດ?

NOTES

1) sàn 'like that' occurs with bɔɔ after Sentences:

càw sȳa wāā láaw si sānā?sàn bɔɔ?	'You believe he will win, is that so?

sàn bɔɔ? is similar in usage to mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ? except that mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ? is used primarily to check the truth value of statements; whereas, sàn bɔɔ? is used to check an opinion or a guess, and hence is more informal. The usual answer to sàn bɔɔ? questions is wāā sàn lɛ̀ɛw which means 'That's how I see it' or 'That's what I had in mind'.

2) cāŋ sàn 'like that' and cāŋ sìi 'like this' are used in statements and questions relating to how something is done.

khǐan cāŋ sìi bɔɔ?	'You write it like this, huh?

khán sàn means 'In that case'. It is heard often in conversation.

APPLICATION

(a) láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ hían khɔ̂j jàan wāā láaw si sěŋtók.

(b) khɔ̂j wǎŋ wāā sàn lɛ̀ɛw

(c) láaw sȳa wāā khwáam phānjáanjáam jūū sǎj khwáam sǎmrēt jūū hân

(d) mỳy khýynnìi càw fǎn wāā jāāŋ daj?

(e) khón láaw sūan lǎaj sȳa khwáam fǎn

Answers: 1(a)He doesn't study. I'm afraid he'll fail. (b)I hope so. (c)He believes that where there is striving (trying) there will be success. (d)What did you dream last night? (e)Most Laos believe in dreams.

(f) háw cáʔ sárúp aw bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj wāā wìak láaw cáʔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ sǎmrēt

(g) thâawāā fāāj nȳŋ sānāʔ îik fāāj nȳŋ kɔɔ cáʔ tɔ̀ɔŋ phāājphɛ̀ɛ

(h) láaw sȳa wāā sájsānāʔ lɛ̄ʔ khwáam phāājphɛ̀ɛ pen khɔ̌ɔŋ khūū kan

(i) pii kaaj nìi láaw sěŋtók láaw nɛ̄ɛcaj wāā pii nìi láaw si sěŋdàj

(j) wāā sàn lɛ̀ɛw khôj sȳa wāā láaw si dàj khŷn sàn

Answers: (f)We can not conclude that his work will fail.
(g)If one side wins, the other side must lose.
(h)He believes that victory and failure are pairs.
(i)Last year he failed; he is certain he will pass this year. (j)Certainly, I believe he will be promoted.

CYCLE 65

M-1

láaw si paj tálâat, lὲεw láaw si paj hóoŋmɔ̆ɔ	He will go to the market, then he will go to the hospital.
láaw si kinkhâw lὲεw láaw si paj hēt kaan.	He will eat, then he will go to work.
láaw si āān nǎŋ sȳy lὲεw láaw si paj nɔ́ɔn.	He will read, then he will go to bed.
láaw si sáw mȳaj lὲεw láaw si aâp nàm	He will rest, then he will take a shower.

M-2

kya, mǔu	feed (animal), pig
láaw si kya mǔu lὲεw láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	He will feed the pigs, then what is he going to do?
tát, njâa	cut, grass
láaw si tát njâa lὲεw láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	He will cut the grass, then what is he going to do?
sāk khȳaŋnūŋ	wash clothes
láaw si sāk khȳaŋnūŋ lὲεw láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	He will wash clothes, then what is he going to do?
jyym, ŋə́n	borrow, money
láaw si jyym ŋə́n lὲεw láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	He will borrow money, then what is he going to do?

pīan, phâa puu tóˀ	change, table cloth
láaw si pīan phâa puu tóˀ lɛ̀ɛw láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	He will change the table cloth, then what is he going to do?

C-1

A. càw si hēt njǎŋ dɛɛ?	What are you going to do?
B. khɔ̂j si paj kinkhâw lɛ̀ɛw khɔ̂j si máa sáw mȳaj	I will go to eat, then I will come to rest.

C-2

A. càw si āān nǎŋsȳy lɛ̀ɛw càw si hēt njǎŋ?	You will read, then what will you do?
B. āān nǎŋsȳy lɛ̀ɛw khɔ̂j si paj kya mǔu	After reading I will go feed the pigs.

ຄຳວ່າ"ແລ້ວ"ໃນທີ່ນີ້ ຈົ່ງສອນແຕ່ຕາມຄວາມໝາຍທີ່ມັນມີຢູ່ເທົ່ານັ້ນ! ຢ່າຟ້າວອະທິບາຍຄວາມໝາຍຢ່າງອື່ນ. ເຮົາຈະຕ້ອງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຈື່ເທື່ອລະຢ່າງ ຂະເຈົ້າຈິ່ງຈະຮູ້ຈັກໃຊ້ຢ່າງຖືກຕ້ອງແລະດ້ວຍຄວາມໝັ້ນໃຈ. ຈິງຢູ່ ຄຳວ່າແລ້ວມີຄວາມໝາຍຢ່າງອື່ນອີກ. ແຕ່ເຮົາບໍ່ຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າຮູ້ໝົດໃນເວລານັ້ນດອກ. ໃນບົດຕໍ່ໄປຍັງຈະມີອີກ.

NOTES

1) In the construction S^1 + lɛ̀ɛw + S^2 (láaw si paj tálâat lɛ̀ɛw láaw si paj hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ 'He's going to the market and then to the hospital.') lɛ̀ɛw is a sentence connective and there is an indication that the activity referred to in the first sentence preceded that of the second sentence.

2) dɛɛ in a question indicates that the questioner is expecting a multiple answer.

Q:	láaw si hēt njǎŋ dɛɛ?	What (things) is he going to do?'
A:	láaw si āān nǎŋsy̌y lɛ̀ɛw láaw si paj kin khâw	'He'll read a book and then go eat.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) láaw kin khâw lɛ̀ɛw láaw si máa hǎa càw bɔɔ?

(b) taam thámmādaa mȳa càw kin khâw lɛ̀ɛw càw māk hēt njǎŋ?

(c) khácàw si paj bɔ̄ŋ sínée lɛ̀ɛw khácàw si paj sǎj dɛɛ?

(d) càw si kháp lōt paj sȳy lɛ̀ɛw lìaw sàaj mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?

(e) hían lɛ̀ɛw cȳŋ hāk, bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n hāk lɛ̀ɛw cȳŋ hían

Answers: (a)Will he eat and then come to see you? (b)Usually when you have eaten, what do you like to do then? (c)They'll go to the movies and then where will they go? (d)You will drive straight ahead then you'll turn left, won't you? (e)Study then love; don't love and then study.

(f) thâawāā càw mȳaj kɔɔ phākphɔ̄ɔ̄n sǎa, sáw mȳaj lɛ̀ɛw cȳŋ paj hēt wìak îik

(g) mȳa háw lìaŋ mǔu háw tɔ̀ɔŋ kya mán hâj īīm lɛ̀ɛw háw cáʔ dàj láakháa dii

(h) láaw si pīan phâa puu tóʔ lɛ̀ɛw láaw cáʔ paj khúakin

(i) thâawāā càw ĵâak míi hýan càw âat cáʔ tɔ̀ɔŋ ĵyym ŋə́n câak thānáakháan

(j) láaw si tát nĵâa lɛ̀ɛw láaw si paj âap nàm

Answers: (f)If you're tired, rest; when you're rested, go back to work. (g)When we raise pigs, we must feed them full, then we'll get a good price (for them). (h)She'll change the tablecloth then she'll go cook. (i)If you want to have a house, you may have to borrow money from the bank. (j)He'll cut the grass and then go take a bath.

CYCLE 66

M-1

kûat, bə̄ŋ	check; look at
khɔ̂j nján bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán dàj kûat bə̄ŋ	I haven't got around to checking it yet.
sāk, khȳaŋ nūŋ	wash (cloth only), clothes
khɔ̂j nján bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán dàj sāk khȳaŋ nūŋ	I haven't got around to washing clothes yet.
pɛɛ	translate
khɔ̂j nján bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán dàj pɛɛ	I haven't got around to translating it yet.
khĭan, cótmǎaj	write, letter (epistle)
khɔ̂j nján bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán dàj khĭan cótmǎaj	I haven't got around to writing the letter yet.
sōŋ	send
khɔ̂j nján bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán dàj sōŋ cótmǎaj	I haven't got around to mailing the letter yet.
sýksǎa	study
khɔ̂j nján bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán dàj sýksǎa bə̄ŋ	I haven't got around to studying yet.

M-2

át, pátuu	close, door
càw át pátuu lɛ̀ɛw lỹy njáŋ?	Did you close the door yet?
khǎj	open
càw khǎj pátuu lɛ̀ɛw lỹy njáŋ?	Did you open the door yet?
làaŋ, mýy	wash, clean; hand
càw làaŋ mýy lɛ̀ɛw lỹy njáŋ?	Did you wash your hands yet?
swāaj, nâa	wash (face or body only)
càw swāaj nâa lɛ̀ɛw lỹy njáŋ?	Did you wash your face yet?
thǔu, khêɛw	to rub, scrub
càw thǔu khêɛw lɛ̀ɛw lỹy njáŋ?	Did you brush your teeth yet
wǐi, phǒm	comb, hair (head only)
càw wǐi phǒm lɛ̀ɛw lỹy njáŋ?	Did you comb your hair yet?
tyan	warn
càw tyan khácàw lɛ̀ɛw lỹy njáŋ?	Did you warn them yet?

M-3

máa lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, (... already came.)
sáw lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, (... already stoped.)
mót lɛ̀ɛw	Yes. (... already gone. 'finished')

M-4

njáŋ	Not yet.

M-5

lóm, káp	to chat, talk; with
càw thán dàj lóm káp láaw bɔɔ?	Did you get a chance to chat with him?
phɔ̀ɔ	to meet, find
càw thán dàj phɔ̀ɔ káp láaw bɔɔ?	Did you get a chance to meet her?
hĕn, phŏn	see, result
càw thán dàj hĕn phŏn njăŋ bɔɔ?	Were you able to see any results (in the time available)?
hūam, phīthíi	to join, participate, attend; ceremony
càw thán dàj hūam phīthíi bɔɔ?	Did you get to the ceremony in time to participate?
fáŋ thèet	to hear a sermon
càw thán dàj fáŋ thèet bɔɔ?	Did you get a chance to hear the sermon?

M-6

āān, tɛ̄ɛ̄, pỳm	read; only, but; book
khɔ̂j thán dàj āān pỳm tɛ̄ɛ̄ sɔ̆ɔŋ hŭa	I was able to read only two books (in the time available).

wàw, nám, khám	speak; with, along; word
khɔ̂j thán dàj wàw nám láaw tɛɛ sɔ̌ɔŋ sǎam khám	I had a chance to speak only 2 or 3 words with him.
mɔ̀ɔt fáj, mâj	to put out a fire, burn
khɔ̂j thán dàj mɔ̀ɔt fáj kɔ̄ɔ̄n mán si mâj hýan	I was able to put out the fire before the house burned down.
cáp mýy, káp { páj máa	to shake,hand, return
khɔ̂j thán dàj cáp mýy káp phōn kɔ̄ɔ̄n phōn si káp paj	I had a chance to shake hands with him before he returned.
C-1	
A. càw át pátuu lɛ̀ɛw lỹy njáŋ?	Did you close the door yet?
B. át lɛ̀ɛw	Yes.
C-2	
A. càw khǐan cótmǎaj lɛ̀ɛw lỹy njáŋ?	Did you write the letter yet?
B. njáŋ.	Not yet.
C-3	
A. càw làaŋ mýy lɛ̀ɛw lỹy njáŋ?	Did you wash your hands yet?
B. làaŋ lɛ̀ɛw, khɔ̂j làaŋ mýy khɔ̂j lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, I've already washed my hands.

C-4

A. càw thán dàj phòo káp láaw boo?	Did you get to meet him?
B. thán, khôj thán dàj phòo káp láaw kɔ̄ɔn láaw cá? káp paj	Yes, I got to meet him before he returned.

C-5

A. láaw kŷap bɔ̄ɔ dàj wàw nám khácàw mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	He almost didn't get to talk to them, isn't that so?
B. mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, láaw thán dàj wàw nám khácàw tɛ̄ɛ sɔ̌ɔŋ sǎam khám	That's right. He only got to say 2 or 3 words to them.

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມກັນເບິ່ງວ່າຜູ້ໃດກະທຳການສິ່ງໃດແລ້ວຫລືຍັງ. ຖ້າຄຳຕອບແມ່ນ "ບໍ່" ຫລື "ຍັງ" ກໍຈົ່ງໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າໃຫ້ເຫດຜົນວ່າ ເປັນຫຍັງ? ຫລືຖ້າຕອບວ່າ "ແລ້ວ" ກໍຈົ່ງຖາມວ່າ ຕໍ່ໄປຂະເຈົ້າຈະເຮັດຫຍັງ?

NOTES

1) thán dàj means 'to have been able to do something in the available time'. It may occur in the negative with the meaning 'not to have got something done when it was supposed to have been done.'

khôj thán dàj mòot fáj kɔ̄ɔn mán si mâj hýan	'I was able to put out the fire before the house burned down.'
khôj njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ thán dàj āan pỳm càw	'I haven't got your book read yet.'
khôj thán dàj āan pỳm tɛ̄ɛ sɔ̌ɔŋ hǔa	'I've only got two books read.'

2) *lɛ̀ɛw* and *njáŋ* are 'aspect words', i.e., they indicate the state of an action, whether it is completed (lɛ̀ɛw) or whether it remains incomplete (*njáŋ*). *njáŋ* is a preverb and occurs before *bɔ̄ɔ* + VP:

khɔ̂j *njáŋ* *bɔ̄ɔ* *thán* *dàj* *pɛɛ* 'I haven't got around to translating it yet.'

njáŋ may occur alone in (a) responses to questions:

Q: *càw* *wǐi* *phǒm* *lɛ̀ɛw* *ly̌y* *njáŋ* 'Have you combed your hair yet?'

A: *njáŋ* 'Not yet.' Or (b) in parallel sentences like the question above.

3) When an affirmative sentence with *lɛ̀ɛw* and the negative form of the same sentence with *njáŋ* are joined with ly̌y 'or', the negative sentence is reduced to *njáŋ* and follows the affirmative sentence:

Affirmative: *càw* *thǔu* *khɛ̂ɛw* *lɛ̀ɛw* 'You have brushed your teeth.'

Negative: *càw* *njáŋ* *bɔ̄ɔ* *thǔu* *khɛ̂ɛw* 'You haven't brushed your teeth yet.'

When combined with *ly̌y*: *càw* *thǔu* *khɛ̂ɛw* *lɛ̀ɛw* *ly̌y* *njáŋ*? 'Have you brushed your teeth yet or not?'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) khɔ̂j ______________ khǐan cótmǎaj hǎa phy̌an khɔ̂j
(I haven't had a chance to write a letter to my friend yet.)

(b) láaw khǐan cótmǎaj ________ tɛ̄ɛ láaw ________ thán dàj sɔ̄ŋ
(He's written a letter, but he hasn't had a chance to mail it yet.)

Answers: 1(a)njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ thán dàj (b)lɛ̀ɛw... njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ

(c) càw dàjhāp khāāw câak khácàw ______________?

(Have you had any news from them yet or not?)

(d) láaw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán ______________ phɔ̄wāā láaw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán dàj ______________

(He hasn't been able to eat breakfast yet, because he's hasn't had a chance to wash his face yet.)

(e) láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi wĭi láaw __________ njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán dàj wĭi phŏm

(He hasn't got a comb so he hasn't yet been able to comb his hair.)

(f) láaw pɛɛ năŋsy̆y hâj khácàw lɛ̀ɛw tɛ̄ɛ̄ wāā khácàw __________ aw ŋə́n hâj làaw

(He has already translated the book for them, but they haven't yet got around to paying him.)

(g) càw bɔ̂ɔk láaw át pátuu __________________?

(Have you told him to close the door yet or not?)

(h) thâawāā pátuu ______________ pɛɛ wāā làaw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán máa

(If the door isn't opened yet, that means he hasn't arrived yet.)

(i) khôj njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ ______________ khôj phɔ̄wāā khôj njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi wéeláa

(I haven't yet been able to wash my clothes because I haven't had time yet.)

(j) láaw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán dàj ______________ khɔ̆ɔŋ khácàw

(He hasn't yet been able to come inspect their work.)

Answers: (c)lɛ̀ɛw ly̆y njáŋ (d)kin khâw sàw... swāāj nâa (e)cȳŋ (f)njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán dàj (g)lɛ̀ɛw ly̆y njáŋ (h)njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ thán khăj (i)thán dáj sāk khȳan nūŋ (j)máa kûat bə̄ŋ wìak

CYCLE 67

M-1

pɛɛŋ, lōtdút	fix, repair; bulldozer
láaw pɛɛŋ lōtdút lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ?	Has he finished fixing the bulldozer?
hâj sǎmphàat	to give an interview
láaw hâj sǎmphàat lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ?	Has he finished giving the interview?
nāp, ŋə́n	to count, money
láaw nāp ŋə́n lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ?	Has he finished counting money?
sŷypsǔan	to investigate
láaw sŷypsǔan lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ?	Has he finished the investigation?
sɔ̂ɔpsǔan	to interrogate
láaw sɔ̂ɔpsǔan lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ?	Has he finished the interrogation?
banthȳk, sǐaŋ	to record; sound, voice
láaw banthȳk sǐaŋ lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ?	Has he finished recording?
màaŋ, pyyn	to dismantle, disassemble
láaw màaŋ pyyn lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ?	Has he finished taking the gun apart?

M-2

lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, (he has) finished.
bɔ̄ɔ̄, njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɛ̀ɛw	No, (he has) not finished yet.
njáŋ, njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɛ̀ɛw	Not yet, (he has) not finished yet.

M-3

átsĭaŋ	to record sound
láaw átsĭaŋ lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw]	He has finished recording.
èe	to decorate
làaw èe hýan lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw]	He has finished decorating the house.
thǎaŋ, pāā	to clear (a forest), forest
láaw thǎaŋ pāā lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw]	He has finished clearing the wood.
thǎj, náa	to plow, a plow, rice field
láaw thǎj náa lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw]	He has finished plowing the rice field.
kĭaw, khâw	to cut (with a sickle), rice
láaw kĭaw khâw lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw]	He has finished harvesting the rice.
fàat	to strike, slap, flail
láaw fàat khâw lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw]	He has finished threshing the rice by hand.
khàat	harrow
láaw khàat náa lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw]	He has finished harrowing the rice field.

M-4

tam	to pound (in a mortar)
láaw tam khâw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɛ̀ɛw	He hasn't finished polishing the rice.
hŭŋ, súk	cook by boiling; to be cooked, ripe
láaw hŭŋ khâw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ súk	He hasn't finished cooking the rice.
nŷŋ	cook by steaming
láaw nŷŋ khâw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ súk	He hasn't finished cooking the (sticky) rice.

M-5

lɛ̆ɛm, sɔ̆ɔ	sharpen, sharp, crayon
lɛ̆ɛm sɔ̆ɔ lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] láaw si hēt njăŋ?	What is he going to do after he finishes sharpening the pencils?
wĭi, nūŋ khȳaŋ	comb, get dressed
wĭi phŏm lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] láaw si nūŋ khȳaŋ bɔɔ?	Is he going to get dressed after he finishes combing his hair?

C-1

A. càw pɛɛŋ lōt lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ?	Have you finished fixing your car?
B. lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, I have.

C-2

A. càw màaŋ pyyn càw lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ?	Have you finished taking your gun apart?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɛ̀ɛw	No, I haven't finished yet.

C-3

A. càw āān cótmǎaj lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ?	Have you finished reading the letter?
B. njáŋ, njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɛ̀ɛw	No, I haven't finished yet.

C-4

A. càw kûat pỳm lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ?	Have you finished checking the book?
B. əə, khɔ̂j kûat pỳm lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw]	Yes, I have finished checking the book.

C-5

A. láaw nŷŋ khâw súk lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	Has he finished cooking the rice?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, láaw nŷŋ khâw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ súk	No, he hasn't finished cooking the rice.

C-6

A. khúakin lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw]láaw si hēt njǎŋ ?	What is he going to do when he finishes cooking?
B. khúakin lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] láaw si ə̀ən háw máa kin khâw	When he finishes cooking he will call us to the table.

NOTES

1) lɛ̀ɛw as an Aspect particle indicating 'action completed at a particular time' and as a secondary verb meaning 'to complete some activity' may occur in one sentence, thus

láaw pɛɛŋ lōt lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw	'He has already finished making repairs on the car.'

In normal speech the second lɛ̀ɛw occurs in reduced form as lɛ̀.

2) The response to ... lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw] bɔɔ? questions may be:

Question:	càw pɛɛŋ lōt càw lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw bɔɔ?	'Have you finished fixing your car yet?'
Affirmative Response:	(a) lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀[ɛw]	'Yes, I have.'
	(b) əə, khɔ̂j pɛɛŋ lōt lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw	'Yes, I've finished making the repairs to my car already.'
Negative:	(a) bɔ̄ɔ̄, njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɛ̀ɛw	'No, I haven't finished yet.'
	(b) njáŋ, njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɛ̀ɛw	'No, I haven't finished yet.'

3) VP + lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw corresponds closely in meaning to English past participial constructions 'having...ed', etc. When VP + lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw precedes NP + VP, there is an indication that the action referred to in the initial VP occurred before that in the second VP. Compare English and Lao:

English:	having done his work, he went to bed (or) After he did...
Lao:	hēt wìak lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw, láaw paj nɔ́ɔn

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) tháaŋ ______ dút ______ phə̄n cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ hâj lōt thíaw

(The road is not yet completed so they don't let cars pass through.)

(b) mȳa njíŋ ______ phùak thāhăan pháa kan màaŋ pyyn ɔ̂ɔk sēt lɛ̄ sāj nàm mán

(When the firing is over, the soldiers as a group take their guns apart and oil them simultaneously.)

(c) phɔ̄ɔ̄ náa thăj náa __________ láaw cȳŋ __________ thán khàat

(The farmer hasn't finished plowing so he hasn't started harrowing yet.)

(d) mȳa kīaw khâw __________ phùak phɔ̄ɔ̄ náa pháa kan fàat khâw

(When the harvesting is done, the farmers as a group knock the heads off the rice stalks.)

(e) mȳa wéeláa _______________ mɛ̄ɛ̄ khàa nāp bə̄ŋ ŋə́n khɔ̆ɔŋ láaw

(When everything is sold out, the female vendor counts her money [to see how much she took in]).

(f) thâawāā láaw hēt wìak nìi __________ láaw si bɔ̄ɔ̄ mýa hýan

(If he hasn't finished doing this work, he will not go home.)

Answers: 1(a)njáŋ ... bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɛ̀ɛw (b)lɛ̀ɛw (c)njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɛ̀ɛw ... njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ (d)lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw (e)khăaj khɔ̆ɔŋ mót lɛ̀ɛw (f)bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɛ̀ɛw

(g) phȳa cáʔ hēt náa phə̄n tɔ̀ɔŋ thǎaŋ pāā, ____________ phə̄n cȳŋ aw thǎj máa thǎj

(In order to farm one has to clear the forest; once the forest is cleared, one brings a plough in and ploughs [the land]).

(h) lǎŋ câak sɔ̂ɔpsǔan __________ tamlûat kɔɔ pɔ̄ɔ̄j khácàw káp bàan

(After the interrogation is completed, the police lets them go home.)

(i) sɔ̂ɔpsǔan ______________, njáŋ cáʔ tɔ̀ɔŋ míi kaan banthȳk îik

(All aspects of the interrogation haven't been completed yet, there still are more tape recordings that have to be made.)

(j) mȳa èe hýan __________ láaw si sə́ən mūū máa kin lìaŋ

(When the decoration of the house has been finished, she will invite guests in to eat.)

Answers: (g)thǎaŋ pāā lɛ̀ɛw (h)lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw (i)lɛ̀ɛw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɛ̀ɛw (j)lɛ̀ɛw lɛ̀ɛw

CYCLE 68

M-1

hētwìak	work
càw hētwìak hâj phǎj?	Who do you work for?
khǐan pỳm	write the book for
càw khǐan pỳm hâj phǎj?	Who do you write the book for?
kháp lōt	drive the car
càw kháp lōt hâj phǎj?	Who do you drive the car for?
púk hýan	build the house
càw púk hýan hâj phǎj?	Who do you build the house for?
tát phǒm	cut the hair
càw tát phǒm hâj phǎj?	Who did you cut the hair for?
fâw hýan	watch the house
càw fâw hýan hâj phǎj?	Who do you watch the house for?
phím nǎŋsy̌y	type the letter
càw phím nǎŋsy̌y hâj phǎj?	Who do you type the letter for?

M-2

paj aw	going to get
khɔ̂j si paj aw hâj láaw	I am going to get (it) for him.
sōŋ nǎŋsy̌y	send the letter
khɔ̂j si sōŋ nǎŋsy̌y hâj láaw	I will send the letter for him.

pɛɛŋ lōt	fix the car
khɔ̂j si pɛɛŋ lōt hâj láaw	I will fix the car for him.
làaŋ lōt	wash the car
khɔ̂j si làaŋ lōt hâj láaw	I will wash the car for him.
khúakin	cook
khɔ̂j si khúakin hâj láaw	I will cook for him.
mìan pỳm	arrange the books
khɔ̂j si mìan pỳm hâj láaw	I will arrange the books for him.

M-3

kúlíi	the coolie
kúlíi si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	What is the coolie going to do for you?
khónsàj	the servant
khónsàj si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	What is the servant going to do for you?
sāaŋmàj	the carpenter
sāaŋmàj si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	What is the carpenter going to do for you?
léekhǎanūkaan	the secretary
léekhǎanūkaan si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	What is the secretary going to do for you?

náajsāāŋ	the mechanic
náajsāāŋ si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	What is the mechanic going to do for you?
sāāŋtátphǒm	the barber
sāāŋtátphǒm si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	What's the barber going to do for you?

C-1

A. càw si pɛɛŋ lōt hâj phǎj?	Who are you going to fix the car for?
B. khɔ̂j si pɛɛŋ hâj láaw	I will fix (the car) for him.

C-2

A. phǎj si aw paj hâj càw?	Who will take it for you?
B. khónsàj si aw paj hâj khɔ̂j	The servant will take it for me.

C-3

A. náajsāāŋ si hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	What's the mechanic going to do for you?
B. láaw si pɛɛŋlōt hâj khɔ̂j	He will fix the car for me.

ບົດນີ້ກໍມີຈຸດປະສົງທີ່ຈະສອນການໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ"ໃຫ້". ຢ່າລືມຂຍາຍການຝຶກຫັດໃນພາກ C ແລະຖ້າພໍເຮັດໄດ້ກໍຈົ່ງປະດິດເຣື່ອງຂຶ້ນອີກເບິ່ງດູ!

NOTES

1) hâj in the construction VP + hâj + NP indicates that the activity referred to in VP is either done (a) for the benefit of, or (b) in place of the person(s) referred to in NP.

láaw kháp lɔ̄t hâj khɔ̂j	'He drives for me (in place of me).'
láaw tát phǒm hâj khɔ̂j	'He cuts my hair (for my benefit).'

hâj has many other meanings but the most of them relate in some way to one or the other of the two categories stated above. hâj parallels English for in only a few instances.

2) hâj kan indicates that some activity is carried out for the mutual benefit of the parties participating in it. khácàw khúakin hâj kan 'They cook for each other'.

3) hâj + NP may contrast with eeŋ 'oneself' in use.

khɔ̂j si khúakin hâj láaw phɔ̄waa láaw khúakin eeŋ bɔ̄ɔ dàj	'I'll cook for him, because he can't cook for himself.'

4) pháa kan + VP is used to indicate that all the members of a group engage in simultaneous and identical action.

phɔ̄ɔ náa pháa kan fàat khâw	'All the farmers flail rice stalks at the same time.'

5) khǎw occurs in informal usage for khácàw 'they'. It is commonly used with children. It may also be used for unidentified persons phə̄n is also used for 'they', but it is used only for persons of higher status. It also means 'he, she'.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw wàw wāā láaw jâak máa hētwìak ______________
(He said he would like to come work for me.)

(b) khón kháplōt khɔ̂j si paj kháplōt _________ sɔ̌ɔŋ mỳy
(My chauffeur will go drive for him two days.)

(c) phùak nāk-hían bɔ̄ɔ̄ jâak sǐa ŋén khāā tátphɔ̌m khácàw
cȳŋ tátphɔ̌m ______________
(Students don't like to spend money on haircuts, so they cut each other's hair.)

(d) léekhǎanūkaan bɔ̂ɔk wāā láaw si phím nǎŋsy̌y ___________
mỳy nìi
(The secretary said she would finish typing the letter for me today.)

(e) khɔ̂j si khúakin ______________ phɔ̄wāā láaw khúakin _____
_____ bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen
(I'll cook for her because she doesn't know how to cook herself.)

(f) láaw pɛɛŋ lōt bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen láaw cȳŋ si càaŋ náajsāāŋ __________
(He doesn't know how to fix a car himself, so he will hire a mechanic to come fix it for him.)

Answers: 1(a)hâj khɔ̂j (b)hâj láaw (c)hâj kan (d)hâj khɔ̂j
hâj lɛ̀ɛw (e)hâj láaw... eeŋ (f)máa pɛɛŋ hâj láaw

(g) sāāŋmàj si ______________ khɔ̂j kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùu

(I don't know what the carpenter is going to do for me either.)

(h) khɔ̂j si aw khɔ̌ɔŋ nìi sāj lōt paj khǎaj ______________

(I'll put these things in the car and go sell them for her.)

(i) déknɔ̀ɔj __________ làaŋ lōt __________ phɔ̄wāā khǎw jâak hâj khɔ̂j pháa paj sǔan sát

(The children all pitch in and wash the car for me because they want me to take them to the zoo.)

(j) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ diicaj njɔ̀ɔn wāā sāāŋ tátphǒm tátphǒm __________ sân phòot

(I'm not happy due to the fact that the barber cut my hair too short.)

Answers: (g)hēt njǎŋ hâj khɔ̂j (h)hâj láaw (i)pháa kan... hâj khɔ̂j (j)hâj khɔ̂j

CYCLE 69

M-1

hētkaan	to work
khɔ̂j jâak hētkaan	I want to work.
míi ŋə́n lǎaj	to have a lot of money
khɔ̂j jâak míi ŋə́n lǎaj	I want to have a lot of money.
lîn kíláa	to engage in sport
khɔ̂j jâak lîn kíláa	I want to engage in sports.
tii pīŋpɔ̄ŋ	play table tennis
khɔ̂j jâak tii pīŋpɔ̄ŋ	I want to play table tennis.
lɛ̄ɛn	to run
khɔ̂j jâak lɛ̄ɛn	I want to run.
hěn lǎaj mýaŋ	to see many cities
khɔ̂j jâak hěn lǎaj mýaŋ	I want to see many cities.
fáŋ phéeŋ	to listen to the song
khɔ̂j jâak fáŋ phéeŋ	I want to listen to the song.

M-2

máa	to come
khɔ̂j jâak hâj láaw máa	I want him to come.
jūu nám khɔ̂j	to stay with me
khɔ̂j jâak hâj láaw jūu nám khɔ̂j	I want him to stay with me.

tɛɛŋŋáan	to get married
khɔ̂j jâak hâj láaw tɛɛŋŋáan	I want him to get married.
tàŋcaj hían	to concentrate on studying
khɔ̂j jâak hâj láaw tàŋcaj hían	I want him to concentrate on studying.
sáw sûup jaa	to stop smoking
khɔ̂j jâak hâj láaw sáw sûup jaa	I want her to stop smoking.
lə̀əm hētkaan	to begin working
khɔ̂j jâak hâj láaw lə̀əm hētkaan	I want him to begin working.
pen thāhǎan	to become soldier
khɔ̂j jâak hâj láaw pen thāhǎan	I want him to become soldier.

M-3

náajkhúu	
náajkhúu jâak hâj càw hēt njǎŋ?	What does the teacher want you to do?
rāthābaan	the government
rāthābaan jâak hâj càw hēt njǎŋ?	What does the government want you to do?

khúubaa	the monk
khúubaa jâak hâj càw hēt njǎŋ?	What does the monk want you to do?
(aàj) cua	the monk novice
(aàj) cua jâak hâj càw hēt njǎŋ?	What does the monk novice wants you to do?
déknɔ̀ɔj	the children
déknɔ̀ɔj jâak hâj càw hēt njǎŋ?	What do the children want you to do?
lùuk càw	your children
lùuk càw jâak hâj càw hēt njǎŋ?	What do your children want you to do?

C-1

A. càw jâak hēt njǎŋ?	What do you want to do?
B. khɔ̂j jâak fáŋ phéeŋ	I want to hear the songs.

C-2

A. càw jâak hâj khɔ̂j hēt njǎŋ?	What do you want me to do?
B. khɔ̂j jâak hâj càw jʉʉ nám láaw	I want you to stay with him.

C-3

A. náajkhúu jâak hâj càw hēt njǎŋ?	What does the teacher want you to do?
B. phēn jâak hâj khôj tàŋcaj hían	He wants me to concentrate on studying.

ຮະວັງຢ່າປ່ອຍໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ "ຢາກ" ຢ່າງຜິດພາດ. ສ່ວນມາກຂະເຈົ້ານັກເວົ້າວ່າ "ຂ້ອຍຢາກລາວ
ໄປຕລາດ" ແທນທີ່ຈະເວົ້າວ່າ "ຂ້ອຍຢາກໃຫ້ລາວໄປຕລາດ". ທັງນີ້ກໍຍອນພາສາຂອງຂະເຈົ້າ.

NOTES

1) jâak + VP means 'to want, would like (to do something)'.

khôj jâak míi ŋén lǎaj	'I would like to have lots of money.'

When the Subject of the sentence and the person performing the action are not the same person, jâak hâj + VP is used.

khôj jâak hâj láaw pen náaj khúu	'I want her to be a teacher.'

2) phòom kan means 'simultaneously' or 'at the same time'.

khôj khīt wāā khácàw si bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa hòot phòom kan	'I don't think they will arrive simultaneously.'

3) ton 'oneself, itself, themselves' is used in place of láaw or khácàw when the subject of the sentence and the person(s) referred to later are the same person:

phɔ̄ɔ̄mɛ̄ɛ̄ thūk khón kɔɔ jâak hâj lùuk khɔ̌ɔŋ ton tàŋcaj hían náŋsɯ̌ɯ	'All parents would like to have their children concentrate on studying.' (phɔɔmɛ̄ɛ̄ and ton refer to the same people.)

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide.

(a) aanjūʔ láaw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ thə̆ŋ síp pêɛt pii tɛ̄ɛ̄ láaw kɔɔ ______ hēt kaan lɛ̀ɛw

(She isn't 18 yet, but she would like to get a job.)

(b) láaw ______________ tɛ̄ɛ̄ wāā súkháphàap láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ dii.

(He would like to engage in sports, but his health isn't good.)

(c) thâawāā phūū nȳŋ __________ phūū nȳŋ __________ khácàw âat cáʔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ paj hɔ̀ɔt __________

(If one person wants to walk and another wants to run, they may not arrive at the same time.)

(d) khɔ̂j __________ láaw máa hĕn khwáam cáréən khɔ̆ɔŋ bàan mýaŋ

(I would like to have him come see the growth and progress in the country.)

(e) phɔ̄ɔ̄mɛ̄ɛ̄ thūk khón tāāŋ kɔɔ __________ lùuk khɔ̆ɔŋ ton tàŋcaj hían năŋsy̆y

(Each individual parent would like to have his children concentrate on their studies.)

Answers: 1(a)jâak (b)jâak lîn kíláa (c)jâak njāāŋ... jâak lɛ̄ɛ̄n... phɔ̀ɔm kan (d)jâak hâj (e)jâak hâj

(f) khɔ̂j wăŋ dii tɔ̄ɔ̄ láaw khɔ̂j cȳŋ ______________ sûup jaa
(I wish him well, so I would like to have him stop smoking.)

(g) phɔ̄ɔ̄mɛ̄ɛ̄ baaŋkhón ______________ tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋŋáan phȳa cáʔ dàj mót khwáam pen hūaŋ
(Some parents want their daughters to get married so as to get rid of worrying [about them]).

(h) khɔ̂j __________ láaw __________ tɔ̄ɔ̄ paj njɔ̀ɔn wāā láaw hían njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ cóp
(I would like to have him continue staying with me due to the fact that he hasn't finished his studies yet.)

(i) lāthábaan __________ pásáasón míi khwáam jūū dii kin dii
(The Government would like for the people to have a good standard of living.)

(j) khúubaa ___________ àaj cua phānjáanjáam hāmhían aw khwáam h̦ùu (The monk told the novice to study hard to gain knowledge

---

Answers: (f)jâak hâj láaw sáw (g)jâak hâj lùuksăaw khɔ̆ɔŋ ton (h)jâak hâj... jūū nám khɔ̂j (i)jâak hâj (j)bɔ̂ɔk hâj

CYCLE 70

M-1

khúakin	cook
khɔ̂j hâj láaw khúakin hâj (khɔ̂j)	I $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{had}\\\text{let}\end{array}\right.$ her cook for me.
phát kə̂əp	shine (my) shoes
khɔ̂j hâj láaw phát kə̂əp hâj (khɔ̂j)	I $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{had}\\\text{let}\end{array}\right.$ him shine (my) shoes for me.
làaŋ thûaj sáam	wash dishes
khɔ̂j hâj láaw làaŋ thûaj sáam hâj (khɔ̂j)	I $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{had}\\\text{let}\end{array}\right.$ him wash dishes for for me.
phím nǎŋsy̌y	type the letter
khɔ̂j hâj láaw phím nǎŋsy̌y hâj (khɔ̂j)	I $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{had}\\\text{let}\end{array}\right.$ her type the letter for me.
bə̄ŋ lùuk	watch the children
khɔ̂j hâj láaw bə̄ŋ lùuk hâj (khɔ̂j)	I $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{had}\\\text{let}\end{array}\right.$ her watch the children for me.
fâw hýan	watch the house
khɔ̂j hâj láaw fâw hýan hâj (khɔ̂j)	I $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{had}\\\text{let}\end{array}\right.$ him watch the house for me.

M-2

kháp lōt	drive the car
càw si hâj phǎj kháp lōt hâj (càw)?	Who will you $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{have}\\ \text{let}\end{array}\right.$ drive for you?
làaŋ lōt	wash the car
càw si hâj phǎj làaŋ lōt hâj (càw)?	Who will you $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{have}\\ \text{let}\end{array}\right.$ wash the car for you?
kûat	check
càw si hâj phǎj kûat hâj (càw)?	Who will you $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{have}\\ \text{let}\end{array}\right.$ check it for you?
tɛ̀ɛm	draw
càw si hâj phǎj tɛ̀ɛm hâj (càw)?	Who will you $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{have}\\ \text{let}\end{array}\right.$ draw it for you?
cāāj	pay
càw si hâj phǎj cāāj hâj (càw)?	Who will you $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{have}\\ \text{let}\end{array}\right.$ pay it for you?
tàjfáj	turn on
càw si hâj phǎj tàjfáj hâj (càw)?	Who will you $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{have}\\ \text{let}\end{array}\right.$ turn on the light for you?
mɔ̀ɔtfáj	turn off
càw si hâj phǎj mɔ̀ɔtfáj hâj (càw)?	Who will you $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{have}\\ \text{let}\end{array}\right.$ turn off the light for you?

C-1

A. láaw si hâj càw hēt njǎŋ hâj (láaw)?	What will he have you do for him.
B. láaw si hâj khɔ̂j phát kə̂əp hâj (láaw)	He will have me shine shoes for him.

C-2

A. khácàw si hâj phǎj bɔ̄ŋ lùuk hâj khacàw?	Who will they have look after their children for them?
B. khácàw si hâj phȳan bàan khácàw bɔ̄ŋ hâj	Their neighbor.

C-3

A. càw wāā si hâj láaw hēt njǎŋ hâj càw?	What were you going to have him do for you?
B. khɔ̂j wāā si hâj láaw phím nǎŋsȳy hâj khɔ̂j	I was going to have him type letters for me.

ໃນບົດນີ້ກໍແມ່ນການໃຊ້"ໃຫ້"ສອງຕໍ່. ທ່ານຈົ່ງພານັກຮຽນລົມຕົນເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ມີຫຍັງແດ່ທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າຍັງບໍ່ໆ ຫລື ຍັງໃຊ້ຢ່າງຜິດໆພາດໆ. ຖ້າຫາກມີກໍຈົ່ງຊ້ອມຕົນໃຫມ່ອີກ.

NOTES

1) hâj frequently occurs twice in a sentence, once with the meaning 'on behalf of, for the benefit of' (benefactive meaning as in Cycle 68) and once with the meaning 'to have, let, cause (someone to do something)' (causative meaning as in Cycle 69):

khɔ̂j hâj láaw khúakin hâj (khɔ̂j) 'I had her cook for me.'

NP after hâj (benefactive) may be omitted if it has the same referent as NP (Subject), as in the example above and in this example:

phùak náaj khúu hâj láaw kháp lōt hâj (khácàw) 'The teachers let him drive for them.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English and check your answers:

(a) thâwāa láaw khúakin pen khɔ̂j si hâj láaw khúakin hâj khɔ̂j

(b) càw si hâj láaw bēŋ lùuk hâj càw bɔɔ?

(c) phǎj si hēt wìak hâj phǎj khɔ̂j kɔɔ njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ hùu thȳa

(d) wéeláa càw bɔ̄ɔ jūu càw si hâj phǎj fâw hýan hâj càw

(e) mỳy wáan nìi láaw hâj déknɔ̀ɔj làaŋ lōt hâj láaw, càw hùu bɔɔ láaw aw ŋén hâj khǎw thāwdaj?

Answers:
(a) If she can cook, I will have her cook for me.
(b) Are you going to have her babysit for you?
(c) I have no idea yet who will work for who.
(d) When you're not home, who will you have watch the house for you?
(e) Yesterday he had the children wash the car for him, do you know how much money he gave them?

(f) khɔ̂j jâak hâj láaw máa kûat bɔ̄ŋ cák lɔ̄t hâj khɔ̂j phɔ̄wāā diawnìi lɔ̄t khɔ̂j lɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔ̄ɔ̄ khɔ̄ɔ̄j dii paandaj

(g) láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj hâj khón ȳyn hēt wìak hâj láaw phɔ̄wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sȳa caj khácàw

(h) thâawāā càw jâak hâj láaw lɛ̄ɛ̄n wìak hâj càw, càw tɔ̀ɔŋ sỳy lɔ̄t hâj láaw

(i) khɔ̂j si hâj láaw khǎaj khɔ̆ɔŋ nìi hâj khácàw phɔ̄wāā khácàw bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi wéeláa paj khǎaj eeŋ

(j) kaan hâj khón ȳȳn títtɔ̄ɔ̄ káp càw khɔ̆ɔŋ thīī din âat cáʔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj phɔ̆n dii thɔ̄ɔ̄ kaan thīī háw paj títtɔ̄ɔ̄ eeŋ

Answers: (f) I would like for him to come check the motor of my car for me because my car isn't running very well at present.

(g) He has never had other people work for him before, because he doesn't trust them.

(h) If you want her to run errands for you, you have to buy her a car.

(i) I'll have him sell these things for them because they don't have time to go sell (them) themselves.

(j) Having other people contact the owner of the land may not get as good results as if we went to contact (him) ourselves.

II. Translate the above English sentences back into Lao and check your answers. Since your translation may differ at some points from the original, you should check with the instructor about these differences.

CYCLE 71

M-1

tóˀ	table
tóˀ nìi hēt duàj njǎŋ?	What is this table made of?
wātcánáanūkom	dictionary
wātcánáanūkom hǔa nìi hēt dùaj njǎŋ?	What is this dictionary made of?
tùu	cabinet
tùu nìi hēt dùaj njǎŋ?	What is this cabinet made of?
dɔ̂ɔk fáj fàa	light bulb
dɔ̂ɔk fáj fàa hēt dùaj njǎŋ?	What is the light bulb made of?
sǎaj sôo	chain
sǎaj sôo nìi hēt duàj njǎŋ?	What is this chain made of?
sábuu	soap
sábuu hēt dùaj njǎŋ?	What is soap made of?

M-2

sǎajsɔ̂ɔj	chain(jewelry)
sǎajsɔ̂ɔj nìi hēt dùaj khám	This chain is made of gold.
sǎaj ɛɛw	belt
sǎaj ɛɛw nìi hēt dùaj nǎŋ	This belt is made of leather.

pɔ̄ɔ̄ŋjìam	window
pɔ̄ɔ̄ŋjìam nìi hēt dùaj kɛ̀ɛw	This window is made of glass.
pháathâat	tray
pháathâat nìi hēt dùaj ŋə́n	This tray is made of silver.
mìittát, lék	scissors, iron
mìittát nìi hēt dùaj lék	These scissors are made of iron.
sǎajfáj, thɔ́ɔŋdɛɛŋ	wires, copper
sǎajfáj nìi hēt dùaj thɔ́ɔŋdɛɛŋ	These wires are made of copper.
cɔ̂ɔk, plastík	cups, plastic
cɔ̂ɔk nìi hēt dùaj plastík	These cups are made of plastic.
sábuu, khȳan khéemíi	soap, chemical substances
sábuu hēt dùaj khȳaŋ khéemíi	Soap is made of chemical substances.

M-3

thúŋ, cìa, thúŋcìa	flag, paper, paper flag
thúŋ thīī hēt dùaj cìa ə̀ən wāā thúŋcìa	A flag which is made of paper is called a paper flag.
sỳak, níilóŋ, sỳakníilóŋ	rope, nylon, nylon rope
sỳak thīī hēt dùaj níilóŋ ə̀ən wāā sỳakníilóŋ	A rope which is made of nylon is called a nylon rope.

khȳaŋnūŋ, khŏnsát	clothes, fur
khȳaŋnūŋ thīī hēt dùaj khŏnsát èən wāā khȳaŋnūŋkhŏnsát	Clothes which are made of fur are called fur clothes.
tiaŋ, màj, tiaŋmàj	bed, wood, wooden bed
tiaŋ thīī hēt dùaj màj èən wāā tiaŋmàj	A bed which is made of wood is called a wooden bed.

M-4

kêəp, jaaŋ	shoes, rubber
háw èən kêəp thīī hēt dùaj jaaŋ wāā jāāŋ daj?	What do we call shoes that are made of rubber?
mɔ̂ɔ, din	pot, earth
háw èən mɔ̂ɔ thīī hēt dùaj din wāā jāāŋ daj?	What do we call pots that are made of earth(enware)?
phâaphɛ́ɛ, mǎj	scarves, silk
háw èən phâaphɛ́ɛ thīī hēt dùaj mǎj wāā jāāŋ daj?	What do we call scarves that are made of silk?

C-1

A. tùu nūaj nìi hēt dùaj njǎŋ?	What is this table made of?
B. tùu nūaj nìi hēt dùaj lék	This table is made of metal (iron).

C-2

A. háw ə̀ən thúŋ thīī hēt dùaj cìa wāā jāāŋ daj?	What do we call flags that are made of paper?
B. háw ə̀ən thúŋ thīī hēt dùaj cìa wāā thúŋcìa	We call them paper flags.

C-3

A. sỳakmǎj mēēn sỳak thīī hēt dùaj màj, mēēn bɔɔ?	Silk rope is rope that is made of wood, is that right?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄ mēēn, sỳakmǎj mēēn sỳak thīī hēt dùaj mǎj	No that's not right, silk rope is rope made of silk.

C-4

A. sỳakmǎj mēēn sỳak thīī hēt dùaj njǎŋ?	What's a silk rope made of
B. sỳakmǎj mēēn sỳak thīī hēt dùaj mǎj	Silk rope is rope made of silk.

ຖາມນັກຮຽນເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ອັນໃດເຮັດດ້ວຍຫຍັງ? ແລະເຮົາເອີ້ນມັນວ່າຢ່າງໃດ? ລອງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນທຽບຄຸນພາບຂອງສິ່ງຂອງຕາງໆເບິ່ງດູ! ເຊັ່ນ: ໂຕະໄມ້ດີກວ່າໂຕະເຫລັກບໍ? ຫລືວ່າແນວໃດ ດັ່ງນີ້.

NOTES

1) hēt dùaj means 'to be made of'. The response to the question ... hēt dùaj njǎŋ 'What is...made of?' is some type of material, such as glass, paper, iron, etc.

Q:	tùu nìi hēt dùaj njǎŋ?	'What is this cabinet made of?'
A:	tùu nìi hēt dùaj màj	'This cabinet is made of wood.'

2) thīī 'that, which, who' functions as a Noun Phrase substitute and as a connective in NP+thīī+VP constructions: thúŋ thīī hēt dùaj cìa 'A flag (that is) made of paper'.

3) háw èən ... wāā jāaŋ daj? (Lit. how do we call) 'What do we call...?' is used in requesting the name of something háw èən kêəp thīī hēt dùaj jaaŋ wāā jāāŋ daj? 'What do we call shoes that are made of rubber?'

APPLICATION

Complete the following sentences.

(a) wɛ̄ɛ̄ntaa hēt dùaj ______________________________
(Eye glasses are made of glass.)

(b) tóʔ hēt dùaj ______________________________ lɛʔ lék
(Tables are made of metal and wood.)

(c) móoŋ hēt dùaj ______________________________
(Watches are made of silver.)

(d) lōt ______________________________ lék
(Cars are made of iron.)

Answers: 1(a)kɛ̀ɛw (b)màj (c)ŋə́n (d)hēt dùaj

(e) jaaŋ lōt hēt dùaj ______________________________ ____
(Car tires are made of rubber.)

(f) sỳak thīī hēt dùaj mǎj ə̀ən wāā ______________________
(Rope that is made of silk is called silk rope.)

(g) pátuu thīī ____________________ ə̀ən wāā pátuu kɛ̀ɛw
(Doors that are made of glass are called glass doors.

(h) kátāā thīī hēt dùaj wǎaj ə̀ən wāā ___________________
(Baskets that are made of rattan are called rattan baskets.)

(i) kə̂əp ______________ ə̀ən wāā kə̂əp nǎŋ.
(Shoes that are made of leather are called leather shoes.)

(j) thɔ̌ŋ thīī hēt dùaj plaastík ______________ thɔ̌ŋ plaastík
(Bags that are made of plastic are called plastic bags.)

2) Answer the following questions:

(a) háw ə̀ən mɔ̂ɔ thīī hēt dùaj thɔ́ɔŋ dɛɛŋ wāā jāāŋ daj? ______
(What do we call a pot that is made of copper?)

(b) háw ə̀ən wɛ̌ɛn thīī hēt dùaj khám wāā jāāŋ daj? __________
(What do we call rings that are made of gold?)

(c) háw ə̀ən pâakkaa thīī hēt dùaj plaastík wāā jāāŋ daj??
__________ (What do we call pens that are made of plastic?)

Answers: 1(e)jaaŋ (f)sỳak mǎj (g)hēt dùaj kɛ̀ɛw (h)kátāā wǎaj
(i)thīī hēt dùaj nǎŋ (j)ə̀ən wāā 2(a)mɔ̂ɔ thɔ́ɔŋdɛɛŋ
(b)wɛ̌ɛn khám (c)pâakkaa plaastík

(d) háw ə̀ən kápaw thīī hēt dùaj nǎŋ wāā jāāŋ daj? ________
(What do we call bags that are made of leather?)

(e) háw ə̀ən hýan thīī hēt dùaj màj phāj wāā jāāŋ daj? ________
________ (What do we call houses that are made of bamboo?)

(f) háw əən tāŋ ìi thīī hēt dùaj wǎaj wāā jāāŋ daj? ________
(What do we call a chair that is made of rattan?)

(g) háw ə̀ən sáam thīī hēt dùaj lék wāā jāāŋ daj? ________
(What do we call a dish that is made of metal?)

(h) háw ə̀ən thǒŋ thàw thīī hēt dùaj fâaj wāā jāāŋ daj? ________
(What do we call socks that are made of cotton?)

(i) háw əən sŷa thīī hēt dùaj mǎj wāā jāāŋ daj? ________
(What do we call a blouse that is made of silk?)

(j) háw ə̀ən sáam thīī hēt dùaj cìa wāā jāāŋ daj? ________
(What do we call plates that are made of paper?)

Answers: 2(d)kápaw nǎŋ (e)hýan màj phāj (f)tāŋ ìi wǎaj
(g)sáam lék (h)thǒŋthàw fâaj (i)sŷa mǎj (j)sáam cìa

CYCLE 72

M-1

khĭan	write
láaw khĭan dùaj njăŋ?	What did he write with?
tát	cut
láaw tát dùaj njăŋ?	What does he cut (it) with?
khút	dig
láaw khút dùaj njăŋ?	What did he dig with?
māt	tie
láaw māt dùaj njăŋ?	What did he tie with?
khâam mɛɛnàm	cross the river
láaw khâam mɛɛnàm dùaj njăŋ?	What did he cross the river with?
dəənthǎaŋ	travel
láaw dəənthǎaŋ dùaj njăŋ?	How did he travel?

M-2

tát, lȳaj	cut, saw
khácàw si tát dùaj lȳaj	They will cut with saws.
māt, wăaj	tie, rattan
khácàw si māt dùaj wăaj	They will tie (it) with rattan.
khút, cók	dig, hoe
khácàw si khút dùaj cók	They will dig with hoes.

khâam mɛɛnàm, thɔɔnmàj	cross the river, logs
khácàw si khâam mɛɛnàm dùaj thɔɔnmàj	They will cross the river with logs.
dəənthááŋ, khȳaŋ bin	travel, airplanes
khácàw si dəən thááŋ dùaj khȳaŋ bin	They will travel with airplanes.
thǎj náa, thǎj	plow the rice field, plows
khácàw thǎj náa dùaj thǎj	They plow the ricefield with plows.
phááj hýa, màj phááj	paddle the boat, paddle
khácàw phááj hýa dùaj màj phááj	They paddle the boat with paddles.

C-1

A. càw si khǐan dùaj njǎŋ?	What will you write with?
B. khɔ̂j si khǐan dùaj pâakkaa	I will write with a pen.

C-2

A. láaw si tát màj dùaj cók, mɛɛn bɔɔ?	He will cut wood with a hoe, is that right?
B. bɔɔ mɛɛn, láaw si tát màj dùaj lȳaj	No, he will cut wood with a saw.

ຈົ່ງສົມມຸດປັນຫາຂຶ້ນ ແລ້ວໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນແກ້ເປັນພາສາລາວເບິ່ງດູ! ຖ້າຫາກວ່າການກະທຳສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງ ດ້ວຍວິທີໃດວິທີນຶ່ງ ບໍ່ສຳເຣັດຜົນ ຂະເຈົ້າຄິດວ່າຈະມີທາງແກ້ໄຂໄດ້ຢ່າງໃດ?

NOTES

1) VP + dùaj + NP (Instrument) is used to indicate what device or means is used to perform some activity:

khácàw tát màj dùaj lȳaj	'They cut the wood with a saw.'
khácàw si māt dùaj wăaj	'They'll tie it up with rattan.'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi pâakkaa láaw cȳŋ khĭan dùaj sɔ̆ɔdam.

(b) din jūū nìi khɛ̆ɛŋ lăaj cáʔ khút dùaj njăŋ kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj

(c) thâawāā tát dùaj lȳaj-thámmādaa bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj láaw si tát dùaj lȳaj-tát-lék

(d) kaan dəən tháaŋ dùaj lōt câak wíaŋcan paj hăa lŭaŋ phābaaŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ pɔ̂ɔtpháj

(e) phɔ̄ɔ̄ náa jūū mýaŋ láaw thăj náa dùaj thăj nɔ̀ɔj

(f) láaw sɔ̀ɔk hăa hýa bɔ̄ɔ̄ hĕn láaw cȳŋ khâam mɛ̄ɛ̄ nàm dùaj thɔ̄ɔ̄n màj

---

Answers: 1(a)He didn't have a pen so he wrote with a pencil (b)The earth here is too hard to be able to be dug with anything. (c)If it can't be cut with an ordinary saw, he will cut it with a hacksaw. (d)Traveling by car from Vientiane to Luang Prabang is not safe. (e)Rice farmers in Laos plow their fields with small plows. (f)He wasn't able to find a boat, so he crossed the river on a log.

(g) dəən tháaŋ dùaj khȳaŋ bin wáj kwāā kaan dəəntháaŋ dùaj lōt

(h) láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùu wāā cáʔ māt dɔ̂ɔk màj nìi dùaj njăŋ

(i) thâawāā háw bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi màj-pháaj háw si tɔ̀ɔŋ pháaj hýa dùaj mýj

(j) láaw njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùu wāā diaw nìi háw át sĭaŋ dàj dùaj khȳaŋ át sĭaŋ

2. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaŋ khón kinkhâw dùaj ____________________
(Some people eat with their hands.)

(b) khɔ̂j hɔ̄ɔ̄ ____________________ plaastík.
(I wrapped it with sheets of plastic.)

(c) láaw aw nîip sāj kan ________________ lék nîip cìa
(He attached it with a paper clip.)

(d) láaw hāp fáŋ khāaw____________________
(He received the news by radio.)

(e) yàj khɔ̂j cáʔ dəəntháaŋ káp bàan ______________
(My older sister will return by train.)

Answers: 1(g)Traveling by plane is faster than by car. (h)He didn't know what he would tie up the flowers with. (i)If we don't have any paddles, we'll have to paddle the boat by hand. (j)He isn't yet aware that now we can record sound with a tape recorder.
2(a)mýy (b)dùan phɛ̄ɛ̄n (c)dùaj (d)dùaj wīthānjūʔ (e)dùaj lōt fáj

(f) khón ciin ______________________ màj-thūū
(Chinese eat with chopsticks)

(g) khácaw khón ____________________ būaŋ
(They stir it with a spoon.)

(h) sét ɔ̂ɔk dùaj ______________________
(Wipe it off with a soft cloth.)

(i) njōk lōt khŷn ___________________ mɛ̄ɛ̄ hɛ́ɛŋ
(Raise the car with a jack.)

(j) dyŋ __________________________ sǎaj sôo
(Pull it with a chain.)

(k) mātt dùaj ___________________________
(Tie it with a rope.)

(l) thǔu ɔ̂ɔk ___________________________
(Clean it with a brush.)

(m) __________________ dùaj nàm jaa làaŋ pâak
(Wash out your mouth with mouth wash.)

(n) __________________ dùaj kɛ́ɛs
(Cook with gas.)

Answers: 2(f)kin khâw dùaj (g)dùaj (h)phâa ɔ̄ɔ̄n ɔ̄ɔ̄n (i)dùaj
(j)dùaj (k)sỳak (l)dùaj pɛɛŋ (m)làaŋ pâak (n)khúakin

(o) ____________________ dùaj lék khăj kápɔɔŋ
(Open it with a can opener.)

(p) láaw thŷyk māt taa __________ phâa __________
(His eyes were bound with a black cloth.)

(q) tháa ______________________________
(Paint it with yellow paint.)

(r) sēt thûaj sáam ______________________
(Dry the dishes with a cloth.)

(s) phát ______________________________
(Polish it with a cloth.)

(t) tɔ̂ɔk tápuu ____________________ khɔ̀ɔn tii
(Drive the nail with a hammer.)

(u) tít taam bə̄ŋ ________________ khŷaŋ léedàa
(Track it by radar.)

(v) lɛ̄ɛ̄n ____________ kásɛ̆ɛ ______________
(Run it on electrical current.)

(w) ________________________ khwáam ót thón
(Work with patience.)

(x) ____________________ dùaj khwáam pámâat
(Don't drive carelessly.)

Answers: (o)khăj (p)dùaj... sĭi dam (q)dùaj sĭi lýaŋ (r)dùaj phâ (s)dùaj phâa (t)dùaj (u)dùaj (v)dùaj...fájfàa (w)hēt wìak dùaj (x)jāā kháp lōt

CYCLE 73

M-1

daŋ-fáj	to make a fire
càw si sàj njǎŋ daŋ-fáj?	What will you use for making a fire?
hɔ́ɔŋ, nāŋ	to underlay, place beneath; sit
càw si sàj njǎŋ hɔ́ɔŋ nāŋ?	What will you use to sit on?
lābaaj, nàm	to control the flow, water
càw si sàj njǎŋ lābaaj nàm?	What will you use to control the water flow?
sǎmlûat, bə̄ŋ	survey, inspect, look at, see
càw si sàj njǎŋ sǎmlûat bə̄ŋ?	What will you use for inspecting?
lỳak, mâak màj	select, choose; fruit
càw si sàj phǎj lỳak mâak màj?	Who will you use to select fruit?
kinkhâw	to have one's meal
càw si sàj njǎŋ kinkhâw?	What will you use to eat with?
phán, mýy	to wrap around, hand
càw si sàj njǎŋ phǎn mýy?	What will you use to wrap around your hand?

M-2

thāān	charcoal
khɔ̂j si sàj thāān daŋ-fáj	I'll use charcoal for making a fire.
cìa	paper
khɔ̂j si sàj cìa hɔ́ɔŋ nāŋ	I'll use paper to sit on.
kɔ̀ɔŋsɔ̄ɔŋ	binoculars
khɔ̂j si sàj kɔ̀ɔŋsɔ̄ɔŋ sǎmlûat bə̄ŋ	I'll use binoculars for inspection.
déknɔ̀ɔj	children
khɔ̂j si sàj déknɔ̀ɔj lỳak mâak màj	I'll use children to select fruit.
būaŋ, sɔ̂ɔm	spoon, fork
khɔ̂j si sàj būaŋ sɔ̂ɔm kin khâw	I'll use a spoon and fork to eat with.
khȳaŋcák	machine, engine, motor
khɔ̂j si sàj khȳaŋcák lābaaj nàm	I'll use a machine for controlling the flow of the water.
phâa	cloth
khɔ̂j si sàj phâa phán mýy	I'll use a cloth to wrap around my hand.

C-1

A. càw si sàj njǎŋ daŋ-fáj?	What will you use for building fire?
B. khɔ̂j si sàj thaan daŋ-fáj	I'll use charcoal for a fire.

C-2

A. càw si sàj cìa hēt njǎŋ?	What will you use paper for?
B. khɔ̂j si sàj cìa hɔ́ɔŋ nāŋ	I'll use paper to sit on.

ເວລາກະທຳວຽກການສິ່ງໃດສິ່ງນຶ່ງ ແລະຖ້າວ່າບໍ່ມີຂອງໃຊ້ແນວໃດແນວນຶ່ງ ຂະເຈົ້າຈະໃຊ້ຫຍັງແທນ?
ເປັນຕົ້ນວ່າ ເມື່ອບໍ່ມີຈ້ອນຫລືບ່ວງເຮົາກໍ່ຕ້ອງໃຊ້ມືກິນເຂົ້າ. ແລະອື່ນໆອີກໃນທຳນອງດຽວກັນ.

NOTES

1) sàj 'to use' + NP + VP may be used in a similar way to dùaj + NP, i.e. to indicate the means or device used for accomplishing something. Compare the two sentences:

khɔ̂j sàj būaŋ sɔ̂om kin khâw	(Lit. I use spoon fork to eat.) 'I eat with a spoon and fork.'
khɔ̂j kin khâw dùaj būaŋ sɔ̂om	'I eat with a spoon and fork.'

sàj may be used with persons as well as things, but should only be used by a person of superior status to one of lower status.

khɔ̂j sàj lùuk khɔ̂j paj sȳy khɔ̌ɔŋ hâj	'I have my child go shopping for me.' (I use my child go buy things for.)

APPLICATION

1) Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw ____________________ pyyn khūū khón khîi-lāk
(He uses a gun to scare off thieves.)

(b) khácàw sàj mìit-thɛ̌ɛ ____________________ hâj kan
(They used razors to shave their heads with.)

(c) láaw __________ khwáam phānjáanjáam hēt wìak con sǎmrēt
(He uses effort to work until he is successful.)

(d) láaw bɔ̄ɔ sálâat phɔ̄wāā láaw __________ hǔa khɔ̌ɔŋ láaw hâj pen pánjôot
(He is not clever since he has never used his head to advantage.)

(e) láaw _______________ pen khȳaŋ-mýy khɔ̌ɔŋ láaw
(He uses money as a tool.)

(f) wéeláa láaw pɛɛ nǎŋsȳy láaw ____________ wātcánáanūkom
(He didn't use a dictionary while translating the book.)

(g) láaw sàj ________________ phán bâat-phɛ̌ɛ láaw
(He used a clean cloth to wrap his wounds with.)

(h) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ khéəj sàj ŋén dooláa khɔ̂j khéəj _____ ŋén kîip
(I've never used dollars. I've only used kips.)

Answers: 1(a)sàj (b)thɛ̌ɛ hǔa (c)sàj (d)bɔ̄ɔ khéəj sàj (e)sàj ŋən (f)bɔ̄ɔ sàj (g)phâa sáʔâat (h)sàj tɛ̄ɛ

(i) láaw ______________ bɔ̄ɔ̄ phían mán cȳŋ phée jūū lỳaj
(He doesn't use his car carefully so it's always out of fix.)

(j) láaw ______________ khón-sàj láaw paj sỳy khɔ̆ɔŋ
(He uses his servant for (to go) shopping.)

(k) láaw sàj kɔ̀ɔŋ-thāāj-hùup __________ láaw cȳŋ ______ hùup
(He doesn't know how to use a camera so he didn't get any pictures.)

(l) láaw ______________ khón-sàj phɔ̄wāā láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ jâak hāp sàj khón ȳyn
(He doesn't want to be a servant since he doesn't want to be used by others.)

(m) ________________ phɛ̆ɛn-thīī sǎmlāp wáaŋ phɛ̆ɛnkaan
(Use a map for laying plans.)

(n) khón láaw __________________________ náa
(Laotians used water buffaloes for plowing.)

(o) láaw ______________________________Parker
(He uses a Parker pen.)

(p) láaw _____________ sɛ̆ɛŋ-taa sákót cít
(He uses his eyesight to hypnotize.)

(q) lɔ̄t khán nìi _____________ phɔ̄wāā khȳaˀcák mán taaj
(This car can't be used since its motor is dead.)

(r) thūk khón ____________ thīī míi khúnnāphàap dii
(Everybody likes to use things that are of good quality.)

(s) láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùucák ________________________________
(He doesn't know how to use it.)

Answers: (i)sàj lɔ̄t (j)sàj (k)bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen... bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj (l)bɔ̄ɔ̄ jâak pen (m)sàj (n)sàj khwáaj thǎj (o)sàj pâakkaa (p)sàj (q)sàj bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj (r)māk sàj khɔ̆ɔŋ (s)sàj

2) Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) khɔ̂j māk sàj thāān khúakin phɔ̄wāā mán sádûak dii

(b) khácàw bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi tāŋ ìi khácàw cȳŋ sàj cìa hɔ́ɔŋ nāŋ

(c) sáaw bàan jūū náj mýaŋ láaw sàj tɛ̄ɛ̄ būaŋ kinkhâw

(d) mȳa wéeláa fɔ̆n bɔ̄ɔ̄ tók phùak phɔ̄ɔ̄ náa sàj khȳaŋcák lābaaj nàm khâw náa

(e) khɔ̂j si sàj láaw paj tálâat hâj khɔ̂j phɔ̄wāā khɔ̂j míi wìak lǎaj

(f) láaw sàj khɔ̆ɔŋ lāw nìi bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen mán cȳŋ phée

(g) kaan sàj déknɔ̀ɔj hēt wìak khɔ̆ɔŋ phūū njāj njɔ̄ɔ̄m pen kaan kátham thīī bɔ̄ɔ̄ lɔ̀ɔpkhɔ̀ɔp

(h) sáaw bàan pháa kan sàj phâa phán hǔa phɔ̄wāā dɛ̂ɛt hɔ̀ɔn lǎaj

(i) thâawāā bɔ̄ɔ̄n nāŋ pỳan khácàw si tɔ̀ɔŋ sàj nɛ́ɛwdaj nɛ́ɛwnȳŋ hɔ́ɔŋ nāŋ

(j) kaan sàj sīŋkhɔ̆ɔŋ tāāŋ jāāŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ thŷyk tɔ̀ɔŋ taam phɔ̆npánjôot khɔ̆ɔŋ mán âat cáˀ nám phɔ̆n sǐa hǎaj máa sūū phūū sàj

---

Answers: 2(a)I like to use charcoal for cooking because it's nice and convenient. (b)They don't have chairs so they use paper to sit on. (c)Villagers in Laos use only spoons to eat with. (d)When there is no rain, rice farmers use an irrigating machine to bring water into the rice fields. (e)I'll have (lit. make use of) him go to the market for me since I have a lot of work. (f)He doesn't know how to use these things so they break down.(g)Using children to do the work of adults is not a circumspect act (is not advisable). (h)Villagers as a group wrap cloth around their heads because the sun is so hot. (i)If the seats are dirty, they'll have to use something or other to sit on. (j)Incorrect use of things may bring poor results to the user.

CYCLE 74

M-1

pátíthín	a calendar
pátíthín míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	What's a calendar for?
móoŋ	a clock, watch
móoŋ míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	What is a watch for?
sǎaj ɛɛw	a belt
sǎaj ɛɛw míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	What is a belt for?
pyyn	a gun
pyyn míi wáj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	What's a gun for?
kɔɔŋthāp	an army, armed forces
kɔɔŋthāp míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	What's an army for?
lōt-dáp-phéəŋ	a fire engine
lōt-dáp-phéəŋ míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	What's a fire engine for?
lōt- hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ	an ambulance
lōt-hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	What's an ambulance for?

M-2

banthūk, khóncép	to load on, transport; patient
lōt-hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ míi wàj sǎmlāp banthūk khóncép	An ambulance is for transporting sick persons.
bɔ̂ɔk, wéeláa	tell, time
móoŋ míi wàj sǎmlāp bɔ̂ɔk wéeláa	A clock is for telling time.
hāt	fasten
sǎaj-ɛɛw míi wàj sǎmlāp hāt	A belt is for fastening.
wánthíi	date
pátíthín míi wàj sǎmlāp bɔ̂ɔk wánthíi	A calendar is for giving the date.
pɔ̀ɔŋkan, páthèet	defend, country
kɔɔŋthāp míi wàj sǎmlāp pɔ̀ɔŋkan páthèet	An armed force is for defending the country.
mɔ̀ɔt fáj	to put out fire
lōt-dáp-phéəŋ míi wàj sǎmlāp mɔ̀ɔt fáj	A fire engine is for putting out fires.

C-1

A. pyyn míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	What's a gun for?
B. pyyn míi wàj sǎmlāp njíŋ	A gun's for shooting.

C-2

A. háw míi lōt-hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ?	What do we use an ambulance for?
B. háw míi lōt-hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ wàj sǎmlāp banthūk khón cép	We use an ambulance for transporting sick persons.

C-3

A. kɔɔŋthāp míi wàj sǎmlāp mɔ̀ɔt fáj mɛɛn bɔɔ?	Is it true that an army is for putting out fires?
B. bɔ̄ɔ mɛɛn, kɔɔŋthāp míi wàj sǎmlāp pɔ̀ɔŋkan páthèet	No, an army is for defending a country.

ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຊີ້ແຈງເຖິງພົນປໂຍດຂອງສິ່ງຂອງແຕ່ລະຢ່າງເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ອັນໃດມີໄວ້ສຳລັບຫຍັງ? ຫລືມີປໂຍດຢ່າງໃດ? ແຕ່ງເຣື່ອງປະກອບຂຶ້ນອີກ ໂດຍພຍາຍາມໃຫ້ມັນກ່ຽວຂ້ອງກັບວຽກການທີ່ແທ້ຂອງນັກຮຽນ.

NOTES

1) míi wàj sǎmlāp 'to be on hand for use as' occurs in the construction:

NP + míi wàj sǎmlāp + VP

móoŋ míi wàj sǎmlāp bɔ̂ɔk wéeláa

'A watch is for telling time.'

The negative of this construction seldom occurs. It is

NP + bɔ̄ɔ mɛɛn + míi wàj sǎmlāp ....

kə̂əp bɔ̄ɔ mɛɛn míi wàj sǎmlāp ....

'Shoes are not for .....'

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English.

(a) khȳaŋcák nìi míi wàj sǎmlāp njǎŋ khɔ̂j kɔɔ bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùu

(b) pâakkaa mɛ̄ɛ̄n khɔ̌ɔŋ thīī háw míi wàj sǎmlāp khǐan

(c) pyyn míi wàj sǎmlāp pɔ̀ɔŋkan tua

(d) aahǎan míi wàj sǎmlāp lìaŋ síiwīt khɔ̌ɔŋ khón lɛˀ sát

(e) ŋúa lɛˀ khwáaj sūan màak jūū náj eesía míi wàj sǎmlāp sàj wìak

(f) pỳm āān míi wàj sǎmlāp āān lɛˀ pỳm khǐan míi wàj sǎmlāp khǐan

(g) pỳm lāw nìi míi wàj sǎmlāp cêɛk-jaaj hâj nàk-hían thāw nàn

(h) kêəp bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n míi wàj sǎmlāp sāj hǔa tɛ̄ɛ̄ míi wàj sǎmlāp sāj tiin

(i) sɔ̌ɔ-khǎaw míi wàj sǎmlāp khǐan sāj kádaan

(j) màj banthāt míi wàj sǎmlāp khîit sên

Answers: 1(a)What this machine is for I don't know. (b)A pen is a thing that we have (on hand) for writing. (c)A gun is for defending oneself with. (d)Food is for nourishing life of people and animals. (e)In Asia most cattle and water buffaloes are for working. (f)A reading book is for reading and a writing book (notebook) is for writing in. (g)These books are for distribution to the students only. (h)Shoes aren't for wearing on your head but are for wearing on your feet. (i)Chalk is for writing on the blackboard. (j)A ruler is for drawing lines.

CYCLE 75

M-1

tɛɛkɔ̄ɔ̄n	in the past, previously
tɛɛkɔ̄ɔ̄n càw jūū sǎj?	Where were you previously?
tɛɛkìi	in the past, previously
tɛɛkìi càw jūū sǎj?	Where were you previously?
njáam	time, period
njáam khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj càw jūū sǎj?	Where were you at the time that I was sick?
mȳa, kɔ̄ɔ̄n	when; before, first
mȳa sɔ̌ɔŋ pii kɔ̄ɔ̄n càw jūū sǎj?	Where were you two years ago?
mỳy, khýyn, mỳy khýyn nìi	day, time; night, last night
mỳy khýyn nìi càw jūū sǎj?	Where were you last night?
lɛ̀ɛw	finish, over, last
mỳy wáncan lɛ̀ɛw nìi càw jūū sǎj?	Where were you last Monday?

M-2

pátcúban, pácam	the present, nowadays; to be stationed at
pátcúban nìi láaw thŷyk sōŋ paj pácam jūū pâaksée	Presently he is being sent to be stationed at Pakse.

mɔ̄ɔ̄, mȳa mɔ̄ɔ̄ mɔ̄ɔ̄ nìi	near, close; recently
mȳa mɔ̄ɔ̄ mɔ̄ɔ̄ nìi láaw thŷyk sōŋ paj pácam jūū pâaksée	Recently he was sent to be stationed at Pakse.
don, mȳa bɔ̄ɔ̄ don nìi	long time, not long ago
mȳa bɔ̄ɔ̄ don nìi láaw thŷyk sōŋ paj pácam jūū pâaksée	Not long ago he was sent to be stationed at Pakse.
kaaj, pii kaaj nìi	pass, go past; last year
pii kaaj nìi láaw thŷyk sōŋ paj pácam jūū pâaksée	Last year he was sent to be stationed at Pakse.
diaw nìi	now, at the present time
diaw nìi láaw thŷyk sōŋ paj pácam jūū pâaksée	Now he is being sent to be stationed at Pakse.

C-1

A. diaw nìi láaw pácam jūū sǎj?	Where is he stationed now?
B. diaw nìi láaw pácam jūū pâaksée	Right now he is stationed at Pakse.

C-2

A. tɛ̄ɛ̄kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw jūū sǎj?	Where was he before?
B. tɛ̄ɛ̄kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw jūū mýaŋ láaw	Before he was in Laos.

A. láaw hēt njǎŋ jūu hân?	What was he doing there?
B. láaw thŷyk sɔ̄ŋ paj pácam jūu hân	He was sent to be stationed there.

ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມກັນເຖິງເບື້ອງຫລັງຂອງຂະເຈົ້າເບິ່ງດູວ່າ ເວລາໃດຜູ່ໃດເຮັດຫຍັງຢູ່ໃສ? ແລະດົນປານໃດ? ຫລືວ່າເຫດການຕ່າງໆເປັນໄປໃນທຳນອງໃດ? ຕລອດທັງປະສົບປະການຕ່າງໆຂອງຂະເຈົ້າ.

NOTES

1) The following list of time expressions is given for your convenience:

(a) Days of the week in order: wán-can, wán-aŋkháan, wán-phūt wán-phāhát, wán-súk, wán-sǎw, wán-aathīt.

(b) Months of the year in order: mōkkáráa, kumpháa, míináa, méesǎa, phȳtsápháa, mīthúnáa, kɔɔrākádaa, sīŋhǎa, kan-njáa, túláa, phȳtsácíkaa, thánwáa.

(c) mỳy nìi 'today', mỳy wáan nìi 'yesterday', mỳy ȳyn 'tomorrow', mỳy hýy 'day after tomorrow', mỳy sýyn 'day before yesterday'.

(d) tɛɛ kɔ̄ɔn / tɛɛ kìi } 'previously', 'before', sɔ̌ɔŋ pii kɔ̄ɔn '2 years ago'.

aathīt lɛ̀ɛw nìi 'a week ago', mȳa mɔ̄ɔ mɔ̄ɔ nìi 'recently', mȳa bɔ̄ɔ don máa nìi 'not long ago', mỳy wán-aŋkháan lɛ̀ɛw nìi 'last Tuesday', mỳy wán-sùk nâa 'next Friday', pii kaaj nìi 'last year' diaw nìi / pátcúban nìi } 'now', pii nâa 'next year', náj wéeláa nàn 'at that time'.

(e) náj dyan mīthúnáa pii phán kàw hɔ̀ɔj hóksíp hâa 'in June 1965', mȳa wéeláa khɔ̂j jūū... 'when I was living in...', etc.

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) ______________ pii 1967 khɔ̂j jūū mýaŋ wíaŋcan.
(In August 1967 I was living in Vientiane.)

(b) ______________ láaw paj jìam-jaam phȳan láaw jūū hóoŋmɔ̆ɔ
(Last Thursday he went to visit his friend in the hospital.

(c) khɔ̂j dàj hùucák káp ỳaj láaw mȳa ______________ năŋsy̆y jūū sájŋɔ̄ɔ̄n
(I met his older sister when I was studying in Saigon.)

(d) ______________ láaw kamláŋ āān pỳm thīī nâa sŏncaj hŭa nȳŋ
(He is reading an interesting book at the present time.)

(e) ______________ khɔ̂j dàj khīī hýa paj pâaksée
(Not long ago I went to Pakse by boat.)

(f) ______________ khɔ̂j njáŋ thāāj-hùup bɔ̄ɔ̄ pen.
(Last year I still didn't know how to take pictures.)

Answers: 1(a)mȳa dyan sĭŋhăa (b)mỳy wánphāhát lɛ̀ɛw nìi (c)wéeláa khɔ̂j hían (d)pátcúban nìi (e)mȳa bɔ̄ɔ̄ don máa nìi (f)pii kaaj nìi

(g) càw káʔ wāā cáʔ púk hýan ______________ bɔɔ?

(Do you expect to build a house next month?)

(h) ______________ láaw pháa khácàw paj lîn náj mýaŋ

(Last night he took them out on the town.)

(i) ______________ khâw khôj bɔ̄ɔ̄ njáŋ cák mēt. diaw nìi khôj míi hók thǒŋ

(Two weeks ago I didn't have any rice left. Now I have six bags.)

(j) sǎn-njáa nìi dàj sén kan ______________

(This contract was signed not long ago.)

(k) ______________ láaw njáŋ thŷyk khǎŋ jūū bɔɔ?

(Was he still locked up last Tuesday?

(l) ______________ láaw dàj sàj nîi khɔ̌ɔŋ láaw con mót

(Recently he paid off all his debts.)

(m) khôj dàj ɔ̂ɔk câak thāhǎan ______________ 1945.

(I left military service on September 19, 1945.)

(n) khácàw thŷyk pɔ̄ɔ̄j tua mỳy khýyn nìi ______________

(They were released last night at 10:30 p.m.)

Answers: (g)náj dyan nâa nìi (h)mỳy khýyn nìi (i)mȳa sɔ̌ɔŋ aathīt kɔ̄ɔ̄n (j)mȳa bɔ̄ɔ̄ náan máa nìi (k)mỳy wán aŋkháan lɛ̀ɛw nìi (l)mȳa mɔ̄ɔ̄ mɔ̄ɔ̄ máa nìi (m)mȳa wánthíi síp kàw kan-njáa (n)wéeláa síp móoŋ khə̄ŋ

(o) _______________ khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi wìak hēt
(I was out of work last year.)

(p) _______________ láaw hētkaan jūū sáthǎanthùut áméelīkan jūū mýaŋ wíaŋcan
(At present he works at the American Embassy in Vientiane.)

(q) àaj láaw sǐa síiwīt mȳa _______________ pii kaaj nìi
(Her older brother died in July last year.)

(r) __________ khɔ̂j __________ déknɔ̀ɔj khɔ̂j māk hían wīˀsáa phúumīsâat
(When I was a child, I like to study geography.)

(s) _______________ khɔ̂j njáŋ hían nǎŋsȳy jūū thīī māhǎawīthānjáaláj óplóm khúu
(At that time I was still studying at the teacher training college.)

(t) _______________ mɛ̄ɛ̄ khɔ̂j dàj máa jaam phùak khɔ̂j
(The day before yesterday my mother came to visit us.)

(u) _______________ khɔ̂j khâw nɔ́ɔn wéeláa síp móoŋ khə̄ŋ
(Every night I go to bed at 10:30 p.m.)

Answers: (o)pii kaaj nìi (p)pátcúban nìi (q)dyan kɔɔrākádaa (r)mȳa wéeláa... njáŋ pen... (s)wéeláa nàn (t)mỳy sýyn (u)thūk thūk khýyn

(v) khɔ̂j si dàj phɔ̀ɔ láaw jūū thīī mýaŋ síkháakoo náj _____
_________ nâa
(I'll get to meet her in Chicago next December.)

(w) mȳa wéeláa bāāj sɔ̆ɔŋ móoŋ láaw _________ nɔ́ɔn _________
(He was still asleep at 2:00 p.m.)

(x) hàan-khăaj-khɔ̆ɔŋ jūū náj mýaŋ wíaŋcan pə̂ət wéeláa kàw
móoŋ sàw ______________
Shops in Vientiane open at 9:00 a.m. every day.)

(y) khɔ̂j hāp cɔɔŋ năŋsỳy phím ______________ nȳŋ sábáp
(I subscribe to a weekly newspaper.)

Answers: (v)dyan thán wáa (w)njáŋ... jūū (x)thūk thūk mỳy
(y)pácam sápádaa

CYCLE 76

M-1

lǎŋ câak, njàaj	after, move
lǎŋ câak nàn láaw si dàj njàaj ʔ̂ɔk paj jūū bàan nɔ̀ɔk	After that he will get to move out to the countryside.
lǎŋ câak nìi láaw si dàj njàaj ʔ̂ɔk paj jūū bàan nɔ̀ɔk	After this he will get to move out to the countryside.
lǎŋ câak pii phán kàw hɔ̀ɔj hóksíp láaw dàj njàaj ʔ̂ɔk paj jūū bàan nɔ̀ɔk	After 1960 he got to move out to the countryside.
tɔ̄ɔ̄, tɔ̄ɔ̄ { paj / máa }	join, extend; next, later on
tɔ̄ɔ̄ máa láaw dàj njàaj ʔ̂ɔk paj jūū bàan nɔ̀ɔk	Later on he got to move out to the countryside.
tɔ̄ɔ̄ paj láaw si dàj njàaj ʔ̂ɔk paj jūū bàan nɔ̀ɔk	Then he will get to move out to the countryside.

M-2

tɛ̄ɛ̄, tɛ̄ɛ̄ nàn máa	from, since; since then
tɛ̄ɛ̄ nàn máa láaw dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?	From that time on did he get to move anywhere?
tɛ̄ɛ̄ nìi paj	from now on
tɛ̄ɛ̄ nìi paj láaw si dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?	From now on will he get to move anywhere?

con, thə̆ŋ	until; reach, to get to
con thə̆ŋ pátcúban láaw dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?	Until now did he get to move anywhere?
náj mɔ̄ɔ mɔ̄ɔ nı̀i	soon
náj mɔ̄ɔ mɔ̄ɔ nı̀i láaw si dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?	Soon will he get to move anywhere?
ánáakhōt, kàj	future, near
náj ánáakhōt an kàj nı̀i láaw si dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?	In the near future will he get to move anywhere?
wáj, náj wáj wáj nı̀i	fast, in the very near future
náj wáj wáj nı̀i láaw si dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?	In the very near future will he get to move anywhere?

C-1

A. tɔ̄ɔ máa láaw dàj njàaj paj sǎj bɔɔ?	Later on did he get to move anywhere?
B. dàj njàaj, tɔ̄ɔ máa láaw dàj njàaj ɔ̂ɔk paj jūu bàan nɔ̀ɔk	Yes. Later on he got to move out to the countryside.

C-2

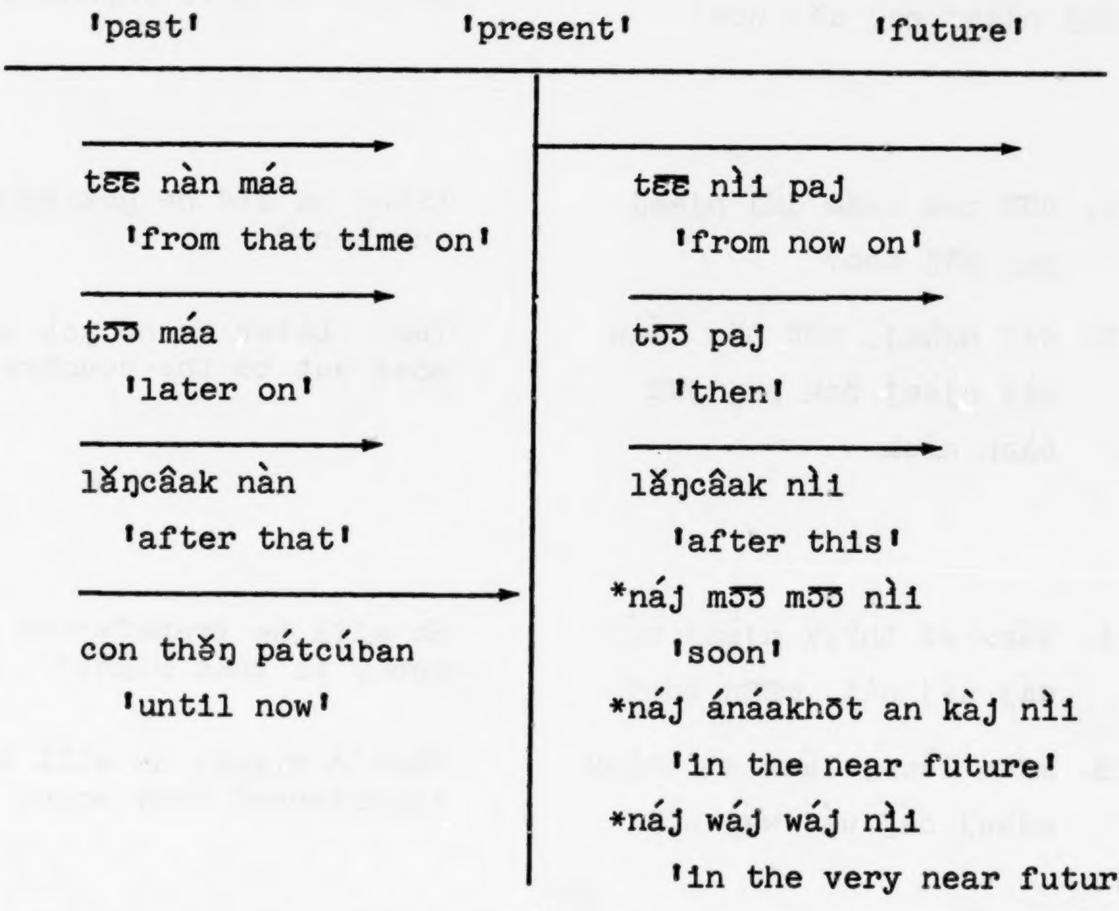
A. láaw si thŷyk njàaj náj wáj wáj nı̀i, mɛ̄ɛn bɔɔ?	He will be transferred very soon, is that right?
B. mɛ̄ɛn lɛ̀ɛw, láaw si thŷyk njàaj náj wáj wáj nı̀i	That's right, he will be transferred very soon.

A. láaw si thŷyk njàaj paj sǎj?	Where will he be transferred to?
B. láaw si thŷyk njàaj ɔ̂ɔk paj pácam jūu bàan nɔ̀ɔk	He will be transferred out and stationed in the countryside.

ການຝຶກຊ້ອມຕົວຢ່າງນີ້ສຳລັບບົດຮຽນນີ້ ການແຕ່ງເຣື່ອງປະກອບ ເພາະມີຄຳສັບກ່ຽວກັບເວລາ ຫລາຍຄຳ. ທ່ານຈະສາມາດເລົ່າເຣື່ອງຕັ້ງແຕ່ອະດີດໄປຈົນເຖິງອະນາຄົດໄດ້ຢ່າງບໍ່ມີປັນຫາເລີຍ.

NOTES

1) Certain types of time expressions can only be explained with reference to the 'present time'. On the diagram below 'present time' is represented by the line in the center of the page.



APPLICATION

1) Read the sentences below carefully and supply the time expression that fits best. In some cases more than one answer is acceptable.

(a) láaw jūū hýan lǎŋ nìi máa tàŋ tɛ̄ɛ̄ mỳy láaw kə̂ət ________ ________ láaw kɔɔ njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj njàaj paj sǎj

(b) láaw khə́əj thŷyk tamlûat cáp thȳa nȳŋ ______________ láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ kàa[1] kháp lōt wáj

(c) láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj tàŋcaj hían láaw cȳŋ sěŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ dàj. mỳy nìi láaw dàj bɔ̂ɔk káp phɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄ láaw wāā ______________ láaw si tàŋcaj hían lǎaj kwāā tɛ̄ɛ̄ kɔ̄ɔ̄n

(d) mȳa sīī pii kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw dàj paj kamkáp[2] wìak jūū tháaŋ phàak nǎa ______________ láaw dàj thŷyk njàaj lóŋ paj phàak tàj lɛʔ diaw nìi láaw kɔɔ njáŋ jūū hân

(e) diaw nìi láaw kamláŋ hían kaan hāksǎa khwáam sáʔ-âat khȳaŋcák ______________ láaw cáʔ dàj hían kaan sɔ̂ɔmpɛɛŋ

(f) wéeláa khɔ̂j paj jìam jaam láaw mȳa sɔ̌ɔŋ dyan kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ sábaaj lǎaj lɛʔ wéeláa khɔ̂j câak láaw máa láaw kɔɔ njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ sáw ______________ sɔ̌ɔŋ aathīt láaw kɔɔ mót bun[3]

---

[1] dare [2] supervise [3] die

Answers: 1(a)con thə̌ŋ pátcúban (b)tàŋ tɛ̄ɛ̄ nàn máa (c)tɛ̄ɛ̄ nìi paj (d)tɔ̄ɔ̄ máa (e)tɔ̄ɔ̄ paj (f)lǎŋ câak nàn máa

(g) lōt fáj khán nìi máa wɛ̄ɛ̄ nìi mỳy nìi pen thȳa sútthàaj ______________ khácàw si bɔ̄ɔ̄ aw mán lɛ̄ɛ̄n îik

(h) khɔ̂j dàj hāp cótmǎaj câak phȳan khɔ̂j mỳy sàw nìi, láaw khǐan bɔ̂ɔk khɔ̂j wāā ______________ láaw si pháa khɔ̀ɔp-khúa láaw máa jaam khɔ̂j, baaŋthíi âat cáʔ mɛ̄ɛ̄n aathīt nâa

(i) diaw nìi mía láaw kamláŋ thy̌y-pháa[4] ______________ láaw kɔɔ cáʔ dàj pen phɔ̄ɔ̄ khón

(j) láaw sɔ̀ɔkhǎa khón kháplōt khɔ̌ɔŋ láaw phɔ̄wāā phȳan láaw sȳŋ máa câak tāāŋ páthèet cáʔ máa hɔ̀ɔt dǝ̄ǝ̄n-njón[5] ______________, láaw hɔ̀ɔncaj[6] phɔ̄ʔ láaw jàan wāā cáʔ paj sàa

---

[4] to be pregnant [5] airport [6] anxious, uneasy

Answers: (g)lǎŋ câak nìi paj (h, i, j)náj mɔ̄ɔ̄ mɔ̄ɔ̄ nìi (or) naj ánáakhōt an kàj nìi (or) náj wáj wáj nìi

CYCLE 77

M-1

îik don paandaj	how much longer
càw si jūū nîi îik don paandaj?	How much longer will you be here?
îik cák pii	how many more years
càw si pen thāhǎan îik cák pii?	How many more years will you be in the service?
îik kaj paandaj	how much farther
càw si njāāŋ paj îik kaj paandaj?	How much farther will you walk?
îik cák mỳy	how many more days
càw si nɔ́ɔn jūū hóoŋmɔ̌ɔ îik cák mỳy?	How many more days will you be confined in the hospital?
îik cák sūamóoŋ	how many more hours
càw si hētwìak jūū nîi îik cák sūamóoŋ?	How many more hours will you be working here?
îik cák pii	how many more years
càw si aasǎj jūū nîi îik cák pii?	How many more years will you live here?

M-2

îik sɔ̌ɔŋ aathīt	two more weeks
khɔ̂j si hían pháasǎa láaw îik sɔ̌ɔŋ aathīt	I will study Lao language for two more weeks.

îik cák sɔ̆ɔŋ săam mỳy	about two or three more days
khɔ̂j si phāk jūū nîi îik cák sɔ̆ɔŋ săam mỳy	I will stay here for about two or three more days.
îik pámáan hók cét dyan	about six or seven more months
khɔ̂j si hētkaan jūū nîi îik pámáan hók cét dyan	I will be working here for about six or seven more months.
nākhían îik náj láaw síp khón	approximately ten more students
khɔ̂j si míi nākhían îik náj láaw síp khón	I will have approximately ten more students.
náj lāwāāŋ síphâa hăa sáaw hŭa	between 15 to 20 books
khɔ̂j si sỳy pỳm dàj îik náj lāwāāŋ síphâa hăa sáaw hŭa	I will be able to buy between 15 to 20 more books.

M-3

ɔ̂ɔk câak thāhăan	leave the military service
njáŋ îik don paandaj láaw [cȳŋ] si dàj ɔ̂ɔk câak thāhăan?	How much longer before he gets to leave the service?
dàj hāp ŋə́ndyan	receive salary
njáŋ îik cák aathīt láaw [cȳŋ] si dàj hāp ŋə́ndyan?	How many more weeks before he gets his salary?

máa hɔ̀ɔt	arrives
njáŋ îik pámáan cák sūamóoŋ láaw [cȳŋ] si máa hɔ̀ɔt	About how many more hours before he arrives?
hían, sǎmlēt	study; complete, finish
njáŋ îik náj láaw cák pii láaw [cȳŋ] si hían sǎmlēt?	Approximately how many more years before he finishes his studies?
khâw pen thāhǎan	join the military service
njáŋ îik cák dyan láaw [cȳŋ] si khâw pen thāhǎan?	How many more months before he joins the service?
câak paj	leave, go away
njáŋ îik cák náathíi láaw [cȳŋ] si câak càw paj?	How many more minutes before he leaves you?
pɛɛŋ	fix, repair
njáŋ îik cák mỳy láaw [cȳŋ] si pɛɛŋlōt lɛ̀ɛw?	How many more days before he finishes fixing cars?

M-4

sīī, sūamóoŋ	four, hour
njáŋ îik pámáan sīī sūamóoŋ	In about four more hours.
bɔ̄ɔ̄ don paandaj	not a very long time
njáŋ îik bɔ̄ɔ̄ don paandaj	In not much longer.
bɔ̄ɔ̄ lǎaj sūamóoŋ	not many hours
njáŋ îik bɔ̄ɔ̄ lǎaj sūamóoŋ	In not many more hours.

sīi hâa mỳy	four or five days
njáŋ îik sīi hâa mỳy	In four or five days.
bɔ̄ɔ thə̆ŋ dyan	less than a month
njáŋ îik bɔ̄ɔ thə̆ŋ dyan	In less than a month.
bɔ̄ɔ kəən sǎam aathīt	not more than three weeks
njáŋ îik bɔ̄ɔ kəən sǎam aathīt	In not more than three weeks.
khɔ̄ŋ sūamóoŋ phɔ́ɔdii	exactly half an hour
njáŋ îik khɔ̄ŋ sūamóoŋ phɔ́ɔdii	In exactly half an hour.

C-1

A. càw si hían pháasǎa láaw îik don paandaj?	How much longer will you be studying the Lao language?
B. khɔ̂j si hían pháasǎa láaw îik sǎamsíp aathīt	I'll be studying Lao for thirty more weeks.

C-2

A. càw si pen thāhǎan îik pámáan cák pii?	About how many more years will you be in the service?
B. khɔ̂j si pen thāhǎan îik pámáan sɔ̌ɔŋ pii	I'll be in the service for about two more years.

C-3

A. càw si njāāŋ paj îik náj láaw cák sūamóoŋ?	Approximately how many more hours will you walk?
B. khɔ̂j si njāāŋ paj îik náj láaw sɔ̆ɔŋ sūa móoŋ	I'll walk for approximately two more hours.

C-4

A. càw si jūū nám láaw îik cák aathīt?	How many more weeks will you be with her?
B. khɔ̂j si jūū nám láaw îik cák sɔ̆ɔŋ săam aathīt	I'll be with her about two or three more weeks.

C-5

A. nján îik cák sūamóoŋ láaw [cȳŋ] si máa hɔ̀ɔt?	How many more hours before he arrives?
B. nján îik bɔ̄ɔ lăaj sūamóoŋ	In not many more hours.

C-6

A. nján îik don paandaj láaw [cȳŋ] si dàj hāp ŋə́ndyan?	How much longer before he gets his salary?
B. nján îik bɔ̄ɔ kəən sɔ̆ɔŋ aathīt.	In not more than two weeks.

C-7

A. njáŋ îik cák dyan láaw [cȳŋ] si dàj ȍɔk thāhǎan?	How many more months before he gets out of the service?
B. njáŋ îik bɔ̄ɔ̄ thɤ̌ŋ dyan	In less than a month.

C-8

A. njáŋ îik don paandaj láaw [cȳŋ] si paj thɤ̌ŋ?	How much longer before he arrives (there)?
B. njáŋ îik pámáan sūamóoŋ khɤ̄ŋ	In one and a half more hours.

ຄຳວ່າ "ຍັງ" ນັ້ນນັກຮຽນກໍໄດ້ຮຽນມາກ່ອນແລ້ວ ມີແຕ່ "ອີກ" ເທົ່ານັ້ນທີ່ຂະເຈົ້າຈະຕ້ອງຫັດໃຊ້. ຈົ່ງໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຖາມກັນວ່າ ຍັງອີກດົນປານໃດໃຜສິເຮັດຫຍັງ? ຫລືເຫດການແນວໃດຈະເກີດຂຶ້ນ? ແລະຕໍ່ນ້ນໄປເດ?

NOTES

1) îik means 'to be more, additional'. When it is followed by Time Expressions, it refers to a period of time beginning at the present and continuing. The focus is on the amount of time involved.

khȍj si pen thāhǎan îik hók pii	'I will be a soldier for six more years.'

2) nján îik + Time Expressions also refers to a period of time beginning at the present time and continuing, but the focus is on an event which will take place after a certain period of time.

njáŋ îik hók pii khȍj (cȳŋ) si dàj ȍɔk thāhǎan	'In 6 more years I'll get out of the service.'

nján îik + Time Expression comes at the beginning of the sentences; whereas, îik + Time Expression comes at the end.

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks below using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw si jyyn jūū hân ______________________________

(How many more minutes will she stand there?

(b) khɔ̂j si sɔ̆ɔn jūū hóoŋhían nìi ______________________

(I'll teach at this school for approximately 3 more years.)

(c) láaw si tɔ̀ɔŋ tii-cák ______________________________

(How much longer will she have to type?)

(d) ______________________________ khâw-cīī láaw kɔɔ si mót

(In about 2 more days he will be out of bread.)

(e) láaw si nɔ́ɔn ____________________________________

(How much longer will she be asleep?)

(f) láaw khóŋ cáˀ sūaŋsáw pháaj náj wéeláa ______________

(It will not be more than 3 weeks before he recovers.)

(g) khɔ̂j si bɔ̄ɔ thâa jūū nîi __________________________

(I will not wait here many minutes more.)

Answers: 1(a)îik cák náathíi (b)îik náj làaw sǎam pii (c)îik don paandaj (d)îik pámáan sɔ̆ɔŋ mỳy (e)îik don paandaj (f)bɔ̄ɔ kəən sǎam aathīt (g)îik lǎaj náathíi

(h) ________________ hók sūamóoŋ khɔ̂j kɔɔ si mýa bàan
(In less than 6 hours more I'll go home.)

(i) ________________ láaw kɔɔ si lə̀ək kaan
(In about 10 minutes more he'll be out of work.)

(j) ________________ pỳm kɔɔ si lɛ̀ɛw
(In about 5 or 6 more days the book will be finished.)

(k) ________________ láaw cȳŋ si thŷyk keen khâw pen thāhǎan?
(How many more weeks before he gets drafted into the army?)

(l) càw káʔ wāā cáʔ jūū nîi ____________________________?
(How much longer do you plan to stay here?)

(m) ________________ mỳy khɔ̂j kɔɔ si dàj phɔ̀ɔ láaw
(In less than half a day I will meet her.)

(n) ________________ khɔ̂j kɔɔ si ɔ̂ɔk kin bìa bamnáan
(It will not be very many more years before I retire.)

(o) càw si paj tiisə́k jūū náj wîatnáam ________________?
(How many more weeks will you go fight in Vietnam?)

Answers: (h)njáŋ îik bɔ̄ɔ̄ kəən (i)njáŋ îik síp náathíi (j)njáŋ îik hâa hók mỳy (k)njáŋ îik cák aathīt (l)îik don paandaj (m)njáŋ îik bɔ̄ɔ̄ thə̌ŋ khə̄ŋ (n)njáŋ îik bɔ̄ɔ̄ lǎaj pii (o)îik cák aathīt

(p) ______________________ khɔ̂j kɔɔ siipaj nɔ́ɔn dàj
(It will not be many more hours before I can go to bed.)

(q) càw si sỳy pỳm ______________________
(How many more books will you buy?)

(r) háw njáŋ míi wéeláa hían ______________________
(How much more time do we have to study?)

2) Cover the Lao and see if you can translate the English back into Lao.

Answers: (p)njáŋ îik bɔ̄ɔ̄ lăaj sūamóoŋ (q)îik cák hŭa
(r)îik lăaj paandaj

CYCLE 78

M-1

taamthámmādaa	normally
taamthámmādaa khácàw māk kin aahǎan nɛ́ɛw daj?	What kind of food do they normally like to eat?
sūanmàak	mainly
sūanmàak khácàw māk kin aahǎan nɛ́ɛw daj?	What kind of food do they mainly like to eat?
láaŋ thȳa	sometimes
láaŋ thȳa khácàw māk kin aahǎan nɛ́ɛw daj?	What kind of food do they like to eat sometimes?
láaŋ mỳy	somedays
láaŋ mỳy khácàw māk kin aahǎan nɛ́ɛw daj?	What kind of food do they like to eat somedays?
dooj thūa paj lɛ̀ɛw	generally
dooj thūa paj lɛ̀ɛw khácàw māk kin aahǎan nɛ́ɛw daj?	What kind of food do they like to eat generally?
dooj sáphɔ̄ʔ lɛ̀ɛw	in particular
dooj sáphɔ̄ʔ lɛ̀ɛw khácàw māk kin aahǎan nɛ́ɛw daj?	What kind of food do they like to eat in particular?
baaŋ wéeláa	sometimes
baaŋ wéeláa khácàw māk kin aahǎan nɛ́ɛw daj?	What kind of food do they like to eat sometimes?

M-2

aahǎan phét	spicy food
taamthámmadaa khácàw māk kin aahǎan phét	They normally like to eat spicy food.
aahǎan khém	salty food
sūanmàak khácàw māk kin aahǎan khém	They mainly like to eat salty food.
khɔ̌ɔŋwǎan	sweets
láaŋthȳa khácàw māk kin khɔ̌ɔŋwǎan	Sometimes they like to have sweets.
aahǎan sôm	sour food
láaŋ mỳy khácàw māk kin aahǎan sôm	Somedays they like to eat sour food.
aahǎan cŷyt	bland food
dooj thūa paj lɛ̀ɛw khácàw māk kin aahǎan cŷyt	Generally they like bland food.
aahǎan phỳyn mýaŋ	native food
dooj sáphɔ̄ʔ lɛ̀ɛw khácàw māk kin aahǎan phỳyn mýaŋ	Particularly they like to eat native food.
aahǎan tāaŋ páthèet	exotic food
baaŋ wéeláa khácàw māk kin aahǎan tāaŋ páthèet	Sometimes they like to eat exotic food.

C-1

A. taamthámmādaa càw māk kin aahǎan nέεw daj?	Normally what kind of food do you like to eat?
B. taamthámmādaa khój māk kin aahǎan phét	Normally I like spicy food.

C-2

A. càw si kin aahǎan nέεw daj?	What kind of food will you have?
B. khôj si kin aahǎan jīīpūn	I will have Japanese food.
A. aahǎan jīīpūn cŷyt, mε̄ε̄n bɔɔ?	The Japanese food is bland, isn't it?
B. mε̄ε̄w lὲεw, taamthámmādaa khón jīīpūn māk kin aahǎan cŷyt	That's right, normally the Japanese like to eat bland food.

ຂຽນເຣື່ອງປະກອບຂຶ້ນອີກ ໂດຍບັລຍາຍເຖິງນິສັຍຂອງບຸກຄົນທີ່ສົມມຸດຂຶ້ນຜູ້ນຶ່ງວ່າ ລາງເທື່ອລາວມັກເຮັດຫຍັງ? ແລະບາງເວລາອື່ນອີກເດ? ດັ່ງນີ້ຕໍ່ໄປ. ດຽວນີ້ນັກຮຽນຂອງທ່ານກໍຄວນຈະເວົ້າພາສາລາວໄດ້ຫລາຍຕື່ມແລ້ວ. ສະນັ້ນ ທ່ານຈຶ່ງຫມັ່ນຊວນຂະເຈົ້າຄຸຍເຣື່ອງຕ່າງໆທີ່ເກີດຂຶ້ນປະຈໍາວັນ ໂດຍໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າມີໂອກາດໄດ້ເວົ້າຫລາຍທີ່ສຸດ. ທັງນີ້ເພື່ອໃຫ້ຂະເຈົ້າເກີດຄວາມເຄີຍຊິນໃນການສະແດງທັສນະຂອງຂະເຈົ້າເປັນພາສາລາວ. ຕໍ່ໄປຂະເຈົ້າກໍ່ຈະຄ່ອຍໆມີຄວາມເຊື່ອຫມັ້ນໃນຕົນເອງຍິ່ງຂຶ້ນ.

APPLICATION

1. Fill in the blanks using the English as a guide:

(a) ______________ síp mɔ́ɔŋ khɔ̂j cȳŋ lūk câak bɔ̄ɔ̄n nɔ́ɔn
(Normally I don't get up until 10 o'clock.)

(b) ______________ láaw bə̄ŋ thóorāthāt jūū con də́k
(Sometimes she stays up late watching TV.)

(c) ______________ lɛ̀ɛw mía khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ māk mǎa
(My wife dislikes dogs in particular.)

(d) náj rāduu nǎaw ______________ fǒntók mót mỳy
(Some days in Winter it rains all day.)

(e) sáaw náa ______________ sàj khwáaj thǎj náa khácàw
(Most farmers use water buffaloes for plowing rice fields.)

(f) ______________ kinkhâw thīaŋ phūū diaw
(I usually eat lunch by myself.)

(g) ______________ khɔ̂j hēt wìak náj mỳy wán-sǎw
(Normally I work on Saturday.)

(h) ______________ khácàw kin paa lɛ̄ʔ aahǎan thālée
(They mainly eat fish and sea food.)

Answers: 1(a)taamthámmādaa (b)láaŋ thȳa (c)dooj sáphɔ̄ʔ
(d)láaŋ mỳy (e)sūan màak (f)taamthámmādaa khɔ̂j
(g)taamthámmādaa (h)sūan màak

(i) ______________ láaw wàw pháasǎa aŋkít

(Normally he speaks English.)

(j) ______________ khɔ̂j tɔ̀ɔŋ thâa láaw káp bàan thə̌ŋ sɔ̌ɔŋ sūa móoŋ

(Sometimes I have to wait 2 hours for her to come home.)

(k) ______________ lɛ̀ɛw láaw māk máa sàa sáaw hǎa sǎamsíp náathíi

(She generally comes 20 to 30 minutes late.)

(l) ______________ lɛ̀ɛw khɔ̂j māk khɔ̌ɔŋ wǎan

(I like desserts in particular.)

Answers: (i)taamthámmādaa (j)láaŋ thȳa (k)dooj thūaj paj
(l)dooj sáphɔ̄ʔ

CYCLE 79

M-1

cáˀtɔ̀ɔŋ	must
thâawāā láaw si paj láaw cáˀtɔ̀ɔŋ lỳak aw náaj tháaŋ	If he is going, he must choose a guide.
khúań cáˀ	ought to
thâawāā láaw si paj láaw khúan cáˀlyàk aw náaj tháaŋ	If he is going, he ought to choose a guide.
âat cáˀ	might
thâawāā láaw si paj láaw âat cáˀ lỳak aw náaj tháaŋ	If he is going, he might choose a guide.
khýy si	be likely
thâawāā láaw si paj láaw khýy si lỳak aw náaj tháaŋ	If he is going, he will be likely to choose a guide.
campen tɔ̀ɔŋ	it will be necessary for
thâawāā láaw si paj láaw campen tɔ̀ɔŋ lỳak aw náaj tháaŋ	If he is going, it will be necessary for him to choose a guide.
khóŋ cáˀ	probably
thâawāā láaw si paj láaw khóŋ cáˀ lỳak aw náaj tháaŋ	If he is going, he will probably choose a guide.

M-2

thŷyk lāj ɔ̂ɔk	be fired
kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj láaw âat cáˀ thŷyk lāj ɔ̂ɔk	Before he goes, he might be fired.
tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋ tàŋ, hǔa nâa	to appoint; chief, boss
kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj láaw âat cáˀ thŷyk tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋ tàŋ pen hǔa nâa	Before he goes, he might be appointed to be a chief.
thŷyk lỳak khŷn pen páthaán	be chosen to be the chairman
kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj láaw âat cáˀ thŷyk lỳak khŷn pen páthaán	Before he goes, he might be chosen to be the chairman.
tátsǐncaj hâj càw jūū	decide to let you stay
kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj láaw âat cáˀ tátsǐncaj hâj càw jūū	Before he goes, he might decide to let you stay.
hěndii hâj càw láa phāk	consent to letting you take leave
kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj láaw âat cáˀ hěndii hâj càw láa phāk	Before he goes, he might consent to letting you take leave.
ɔ̂ɔk khám sāŋ hâj cáp láaw	issue an order to arrest him
kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj láaw âat cáˀ ɔ̂ɔk khám sāŋ hâj cáp láaw	Before he goes, he might issue an order to arrest him.
tóklóŋcaj hâj pɔ̄ɔ̄j khácàw	agree to free them
kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj láaw âat cáˀ tóklóŋcaj hâj pɔ̄ɔ̄j khácàw	Before he goes, he might agree to free them.

C-1

A. thâawāā láaw si paj láaw si hēt njǎŋ?	What is he going to do before he goes?
B. láaw si lŷak aw náaj tháaŋ	He will choose a guide.

C-2

A. kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj láaw âat cá? hēt njǎŋ bɔɔ?	Might he do something before he goes? (is it probable)
B. kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj láaw âat cá? tátsǐncaj pɔ̄ɔ̄j khácàw	Before he goes, he might decide to free them.

C-3

A. kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj láaw si campen tɔ̀ɔŋ hâj càw láa phāk bɔɔ?	Before he goes, will it be necessary for him to let you take leave?
B. mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw, kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj láaw campen tɔ̀ɔŋ hâj khɔ̂j láa phāk	Yes, before he goes, it is necessary for him to let me take leave.

ຍັງອີກບໍ່ທໍ່ໃດບົດຮຽນ ປຶ້ມຫົວນີ້ກໍຈະຈົບແລ້ວ. ສະນັ້ນຈົ່ງຫມັ່ນພານັກຮຽນລົມກັນເລື້ອຍໆ.ແລະຖ້າເຫັນວ່າຂະເຈົ້າຍັງອ່ອນຢູ່ຕອນໃດ ກໍຈົ່ງພາຂະເຈົ້າຝຶກຊ້ອມອີກ. ເມື່ອມີການສົນທະນາກັນ ທ່ານກໍອາດຈະຈຳເປັນຕ້ອງໃຊ້ຄຳໃຫມ່ເປັນບາງຄຳ. ແຕ່ການຈົດຄຳໃຫມ່ໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນຈະເປັນການເສັຽເວລາເປົ່າໆ ແລະອາດຈະເຮັດໃຫ້ນັກຮຽນເກີດຄວາມທໍ້ຖອຍ.

NOTES

1) Words which occur in the position between NP (Subject) and MV are called 'preverbs'. One of the most important groups of preverbs are the 'modals': tɔ̀ɔŋ, khúan, âat, khýy, campen tɔ̀ɔŋ, khóŋ, etc. Each of these words is used in a wide range of situations, and there is some overlap in their usage in Lao. It is, therefore, difficult to indicate their meaning briefly. The following description is meant as a general guide only. The only good way to learn how to use them is to observe the situations in which Lao speakers use each of them and to imitate their usage.

(a) (cáʔ/ si) tɔ̀ɔŋ 'must, have to'. The situation requires it.

háw tɔ̀ɔŋ sĭa khaa fáj fàa — 'We have to pay our electric bill.'

(b) khúan (cáʔ/ si) 'should, ought to'. Social or moral obligation or expectation.

càw bɔ̄ɔ khúan cáʔ kin lăaj — 'You shouldn't eat too much.'

(c) âat (cáʔ/ si) 'may, might'. Likelihood, expectation, possibility.'

láaw âat cáʔbɔ̄ɔ sábaaj lăaj — 'He may be very ill.'

(d) khýy (si / cáʔ) 'may, might'. Similar to âat

khýy si mɛ̄ɛn — 'It may be so.'

(e) khóŋ (cáʔ/ si) 'it is likely'. Probability.

láaw khóŋ cáʔbɔ̄ɔ hùu — 'It is likely that he doesn't know.'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) láaw __________ khǎaj khɔ̌ɔŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ mót dɔ̂ɔk phɔ̄wāā mỳy nìi
bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi khón paj tálâat lǎaj paandaj.

(She probably won't sell out her goods, since there aren't very many people going to the market today.)

(b) khácàw bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi lōt lɛʔ tháaŋ sên nìi bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi lōt thíaw
khácàw __________ njāāŋ paj

(They don't have a car and there are no cars on this road. They must necessarily walk.)

(c) láaw __________ máa phɔ̄wāā láaw si hēt wìak lɛ̀ɛw mỳy nìi

(He may come since he will have finished his work today.)

(d) kaan hāksǎa pīn pua hâj jūū sábaaj mɛ̄ɛ̄n sīŋ thīī háw
__________________ hēt

(Maintaining good health is the thing we must do.)

(e) dìaw nìi mán kaaj wéeláa máa dàj sɔ̌ɔŋ sūa móoŋ lɛ̀ɛw láaw
__________ bɔ̄ɔ̄ máa dɔ̂ɔk

(It's two hours past the time now. He must not be coming at all.)

(f) láaw __________ cāāj ŋén khāā hýan thūk thūk tòn dyan

(He has to pay the rent on his house at the beginning of each month.)

(g) láaw __________ paj hāp aw mía láaw kɔ̄ɔ̄n láaw si paj
kinkhâw
(He will have to go pick up his wife before going to eat.)

Answers: 1(a)khýy si (b)si campen tɔ̀ɔŋ (c)âat cáʔ (d)campen tɔ̀ɔŋ (e)khóŋ cáʔ (f)tɔ̀ɔŋ (g)si tɔ̀ɔŋ

(h) thâawa̅a̅ càw khɔ̌ɔ thɔ̀ɔt nám láaw láaw __________ ápháj hâj càw

(If you apologize to him, he may forgive you.)

(i) láaw paj dàj sɪ̅ɪ̅ sūa móoŋ lɛ̀ɛw, paan nìi láaw __________ hɔ̀ɔt lɛ̀ɛw

(He's been going for 4 hours already. He must have arrived by now.)

(j) mȳa hùu wa̅a̅ mán bɔ̅ɔ̅ dii lɛ̀ɛw phùakháw kɔɔ bɔ̅ɔ̅ _______ hēt

(If (we) know it's not good, we shouldn't do it.)

(k) phə̄n __________ bɔ̅ɔ̅ kin phɔ̄wa̅a̅ aahǎan nìi phét lǎaj

(He may not eat since the food is very hot.)

(l) dék nɔ̀ɔj __________ sȳa fáŋ khám sāŋsɔ̌ɔn khɔ̌ɔŋ phɔ̅ɔ̅ mɛ̅ɛ̅

(Children should listen to the advice of their parents.)

(m) mȳa wéeláa láaw bɔ̅ɔ̅ míi kaan hēt láaw kɔɔ __________ hǎa ŋə́n dùaj wɪ̄thíi daj wɪ̄thíi nȳŋ

(During the times when he is out of work, he must seek money by any means or other.)

(n) láaw __________ taaj phɔ̄wa̅a̅ tha̅a̅n mɔ̌ɔ bɔ̅ɔ̅ míi jaa cáʔ hāksǎa láaw

(He may die since the doctor doesn't have any medicine to cure him.)

(o) láaw __________ paj sỳy khȳaŋkin ju̅u̅ tálâat phɔ̄wa̅a̅ láaw bɔ̅ɔ̅ míi aahǎan

(He will have to go buy food at the market because he doesn't have any food.)

Answers: (h)âat cáʔ (i)khóŋ cáʔ (j)khúan (k)âat cáʔ (l)khúan (m)campen tɔ̀ɔŋ (n)âat cáʔ (o)si tɔ̀ɔŋ

(p) mȳa wéeláa láaw míi ŋə́n láaw kɔɔ _________ thɔ̀ɔn ŋə́n
wàj sǎmlāp wéeláa campen
(When he has money, he should save it for time of need.)

(q) diaw nìi láaw thūk lǎaj láaw _________ khɔ̌ɔtháan kin
(Now he's very poor. He has to beg for food.)

(r) nàm mán lōt bɔ̄ɔ lǎaj háw _________ paj bɔ̄ɔ hɔ̀ɔt
(There's not much gas in the car, we may not get there.)

(s) khɔ̂j khīt wāa láaw _________ paj bɔ̄ɔ dàj dɔ̂ɔk phɔ̄wāa
láaw míi wìak lǎaj
(I think he may not be able to go at all because he has a lot of work.)

(t) khácàw hāk kan lǎaj khɔ̂j khīt wāa mȳa wéeláa tɛ̄ɛŋ ŋáan
kan lɛ̀ɛw khácàw _________ míi khwáam súk nám kan
(They're very much in love. I think they should be very happy after they get married.)

(u) khɔ̂j dàj njín wāa láaw jâak paj bə̄ŋ síinée tɛ̄ɛ don lɛ̀ɛw
thâawāa càw súan láaw láaw _________ paj
(I heard she has been wanting to go to the movies for a long time, if you ask her, she may go.)

(v) láaw si _________ paj sɔ̀ɔk hǎa khácàw phɔ̄wāa láaw
tɔ̀ɔŋkaan khácàw
(He will have to go look for them because he needs them.)

(w) phɔ̄ɔ mɛ̄ɛ _________ sāŋsɔ̌ɔn lùuk khɔ̌ɔŋ ton phȳa njāj máa
khácàw cáʔ pen khón dii
(Parents should train their children so that when they grow up they'll be good people.)

Answers: (p)khúan (q)campen tɔ̀ɔŋ (r)khýy si (s)khýy si (t)khóŋ cáʔ (u)khýy si (v)tɔ̀ɔŋ (w)khúan cáʔ - khýy and âat are practically interchangeable and cáʔ and si are.

CYCLE 80

M-1

paj, mýaŋ láaw	to go, Laos
càw khə́əj dàj paj mýaŋ láaw bɔɔ?	Have you ever been to Laos?
hěn, sát, pálâat	see, animal, strange
càw khə́əj hěn sát pálâat	Have you ever seen a strange animal?
síim, sìin, khwáaj	taste, meat, flesh, water buffalo
càw khə́əj síim sìin khwáaj bɔɔ?	Have you ever tasted water buffalo meat?
āān, nǎŋ sýy phím	read, newspaper
càw khə́əj dàj āān nǎŋ sýy sýy phím sàat láaw bɔɔ?	Have you ever read the Sat Lao Newspaper?
títian	criticize
càw khə́əj dàj thŷyk títian bɔɔ?	Have you ever been criticized?
njɔ̀ɔŋ	compliment
càw khə́əj dàj thŷyk khácàw njɔ̀ɔŋ njɔ́ɔ bɔɔ?	Have you ever been complimented by them?
thŷyk keen pen thāhǎan	to be drafted
càw khə́əj dàj thŷyk keen pen thāhǎan bɔɔ?	Have you ever been drafted?

M-2

khə́əj	Yes. (I have...)
bɔ̄ɔ̄, njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj	No. (I have never...)

M-3

dàj paj mýaŋ láaw	to have been to Laos
khə́əj, khɔ̂j khə́əj dàj paj mýaŋ láaw lǎaj thȳa lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, I have been to Laos many times already.
thōtlɔ́ɔŋ	experiment
khə́əj, khɔ̂j khə́əj dàj thōtlɔ́ɔŋ lǎaj thȳa lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, I have experimented many times already.

M-4

sàj nɛ́ɛw nìi	use this kind
bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂j njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj dàj sàj nɛ́ɛw nìi cákthȳa	No, I have never used this kind at all.
sûup, jaa fīn	smoke, opium
bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂j njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj dàj sûup jaa fīn cákthȳa	No, I have never smoked opium at all.
khīt, tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋ ŋáan	think, get married
bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂j njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj khīt cá? tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋ ŋáan cákthȳa	No, I have never thought of getting married at all.

C-1

A. càw khə́əj dàj thŷyk títian bɔɔ?	Have you ever been criticized?
B. khə́əj	Yes.

C-2

A. láaw khə́əj dàj paj mýaŋ láaw bɔɔ?	Has he ever been to Laos?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj	No.

C-3

A. càw khə́əj dàj āān nǎŋsỹy phím sàat láaw bɔɔ?	Have you ever read the Sat Lao Newspaper?
B. khə́əj, khɔ̂j khə́əj dàj āān nǎŋsỹy phím sàat láaw sɔ̌ɔŋ sǎam thȳa lɛ̀ɛw	Yes, I have read the Sat Lao Newspaper two or three times already.

C-4

A. càw khə́əj dàj thŷyk tamlûat cáp bɔɔ?	Have you ever been arrested by the police?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, khɔ̂j njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj dàj thŷyk tamlûat cáp cákthȳa	No, I have never been arrested by the police.

ໃນບົດນີ້ກໍມີແຕ່ໃຫ້ຖາມນັກຮຽນເບິ່ງກ່ຽວກັບການໃຊ້ຄຳວ່າ"ເຄີຍ". ຂະເຈົ້າເຄີຍຫລືບໍ່ເຄີຍເຮັດຫຍັງ?

NOTES

1) khə́əj + VP is used to indicate that someone has experienced something.

khɔ̂j khə́əj paj pátheet láaw	'I have been to Laos.'
càw khə́əj pen wát bɔɔ?	'Have you ever had a cold?'

2) thŷyk + VP corresponds roughly to the passive in English. It occurs only with a very limited number of verbs, most of which have unpleasant connotations.

cáw thŷyk títian bɔɔ?	'Were you criticized?'

If an Agent is indicated, it occurs after thŷyk before VP:

láaw thŷyk tamlûat cáp	(He was by a policeman arrested.) 'He was arrested by the policeman.'

3) The two constructions above frequently occur together:

càw khə́əj dàj thŷyk khǎŋ bɔɔ?	'Have you ever been locked up?'

APPLICATION

1. Complete the following sentences using the English as a guide:

(a) tàŋ tɛ̄ɛ̄ khɔ̂j kə̂ət máa khɔ̂j ______________ hə̆n khón phūū
nàn cák thȳa
(I have never seen that man before in my life.)

(b) càw ______________ tamlûat cáp cák thȳa bɔɔ?
(Were you ever arrested by the police?)

(c) nɔ̀ɔŋ sǎaw khɔ̂j khə́əj ______________ kát sǎam thȳa lɛ̀ɛw
(My younger sister was bitten 3 times by a dog.)

(d) lùuk sáaj kók láaw ______________ khâa taaj (sȳa síiwīt)
jūū náj sǒŋkháam wîatnáam
(Her oldest son was killed in the War in Vietnam.)

(e) khácàw ______________ paj jūū mýaŋ lǔaŋ phābaaŋ
(They have never lived in Luang Prabang.)

(f) pii kaaj nìi láaw pen khâj wát nāj ______________
(Last year she had the flu 2 times.)

(g) láaw ______________ wāāŋ ŋáan cák thȳa
(He has never been out of a job.)

Answers: 1(a)njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj (b)khə́əj thŷyk (c)thŷyk mǎa
(d)thŷyk (e)njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj (f)sɔ̌ɔŋ thȳa (g)bɔ̄ɔ̄
khə́əj

(h) càw khə́əj dàj paj tiisə́k cák thȳa bɔɔ? bɔ̄ɔ̄, __________
(Have you ever been to war? Not yet.)

(i) càw ______________ keen khâw pen thāhǎan bɔɔ? __________
(Were you drafted? Yes, I was.)

(j) càw dàj āān nǎŋsȳy phím mỳy nîi __________ bɔɔ? āān
lɛ̀ɛw ______________
(Have you read today's newspaper? Yes, 2 or 3 times.)

(k) láaw ______________ sàj nîi mót cák thȳa
(He has never been completely out of debt.)

(l) khɔ̂j ______________ dàj hían pɛɛŋ lōt
(I have never learned how to repair cars.)

Answers: (h)njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj (i)khə́əj thŷyk... khə́əj (j)lɛ̀ɛw... sɔ̌ɔŋ sǎam thȳa (k)bɔ̄ɔ̄ khə́əj (l)njáŋ bɔ̄́ɔ̄ khə́əj

CYCLE 81

M-1

paj nám khɔ̂j	go with me
míi phǎj si paj nám khɔ̂j bɔɔ?	Is there anybody going with me?
míi, ŋə́n	have, money
míi phǎj míi ŋə́n bɔɔ?	Is there anybody who has money?
nāpthy̌y sâatsánǎaphūt	believe in Buddhism
míi phǎj nāpthy̌y sâatsánǎaphūt bɔɔ?	Is there anyone that believes in Buddhism?
lɛ̀ɛk (aw), ŋə́n doolàa	to exchange for, dollars
míi phǎj jâak lɛ̀ɛk aw ŋə́n doolàa bɔɔ?	Is there anybody who wants to exchange (other money) for dollars?
títtaam, khāāw nìi	follow, keep up; news
míi phǎj jâak títtaam khāāw nìi bɔɔ?	Is there anybody who wants to keep up with the news?
phūū taaŋnâa	representative
míi phǎj jâak pen phūū taaŋnâa phùakháw bɔɔ?	Is there anybody who wants to be our representative?
aasǎa sámák	to volunteer
míi phǎj jâak aasǎa sámák bɔɔ?	Is there anybody who wants to volunteer?

M-2

sɔ̄ɔ̄jly̌a	help, assist
míi, phùakháw si paj sɔ̄ɔ̄jly̌a khácàw	Yes, we will go help them.
pákan, khwáam pɔ̂ɔpháj	guarantee, safety
míi, phùakháw si pákan khwáam pɔ̂ɔtpháj khɔ̆ɔŋ khácàw	Yes, we will guarantee their safety.
láajŋáan	report
míi, phùakháw si hēt láajŋáan hâj phə̄n	Yes, we will make reports to him.
wáaŋ phɛ̆ɛnkaan	lay out a plan
míi, phùakháw si pen phūū wáaŋ phɛ̆ɛnkaan	Yes, we will lay out the plan.
khùapkhúm	supervise
míi, phùakháw si khùapkhúm khácàw	Yes, we will supervise them.
hâj khám nɛ̄?nám kɛ̄ɛ̄ khácàw	give them advice
míi, phùakháw si hâj khám nɛ̄?nám kɛ̄ɛ̄ khácàw	Yes, we will give them advice.

M-3

paj sɔ̄ɔ̄jly̌a khácàw	to go help them
bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj si paj sɔ̄ɔ̄jly̌a khácàw	There is no one to go help them.
pákan khwáam pɔ̂ɔtpháj khɔ̌ɔŋ khácàw	to guarantee their safety
bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj si pákan khwáam phɔ̂ɔtpháj khɔ̌ɔŋ khácàw	There is no one to guarantee their safety.
hēt láajŋáan hâj phə̄n	to make reports to them
bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj hēt láajŋáan hâj phə̄n	There is no one to make reports to them.
hâj khám nɛʔ nám kɛ̄ɛ̄ khácàw	to give them advise
bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj hâj khám nɛʔnám kɛ̄ɛ̄ khácàw	There is no one to give advice to them.

C-1

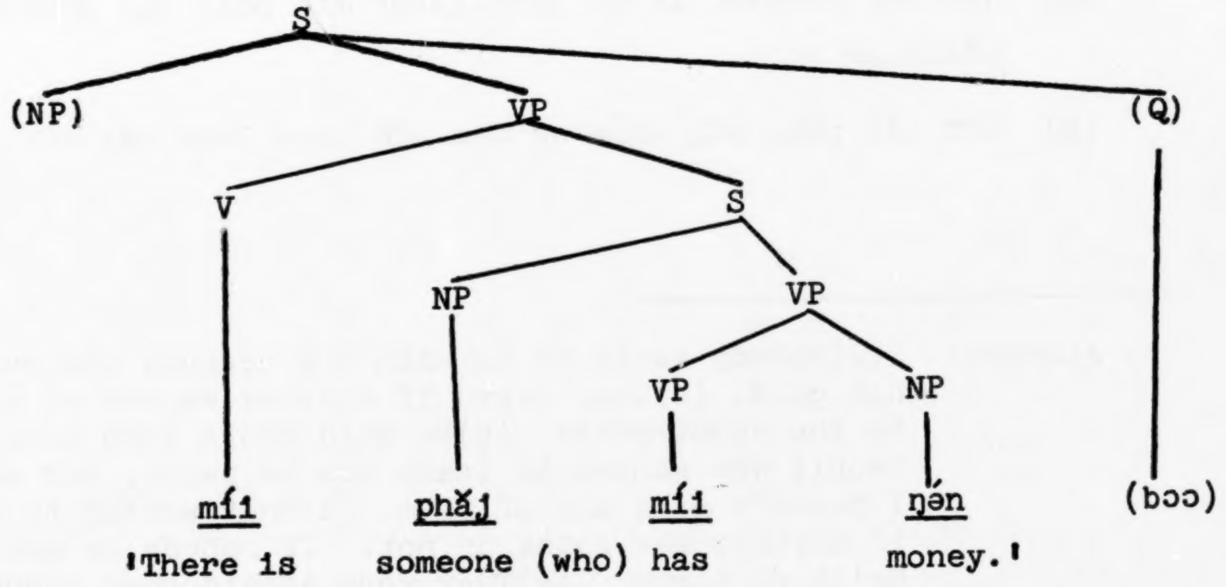
A. míi phǎj si paj sɔ̄ɔ̄jly̌a láaw bɔɔ?	Is there anybody that is going to help him?
B. míi, khɔ̂j si paj sɔ̄ɔ̄jly̌a láaw	Yes, I will go help him.

C-2

A. míi phǎj jâak títtaam khāāw nìi bɔɔ?	Is there anybody who wants to keep up with this news?
B. míi, láaw jâak títtaam khāāw nìi	Yes, she wants to keep up with this news.
A. míi phǎj jâak aasǎa sámák bɔɔ?	Is there anybody who wants to volunteer?
B. bɔ̄ɔ̄, bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj	No, nobody does.

NOTES

1) The verb míi may have Sentence Complements when it occurs without NP (Subject).



The indefinite pronoun phǎj 'someone, anyone' (as contrasted with the question word phǎj 'who') can not occur as NP (Subject) except in included sentences.

APPLICATION

1. Translate the following sentences into English:

(a) bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj jâak paj nám láaw phɔ̄wāā lōt láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ dii

(b) phə̄n thǎam wāā míi phǎj jâak ɔ̂ɔk paj bàan nɔ̀ɔk bɔɔ

(c) láaw wàw wāā míi lǎaj khón jâak hían kaan tɛ̀ɛm hùup tɛ̄ɛ̄
wāā diaw nìi khɔ̂j njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ hěn phǎj máa

(d) khácàw jâak hùu wāā si míi phǎj paj bɔɔ ly̆y bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi,
thâawāā bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj paj láaw si paj phūūdiaw

(e) khácàw jàan wāā si bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj sǒncaj khácàw cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄
aw máa

(f) lōt láaw bɔ̄ɔ̄ dii cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi bɔɔlīsát daj jâak hāp pákan

(g) jūū náj sáthǎan thùut améelīīkan míi phǎj dàj pháasǎa
wîatnáam bɔɔ?

(h) bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj hâj khám nɛʔnám kɛ̄ɛ̄ láaw, láaw cȳŋ hēt phít

---

Answers: 1(a)Nobody wants to go with him because his car is not good. (b)They asked if anybody wanted to go out to the countryside. (c)He said there were lots of people who wanted to learn how to paint, but so far I haven't seen any of them. (d)They wanted to know if anybody was going or not. If nobody is going, he'll go alone. (e)They were afraid that nobody would be interested, so they didn't bring them. (f)His car is no good, so no company wants to insure it. (g)Is there anyone at the American Embassy that knows Vietnamese? (h)There was no one to advise her, so she did wrong.

(i) thâawāā bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj bɔ̂ɔk tháaŋ láaw, láaw âat cáʔ lǒŋ tháaŋ kɔɔ dàj

(j) khɔ̂j bɔ̄ɔ̄ hùu wāā pen njǎŋ cȳŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj hâj khwáam sǒncaj náj lỳaŋ nìi

(k) njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj máa hǎa khɔ̂j bɔɔ? bɔ̄ɔ̄, njáŋ bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi

(l) bɔ̄ɔ̄ míi phǎj máa pásúm láaw lə́əj khīt wāā mỳy nìi bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n pásúm

---

Answers: (i)If there is no one to tell him the way, he may get lost. (j)I don't know why nobody is interested in this situation. (k)Hasn't anyone come to see me yet? No, not yet. (l)Nobody came to the meeting, so he thought the meeting wasn't today.

CYCLE 82

M-1

nàmmán thīī dàj máa câa mǔu	the oil that we get from a pig
háw ə̀ən nàmmán thīī dàj máa câak mǔu wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call the oil that we get from a pig?
nàm thīī dàj máa câak mâakkìan	liquid that we get from an orange
háw ə̀ən nàm thīī dàj máa câak mâakkìaŋ wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call liquid that we get from an orange?
nàm thīī dàj máa câak háŋphə̌ŋ	liquid that we get from a bee hive
háw ə̀ən nàm thīī dàj máa câak háŋphə̂ŋ wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call liquid that we get from a bee hive?
nàm thīī ɔ̂ɔk máa câak taa	liquid that comes out of the eyes
háw ə̀ən nàm thīī ɔ̂ɔk máa câak taa wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call liquid that comes out of the eyes?
thùut thīī pen thāhǎan	an envoy who is in the military service
háw ə̀ən thùut thīī pen thāhǎan wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call an envoy who is in the military service?
kápuu thīī aasǎj jūū náj thālée	crabs that live in the sea
háw ə̀ən kápuu thīī aasǎj jūū náj thālée wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call crabs that live in the sea?

paa thīī aasǎj jūū nǎj nàm cŷyt	fish that live in fresh water
háw ə̀ən paa thīī aasǎj jūū nǎj nàm cŷyt wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call fish that live in fresh water?

M-2

nàmmán mǔu	lard
háw ə̀ən nàmmán thīī dàj máa câak mǔu wāā nàmmán mǔu	We call the oil that we get from pigs, lard.
nàm mâakkìaŋ	orange juice
hàw ə̀ən nàm thīī dàj máa câak mâakkìaŋ wāā nàm mâakkìaŋ	We call the liquid that we get from oranges, orange juice.
nàm phə̂ŋ	honey
háw ə̀ən nàm thīī dàj máa câak háŋphə̂ŋ wāā nàm phə̂ŋ	We call the liquid that we get from a bee hive, honey.
nàm taa	tears
háw ə̀ən nàm thīī ɔ̂ɔk máa câak taa wāā nàm taa	We call the liquid that comes out of the eyes, tears.
thùut thāhǎan	a military attaché
háw ə̀ən nàm thīī pen thāhǎan wāā thùut thāhǎan	We call an envoy who is in the military service, a military attaché.

kápuu thālée	sea crabs
háw əən kápuu thīī aasǎj jūū náj thālée wāā kápuu thālée	We call crabs that live in the sea, sea crabs.
paa nàmcŷyt	freshwater fish
háw əən paa thīī aasǎj jūū náj nàm cŷyt wāā paa nàmcŷyt	We call fish that live in fresh water, fresh-water fish.

C-1

A. háw əən nàm thīī dàj máa câak mâakkìaŋ wāā jāaŋdaj?	What do we call liquid that we get from an orange?
B. háw əən nàm thīī dàj máa câak mâakkìaŋ wāā nàm mâakkìaŋ	We call the liquid that we get from an orange, orange juice.

C-2

A. paa nàmcŷyt mɛ̄ɛn njǎŋ?	What is fresh-water fish?
B. paa nàmcŷyt mɛ̄ɛn paa thīī aasǎj jūū náj nàmcŷyt	Fresh-water fish are fish that live in fresh-water.

ໃນບົດຮຽນບົດນີ້ແລະບົດຕໍ່ໄປ ນັກຮຽນກໍ່ມີແຕ່ຈະຝຶກຫັດກ່ຽວກັບການຊອກຫາເຂົ້າໃຈຄວາມຫມາຍຂອງ ຄຳ ຫລືການປະກອບຄຳໃນພາສາລາວ. ຍັງມີອີກຫລາຍວິທີການຢູ່ ທ່ານລອງຄິດມາສອນຂະເຈົ້າຕື່ມດູ!

NOTES

(Cycles 82-85)

Cycles 82-85 all might be called 'Word definition' cycles, since each of them illustrates a different way of defining words in Lao. There are other ways that are not included in these cycles. You are encouraged to discover them. You may do so by asking your instructor for the definition of any new words you may encounter in your reading or elsewhere. Avoid asking for English translations of Lao words.

CYCLE 83

M-1

aaj	shy
háw ə̀ən khón thīī aaj jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who is always shy?
khàan	lazy
háw ə̀ən khón thīī khàan jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who is always lazy?
jàan	afraid
háw ə̀ən khón thīī jàan jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who is always afraid?
túaʔ túaʔ	lying
háw ə̀ən khón thīī túaʔ jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who's given to lying?

lāk	stealing
háw əən khón thīī lāk jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who's given to stealing?
kooŋ	cheating
háw əən khón thīī kooŋ jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who's given to cheating?

M-2

lýym	forgetful
háw əən khón thīī lýym jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón khîi lýym	We call a person who's given to forgetting, a forgetful person.
bāj	grumbling
háw əən khón thīī bāj jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón khîi bāj	We call a person who's given to grumbling, a grumbler.
khîi thīī	stinginess
háw əən khón thīī khîi thīī jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón khîi thīī	We call a person who's given to stinginess, a stingy person.
khúj	bragging
háw əən khón thīī khúj jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón khîi khúj	We call a person who's given to bragging, a bragger.

máw	drunk
háw ə̀ən khón thīī máw jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón khîi máw	We call a person who is always drunk, a drunkard.
hâj	crying
háw ə̀ən khón thīī hâj jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón khîi hâj	We call a person who's given to crying, a cry baby.

M-3

khón khîi khūk	jailbird
khón khîi khūk mɛ̄ɛn khón nɛ́ɛwdaj?	What's a jailbird?
khón khîi phàj	cardsharp
khón khîi phàj mɛ̄ɛn khón nɛ́ɛwdaj?	What's a cardsharp?
khón khîi jaa	opium addict
khón khîi jaa mɛ̄ɛn khón nɛ́ɛwdaj?	What's an opium addict?
khón khîi phānjàat	sickly person
khón khîi phānjàat mɛ̄ɛn khón nɛ́ɛwdaj?	What's a sickly person?
khón khîi thùut	leper
khón khîi thùut mɛ̄ɛn khón nɛ́ɛwdaj?	What's a leper?

khón khîi lâw	alcoholic
khón khîi lâw mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón nɛ́ɛwdaj?	What's an alcoholic?

M-4

títkhūk jūū samə̌ə	is in and out of jail
khón khîi khūk mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī títkhūk jūū samə̌ə	A jailbird is a person who is in and out of jail.
lîn phàj pen kaan phānán	plays cards for money
khón khîi phàj mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī phàj pen kaan phānán	A cardsharp is a person who plays cards for money.
tít jaafīn	is addicted to opium
khón khîi jaa mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī tít jaafīn	An opium addict is a person who is addicted to opium.
dȳym lâw lǎaj kəən paj	drinks to excess
khón khîi lâw mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī dȳym lâw lǎaj kəən paj	An alcoholic is a person who drinks to excess.
bɔ̄ɔ̄ sabaaj jūū samə̌ə	always sick
khón khîi phānjàat mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī bɔ̄ɔ̄ sabaaj jūū samə̌ə	A sickly person is a person who is always sick.

C-1

A. háw ə̀ən khón thīī aaj jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who is always shy?
B. háw ə̀ən khón thīī aaj jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón khîi aaj.	We call a person who is always shy, a shy person.

C-2

A A. khón khîi khūk mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón nɛ́ɛwdaj?	What's a jailbird?
B. khón khîi khūk mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón títkhūk jūū samɛ̌ə.	A jailbird is the person who is in and out of jail.

C-3

(Students ask questions then instructor confirms. Example:)

1. S: háw ə̀ən khón thīī khàan jūū lỳaj wāā khón khîi khàan, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	T: mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw
2 S: háw ə̀ən khón thīī kin jūū lỳaj lỳaj wāā khón khîi kin, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	T: bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n.

CYCLE 84

M-1

hētwìak kīawkáp màj	works with wood
háw ə̀ən khón thīī hētwìak kīawkáp màj wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who works with wood?
pɛɛŋ lōt	fixes cars
háw ə̀ən khón thīī pɛɛŋ lōt wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who fixes cars?
hētwìak kīawkáp fájfàa	works with electricity
háw ə̀ən khón thīī hētwìak kīawkáp fájfàa wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who works with electricity?
púk hýan	builds houses
háw ə̀ən khón thīī púk hýan wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who builds houses?
pɛɛŋ móoŋ	repairs watches
háw ə̀ən khón thīī pɛɛŋ móoŋ wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who repairs watches?
tii khám	makes things out of gold
háw ə̀ən khón thīī tii khám wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who makes things out of gold?
tii lék	makes things out of iron
háw ə̀ən khón thīī tii lék wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who makes things out of iron?

M-2

sāāŋmàj	a wood worker
háw ə̀ən khón thīī hētwìak kīawkáp màj wāā sāāŋmàj	We call a person who works with wood, a wood worker.
sāāŋ pɛɛŋ lōt	car mechanic
háw ə̀ən khón thīī pɛɛŋ lōt wāā sāāŋ pɛɛŋ lōt	We call a person who fixes cars, a car mechanic.
sāāŋ fájfàa	an electrician
háw ə̀ən khōn thīī hētwìak kīawkáp fájfàa wāā sāāŋ fájfàa	We call a person who works with electricity, electrician.
sāāŋ púk hýan	house-builder
háw ə̀ən khón thīī púk hýan wāā sāāŋ púk hýan	We call a person who builds houses, a house-builder.
sāāŋ pɛɛŋ lék	a watch repair man
háw ə̀ən khón thīī pɛɛŋ móoŋ wāā sāāŋ pɛɛŋ móoŋ	We call a person who repairs watches, a watch repair man.
sāāŋ tii khám	a blacksmith
háw ə̀ən khón thīī tii lék wāā sāāŋ tii lék	We call a person who makes things out of iron, a blacksmith.
sāāŋ tii khám	a goldsmith
háw ə̀ən khón thīī tii khám waa sāāŋ tii khám	We call a person who makes things out of gold, a goldsmith.

M-3

sāāŋ tátphŏm	a barber
sāāŋ tátphŏm mɛ̄ɛ̄n phūū thīī hēt njăŋ?	What does a barber do?
sāāŋ kɔ̄ɔ̄ sâaŋ	a builder
sāāŋ kɔ̄ɔ̄ sâaŋ mɛ̄ɛ̄n phūū thīī hēt njăŋ?	What does a builder do?
sāāŋ thāājhùup	a photographer
sāāŋ thāājhùup mɛ̄ɛ̄n phūū thīī hēt njăŋ?	What does a photographer do?
sāāŋ tátkhȳaŋnūŋ	a tailor
sāāŋ tátkhȳaŋnūŋ mɛ̄ɛ̄n phūū thīī hēt njăŋ?	What does a tailor do?
sāāŋ tháasĭi	a painter
sāāŋ tháasĭi mɛ̄ɛ̄n phūū thīī hēt njăŋ?	What does a painter (workman) do?
sāāŋ tɛ̀ɛm	a painter
sāāŋ tɛ̀ɛm mɛ̄ɛ̄n phūū thīī hēt njăŋ?	What does a painter (artist) do?
sāāŋ pàn	a modeller, potter
sāāŋ pàn mɛ̄ɛ̄n phūū thīī hēt njăŋ?	What does a modeller do?

M-4

thīī tát phŏm pen	knows how to cut hair
sāāŋ tátphŏm mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī tát phŏm pen	A barber is a person who knows how to cut hair.
kɔ̄ɔ̄ sâaŋ pen	knows how to build
sāāŋ kɔ̄ɔ̄ sâaŋ mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī kɔ̄ɔ̄ sâaŋ pen	A builder is a person who knows how to build.
tát khȳaŋnūŋ pen	knows how to tailor
sāāŋ tátkhȳaŋnūŋ mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī tát khȳaŋnūŋ	A tailor is a person who knows how to make clothing.
thāājhùup pen	knows how to take pictures
sāāŋ thāājhùup mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī thāājhùup pen	A photographer is a person who knows how to take pictures.
tháasĭi pen	knows how to paint
sāāŋ tháasĭi mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī tháasĭi pen	A painter is a person who knows how to paint.
tɛ̀ɛmhùup pen	knows how to paint pictures
sāāŋ tɛ̀ɛm mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī tɛ̀ɛmhùup pen	A painter is a person who knows how to paint pictures.
pàn sīŋ khŏɔŋ dùaj dindâak pen	knows how to mold things with clay
sāāŋ pàn mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī pàn sīŋ khŏɔŋ dùaj dindâak pèn	A modeller is a person who knows how to mold things with clay.

C-1

A. háw ə̀ən khón thīī hētwìak kīawkáp màj wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who works with wood?
B. háw ə̀ən khón thīī hētwìak kīawkáp màj wāā sāāŋmàj	We call a person who works with wood, a woodworker.

C-2

A. sāāŋ tátphǒm mɛ̄ɛ̄n phūū thīī hēt njǎŋ?	What does a barber do?
B. sāāŋ tátphǒm mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī tátphǒm pen.	A barber is a person who knows how to cut hair.

C-3

(Student asks a question and instructor confirms: Example:)

1. S: háw ə̀ən khón thīī khúakin pen wāā sāāŋ khúakin, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ? T: bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n

2. S: háw ə̀ən khón thīī hēt kə̂əp pen wāā sāāŋ tátkə̂əp, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ? T: mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw

CYCLE 85

M-1

paj hóoŋhían	goes to school
háw ə̀ən khón thīī paj hóoŋhían wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who goes to school?
sýksǎa	is studying at a high level
háw ə̀ən khón thīī sýksǎa wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who is studying at a high level?
thɔ̄ɔ̄ŋthīaw	travelling
háw ə̀ən khón thīī thɔ̄ɔ̄ŋthīaw wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who is travelling?
pùn khón ȳyn	robs other people
háw ə̀ən khón thii pùn khón ȳyn wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who robs other people?
sŷypsǔan	investigates
háw ə̀ən khón thīī sŷypsǔan wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who investigates?
rōp sə́k	fights in a war
háw ə̀ən khón thīī rōp sə́k wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who fights in a war?
tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋ phéeŋ	composes songs
háw ə̀ən khón thīī tɛ̄ɛ̄ŋ phéeŋ wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who composes songs?

M-2

káp hýabin	pilots a plane, a pilot
háw əən khón thɨɨ káp hýabin wāā nākbin	We call the person who pilots a plane, a pilot.
khɨ̀an pỳm, nākkhɨ̀an	writes books, an author
háw əən khón thɨɨ khɨ̀an pỳm wāā nākkhɨ̀an	We call the person who writes books, an author.
tènlám kēŋ	dances well, a dancer
háw əən khón thɨɨ tènlám kēŋ wāā nāktènlám	We call the person who dances well, a dancer.
māk ʔ̂ɔk phácon pháj	likes to go out and face danger
háw əən khón thɨɨ māk ʔ̂ɔk phácon pháj wāā nākpháconpháj	We call the person who likes to out and face danger , a daredevil.
hɔ̀ɔŋ phéeŋ kēŋ	is good in singing
háw əən khón thɨɨ phéeŋ kēŋ wāā nākhɔ̀ɔŋ	We call the person who is good in singing, a singer.
tiimúaj kēŋ	boxes well
háw əən khón thɨɨ tiimúaj kēŋ wāā nākmúaj	We call the person who boxes well, a boxer.

M-3

nākdontrii	musician
nākdontrii mɛ̄ɛ̄n njǎŋ?	What's a musician?
nākwīthānjáasâat	scientist
nākwīthānjáasâat mɛ̄ɛ̄n njǎŋ?	What's a scientist?
nākkaanthùut	diplomat
nākkaanthùut mɛ̄ɛ̄n njǎŋ?	What's a diplomat?
nākkaanmýaŋ	politician
nākkaanmýaŋ mɛ̄ɛ̄n njǎŋ?	What's a politician?
nākkíláa	athlete
nākkíláa mɛ̄ɛ̄n njǎŋ?	What's an athlete?
nāknǎŋsýyphím	journalist
nāknǎŋsýyphím mɛ̄ɛ̄n njǎŋ?	What's a journalist?
nākthòot	prisoner
nākthòot mɛ̄ɛ̄n njǎŋ?	What's a prisoner?

M-4

lên dontrii kēŋ	plays music well
nākdontrii mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī lên dontrii kēŋ	A musician is a person who plays music well.

sýksǎa khònkhwàa tháaŋ dàan wīthānjáasâat	studies and carries out research in the field of science
nākwīthānjáasâat mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī sýksǎa khònkhwàa tháaŋ dàan wīthānjáasâat	A scientist is a person who studies and carries out research in the field of science.
pen càwnâathīī tháaŋkaan jūū náj sathǎanthùut	official in the embassy
nākkaanthùut mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī pen càwnâathīī tháaŋkaan jūū náj sathǎanthùut	A diplomat is a person who is an official in the embassy.
lîn kaanmýaŋ	works in politics
nākkaanmýaŋ mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī lîn kaanmýaŋ	A politician is a person who works in politics.
lîn kíláa	plays sport
nākkíláa mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī lîn kíláa	An athlete is a person who plays sports.
khǐan khāāw lóŋ nǎŋsy̌yphím	writes for a newspaper
nāknǎŋsy̌yphím mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī khǐan khāāw lóŋ nǎŋsy̌yphím	A journalist is a person who writes for a newspaper.
títkhūk	is imprisoned
nākthòot mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī títkhūk	A prisoner is a person who is imprisoned.

C-1

A. háw ə̀ən khón thīī paj hóoŋhían wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who goes to school?
B. háw ə̀ən khón thīī paj hóoŋhían wāā nākhían	We call a person who goes to school, a student.

C-2

A. háw ə̀ən khón thīī kháp hýabin wāā jāāŋdaj?	What do we call a person who pilots a plane?
B. háw ə̀ən khón thīī kháp hýabin wāā nākbin	We call a person who pilots a plane, a pilot.

C-3

A. nākdontrii mɛ̄ɛ̄n njǎŋ?	What's a musician?
B. nākdontrii mɛ̄ɛ̄n khón thīī lên dontrii kēŋ	A musician is a person who plays music well.

C-4

(Student asks question and instructor confirms. Example:)

1 S: háw ə̀ən khón thīī tátphǒm wāā nāktátphǒm, mɛ̄ɛ̄n bɔɔ?	T: bɔ̄ɔ̄ mɛ̄ɛ̄n
2 S: háw ə̀ən khón thīī sadɛɛŋ lākhɔ́ɔn wāā nāksádɛɛŋ lākhɔ́ɔn	T: mɛ̄ɛ̄n lɛ̀ɛw

☆ U. S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE : 1970 O - 396-398 (152)

FSI Language Publications Available from
Superintendent of Documents
Washington, D.C. 20402

BASIC COURSES

* Amharic	(Units 1-50)	$2.25
* Amharic	(Units 51-60)	$2.50
* Cambodian	(Units 1-45)	$2.00
* Cambodian	(Units 46-90)	
* Cantonese	(Units 1-30)	
* Chinyanja	(Units 1-63)	$1.75
* French (set)	(Units 1-12 (Units 13-24	$4.00
* Fula	(Units 1-40)	$2.75
* German	(Units 1-12)	$2.00
* German	(Units 13-24)	$1.75
* Greek	(Vol. I)	$1.75
* Greek	(Vol. II)	$1.00
* Greek	(Vol. III)	$2.00
* Hebrew	(Units 1-40)	$5.00
* Hungarian	(Units 1-12)	$2.00
* Hungarian	(Units 13-24)	$1.75
* Kirundi	(Units 1-30)	$2.75
* Kituba	(Units 1-35)	$2.25
* Korean	(Vol. I)	$3.00
* Korean	(Vol. II)	$4.75
* Lao	(Vol. I)	
* Lingala	(Units 1-24)	$2.75
* Luganda	(Lessons 1-94)	$2.25
* Moré	(Units 1-48)	$1.75
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 1-25)	$3.50
* Serbo-Croatian	(Units 26-50)	$4.00
Shona	(Units 1-49)	$2.50
* Spanish (set)	(Units 1-15 (Units 16-30	$12.25
* Spanish	(Units 31-45)	$3.25
* Spanish	(Units 46-55)	$4.00
* Swahili	(Units 1-150)	$3.00
* Thai	(Units 1-20)	
* Thai	(Units 21-40)	
* Turkish	(Units 1-30)	$3.75
* Turkish	(Units 31-50)	$2.25
* Twi	(Units 1-20)	$1.25
* Vietnamese	(Vol. I)	$2.75
* Vietnamese	(Vol. II)	$1.50
* Yoruba	(Units 1-49)	$2.75

* Finnish Graded Reader	$4.50
* French Supplemental Exercises	$3.25
Hindi-An Active Introduction	
* Hungarian Graded Reader	$3.75
Indonesian Newspaper Reader	$1.75
* Luganda Pretraining Program	
Modern Written Arabic	$4.00
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual-Vol. I)	$0.75
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook-Vol. I)	$2.25
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Instructor's Manual-Vol. II)	
* Spanish Programmatic Course (Student Workbook-Vol. II)	
* Swahili General Conversation	$0.75
* Swahili Geography	$0.65
Thai Reference Grammar	$1.25
Turkish Graded Reader	
Vietnamese Familiarization Course	$1.75
Yoruba Intermediate Texts	$1.25

Supplies of all publications listed are limited, and prices are subject to change without advance notice. Rules require remittance in advance of shipment. Check or money order should be made payable to the Superintendent of Documents. Postage stamps and foreign money are not acceptable.

* Tape recordings to accompany these courses are available for purchase from the Sales Branch, National Audiovisual Center (GSA), Washington, D.C. 20409.